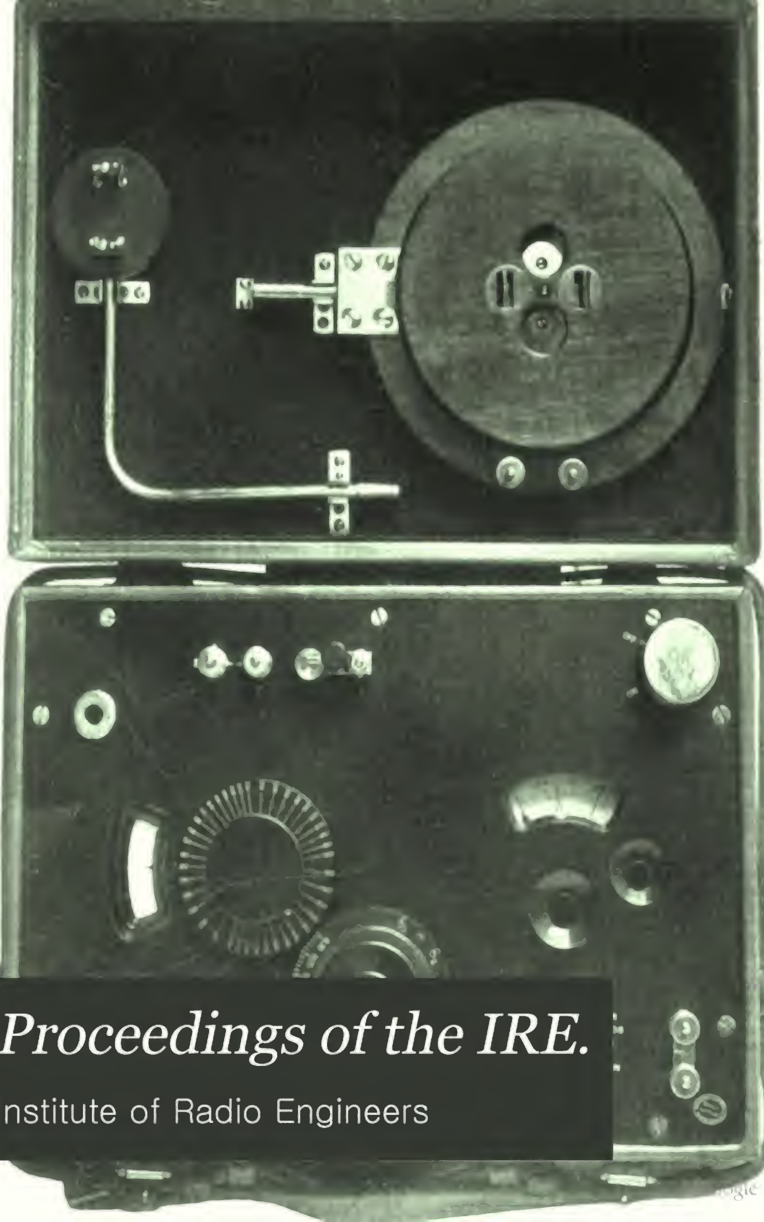


Proceedings of the IRE.

Institute of Radio Engineers

The New York
Public Library
ASTOR, LENOX AND TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
Digitized by Google

PROCEEDINGS

OF

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS

(INCORPORATED)

VOLUME 3

1915

EDITED BY

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, Ph. D.

PUBLISHED QUARTERLY BY

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS
(INC.)

ONE HUNDRED AND ELEVEN BROADWAY
NEW YORK

Digitized by Google

771928

GENERAL INFORMATION

The right to reprint limited portions or abstracts of the articles, discussions, or editorial notes in the Proceedings is granted on the express condition that specific reference shall be made to the source of such material. Diagrams and photographs in the Proceedings may not be reproduced without securing permission to do so from the Institute thru the Editor.

Those desiring to present original papers before the Institute of Radio Engineers are invited to submit their manuscript to the Editor.

Manuscripts and letters bearing on the Proceedings should be sent to Alfred N. Goldsmith, Editor of Publications, The College of the City of New York, New York.

Requests for additional copies of the Proceedings and communications dealing with Institute matters in general should be addressed to the Secretary, The Institute of Radio Engineers, 111 Broadway, New York.

The Proceedings of the Institute are published quarterly and contain the papers and the discussions thereon as presented at the meetings in New York, Washington, Boston or Seattle.

Payment of the annual dues by a member entitles him to one copy of each number of the Proceedings issued during the period of his membership. Members may purchase, when available, copies of the Proceedings issued prior to their election at 75 cents each.

Subscriptions to the Proceedings are received from non-members at the rate of $1.00 per copy or $4.00 per year. To foreign countries the rates are $1.25 per copy or $5.00 per year. A discount of 25 per cent. is allowed to libraries and booksellers. The English distributing agency is "The Electrician Printing and Publishing Company," Fleet Street, London, E. C.

Members presenting papers before the Institute are entitled to ten copies of the paper and of the discussion. Arrangements for the purchase of reprints of separate papers can be made thru the Editor.

It is understood that the statements and opinions given in the Proceedings are the views of the individual members to whom they are credited, and are not binding on the membership of the Institute as a whole.

Copyright, 1915, by
THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, inc.
One Hundred and Eleven Broadway
New York, N. Y.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS OF VOLUME 3

1915

Digitized by Google

NUMBER 4

Digitized by Google

VOLUME 3 MARCH, 1915 NUMBER 1

PROCEEDINGS

of

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS

(INCORPORATED)

OFFICERS AND PAST PRESIDENTS OF THE INSTITUTE

THE NAVAL RADIO SERVICE:
Its Development, Public Service and Commercial Work
CAPTAIN W. H. G. BULLARD, U. S. N.

A DIRECT-READING DECREMETER AND WAVE METER
FREDERICK A. KOLSTER

RADIO FREQUENCY CHANGERS
ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH

EDITED BY
ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, Ph.D.

PUBLISHED QUARTERLY BY
THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS
SEVENTY-ONE BROADWAY
NEW YORK

Digitized by Google

GENERAL INFORMATION

The right to reprint limited portions or abstracts of the articles, discussions, or editorial notes in the Proceedings is granted on the express condition that specific reference shall be made to the source of such material. Diagrams and photographs in the Proceedings may not be reproduced without securing permission to do so from the Institute thru the Editor.

Those desiring to present original papers before the Institute of Radio Engineers are invited to submit their manuscript to the Editor.

Manuscripts and letters bearing on the Proceedings should be sent to Alfred N. Goldsmith, Editor of Publications, The College of the City of New York, New York.

Requests for additional copies of the Proceedings and communications dealing with Institute matters in general should be addressed to the Secretary, The Institute of Radio Engineers, 71 Broadway, New York.

The Proceedings of the Institute are published quarterly and contain the papers and the discussions thereon as presented at the meetings in New York, Washington or Boston.

Payment of the annual dues by a member entitles him to one copy of each number of the Proceedings issued during the period of his membership. Members may purchase, when available, copies of the Proceedings issued prior to their election at 75 cents each.

Subscriptions to the Proceedings are received from non-members at the rate of $1.00 per copy or $4.00 per year. To foreign countries the rates are $1.25 per copy or $5.00 per year. A discount of 25 per cent. is allowed to libraries and booksellers. The English distributing agency is "The Electrician Printing and Publishing Company," Fleet Street, London, E. C.

Members presenting papers before the Institute are entitled to ten copies of the paper and of the discussion.

It is understood that the statements and opinions given in the Proceedings are the views of the individual members to whom they are credited, and are not binding on the membership of the Institute as a whole.

COPYRIGHT, 1915, BY

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, INC.

SEVENTY-ONE BROADWAY

NEW YORK, N. Y.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS AND BOARD OF DIRECTION, 1915[1]

(Terms expire January 5, 1916; except as otherwise noted.)

PRESIDENT

John Stone Stone

VICE-PRESIDENT

George W. Pierce

TREASURER

Warren F. Hubley

SECRETARY

David Sarnoff

EDITOR OF PUBLICATIONS

Alfred N. Goldsmith

MANAGERS

(Serving till January 2, 1918.)

Louis W. Austin
John Hays Hammond, Jr.

(Serving till January 3, 1917.)

Robert H. Marriott
Guy Hill

(Serving till January 5, 1916.)

George S. Davis
Roy A. Weagant
Emil J. Simon
John L. Hogan, Jr.
Lloyd Espenschied

PAST-PRESIDENTS

SOCIETY OF WIRELESS TELEGRAPH ENGINEERS

John Stone Stone, 1907–8
Lee de Forest, 1909–10
Fritz Lowenstein, 1911–12

THE WIRELESS INSTITUTE

Robert H. Marriott, 1909–10–11–12

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS

Robert H. Marriott, 1912
Greenleaf W. Pickard, 1913
Louis W. Austin, 1914

[1] Further announcements of other Officers and Committees will follow in a succeeding number of the Proceedings.

Digitized by Google

THE NAVAL RADIO SERVICE;

Its Development, Public Service, and Commercial Work[1]

By

Captain W. H. G. Bullard, U.S.N.

In considering the naval radio service, it may be well to recall that the Navy Department was the first government department to interest itself actively in radio matters. It is needless to add that from the earliest time on, that department has never lost its interest in this field.

In 1899, Mr. Marconi brought three sets of his apparatus to this country for the use of the "New York Herald" in reporting the international yacht races for that year between the "Shamrock" and the "Columbia." During these trials, the Navy Department directed a board of four officers to observe and report upon the working of the system. Following the report of this board, the department placed two ships and a torpedo boat at the disposal of Mr. Marconi for further experiments with a shore station established by permission of the Treasury Department on the grounds of the Highland Lights, near the entrance to the port of New York. This station consisted of an antenna stretched from the flag pole near the house of the lighthouse keeper, and has the distinction of being the first radio shore station used in the United States. Later a commercial shore station was erected near the same spot and its antenna was supported by a wooden mast, 165 feet (50 meters) high, which was destroyed by fire in November, 1905. A naval shore station was built near the same site in 1903, and abandoned in 1906. The three vessels: the armored cruiser "New York," the battleship "Massachusetts," and the torpedo boat "Porter" were the first vessels of the United States Navy on which radio apparatus was used.

From this beginning, sprang the extensive system of radio shore and ship stations controlled by the Navy Department;

[1] A paper presented before The Institute of Radio Engineers, Washington Section, October 14, 1914. A portion of the subject matter of this address is taken from an article by the author on the "United States Naval Radio Service" (which has appeared in the Proceedings of the United States Naval Institute).

Digitized by Google

which system now includes over 50 shore stations and approximately 250 ship stations.

On the Atlantic Coast starting, from the most northward station, there follow:

Portland, Maine.
Portsmouth (Navy Yard), N. H.
Boston (Chelsea), Mass.
North Truro, Mass.
Nantucket Lightship.
Newport (Naval Station), R. I.
Fire Island, N. Y.
New York (Navy Yard), N. Y.
Philadelphia (Navy Yard), Pa.
Annapolis (Naval Academy), Md.
Washington (Navy Yard), D. C.
Arlington, Va.
Norfolk (Navy Yard), Va.
Diamond Shoal Lightship.
Beaufort, N. C.
Frying Pan Shoals Lightship.
Charleston (Navy Yard), S. C.
St. Augustine, Fla.
Jupiter, Fla.
Key West (Naval Station), Fla.
Pensacola (Naval Station), Fla.
New Orleans (Naval Station), La.

On the west coast, on the Pacific, in the United States proper, are seen

San Diego, Cal.
Point Arguello, Cal.
Farallon Islands, Cal.
Mare Island (Navy Yard), Cal.
Cape Blanco, Oreg.
North Head, Wash.
Tatoosh, Wash.
Bremerton (Navy Yard), Wash.
Eureka, Cal.

In Alaska there are seven stations, situated as follows:

St. Paul, Pribilof.
St. George, Pribilof.
Unalga.
Kodiak.
Cordova.
Sitka.
Dutch Harbor.

In the Isthmian Canal Zone, there are Colon on the Atlantic, Balboa on the Pacific, and the high-power station at Darien under construction about half way across the Canal.

In the insular possessions, there are stations at

San Juan, P. R.
Guantanamo Bay (Naval Station), Cuba.
Honolulu (Naval Station), Hawaii.
Guam (Naval Station).
Tutuila (Naval Station), Samoa.
Cavite, Philippine Islands.
Olongapo, Philippine Islands.

In addition to the above, there is a station at Pekin, China, for communication between officials of the United States Legation and ships in Asiatic waters, a station at Beaufort, S. C., used for instructional purposes, in the Disciplinary School; and one at Yerba Buena, Cal., for the instruction of operators.

There are authorized, or under construction, a station at the Great Lakes Training Station north of Chicago, and one at Point Isabel at the mouth of the Rio Grande, Texas.

Digitized by Google

Under authorization is the so-called long distance chain of stations, which will be pushed rapidly to completion. This system comprises Arlington, Darien, San Diego, Honolulu, Guam, Samoa, and a station in the Philippines. Recent experiments seem to warrant the belief that some of these stations will not be necessary, and that the chain of communication between Washington and the Philippines will be complete without some of the island stations. If so, they will be fitted with but medium high-powered stations.

It cannot be said that the development of the so-called United States Coast Signal Service was the result of any original well-planned scheme, but it has grown up slowly according to the needs of the department. Other stations than those mentioned were built and later abandoned as their usefulness in the chain of communication became impaired. At one time it was proposed to have a coast station practically every 100 miles along our sea coast, but as apparatus improved and reliable ranges increased, such a chain meant but useless duplication, and many proposed stations were never built. The power of stations ranges from 2 kilowatts to 100 kilowatts; depending on the strategical location of the station; and the reliable communication range varies with the station's characteristics. Nearly every system of radio apparatus has been in use at one station or another, including apparatus of the earliest design as well as modern systems, using radio frequency sustained waves. Every endeavor is being made to bring the installation of stations up to modern requirements along standard lines, as funds become available.

From the time of the introduction of radio apparatus in the country, other departments of the government naturally became interested in the erection of stations; and a state of affairs arose that demanded some government action in the way of regulation and control, with the main idea of preventing interference which could not be overcome by the apparatus then in use.

In June, 1904, the President appointed a Board, since known as the Inter-Departmental Board to consider the entire question of radio telegraphy in the service of the national government. The Board recommended that the Navy Department should equip and install a complete coastwise radio telegraph system, covering the entire coasts of the United States, its insular possessions, and the Canal Zone in Panama. It also recommended that the Navy Department be directed to receive and transmit thru these stations, free of charge, all radio messages to or from

Digitized by Google

ships at sea, provided such stations did not come in competition with commercial stations. It further suggested that the erection of private radio stations in locations where they might interfere with naval or military operations be restricted by the action of the President, until such time as legislation might be had by Congress on this subject.

On July 29, 1904, the President approved the report of the Inter-Departmental Board and directed that the several departments concerned put its recommendations into effect.

The approval of this report virtually put the control of all coast radio stations under the jurisdiction of the Navy Department, and from that time until the present no other department of the government has operated coast stations with the exception of a few signal corps stations in Alaska, which are a necessary part of the Washington-Alaska Military-Cable and Telegraph System.

PUBLIC SERVICE USES

It was but natural that such a chain of radio stations should find uses other than those based entirely on military considerations, and the operation of these stations was early devoted to shipping interests. They were also made available for the transmission of news to ships at sea including weather reports, dangers to navigation, and other matters; as well as for the reception of messages on similar topics, and calls from ships in distress.

TIME SIGNALS

The transmission of time signals to vessels at sea by means of radiotelegraphy was first accomplished in the United States in 1905, and this service, enlarged and extended, has continued to the present time. This service is of the greatest value to mariners, as it furnishes a means by which the time as given by the transmitted signals may be compared with a ship's chronometer and the error of the chronometer found. Similar comparisons over a number of days enable data to be obtained by which not only the error may be found but also the chronometer rate; that is, the rate at which it is gaining or losing.

The noontime signal on the Atlantic coast is sent out thru the coast radio stations by connection with Western Union telegraph lines from the United States Naval Observatory at Washington, D. C. By the operation of proper relays in electrical circuits, the beats of the seconds of a standard clock in the Observatory are sent out broadcast as a series of radio dots

Digitized by Google

commencing five minutes before the time of the final signal. By omitting certain dots in a series, the comparison between the dots and the beats of the chronometer seconds can be checked until the instant of local noon (75th meridian time), is reached. This is marked by a longer dot which gives the time of exact noon. A comparison with the chronometer time at that instant gives its error referred to 75th meridian time. Applying the difference in longitude; namely, five hours, between the 75th meridian and Greenwich, which is the standard meridian (or 0° longitude), the error of the chronometer referred to Greenwich mean time is determined. Time signals are now sent out on the Atlantic coast only thru the radio stations at Arlington, Key West and New Orleans. Signals from Arlington, which reach a zone formerly served by other coast stations, are sent out every day in the year, twice a day; viz., at noon and at 10 P. M., 75th meridian time. Time signals from Key West and New Orleans are sent out daily, including Sundays and holidays, commencing 11:55 A. M., 75th meridian time, and ending at local noon.

In case of failure for any cause of the Arlington high power station, the signals are sent out by the small set in the same station, and the stations at Boston, Newport, Norfolk and Charleston are notified, and they each send the signals broadcast.

On the Pacific coast, time signals are sent broadcast to sea thru the naval radio stations at Mare Island, Eureka and San Diego, in California, and at North Head, Washington. The controlling clock for each station is in the Naval Observatory at the Mare Island Navy Yard. Signals from Mare Island are sent out every day from 11:55 to noon, and from 9:55 to 10:00 P. M., 120th meridian standard time. Those from North Head, Eureka and San Diego are sent out daily, except Sundays and holidays from 11:55 A. M. to noon, 120th meridian standard time.

It is not necessary that an elaborate radio installation be employed for the purpose of receiving these signals, nor that a skilled operator be in attendance. Any vessel provided with a small receiving apparatus with one or two wires hoisted as high as possible and insulated from all metallic fittings, or preferably stretched between the mastheads with one wire led down to the receiver, may detect these signals when within range of one of the seacoast radio stations. To get the maximum clearness of signals, the receiving circuit should be tuned to that of the sending station. Arlington and Mare Island send on a 2,500

Digitized by Google

meter wave; North Head and San Diego on a 2,000 meter wave; Eureka on a 1,400 meter wave; and Key West and New Orleans on a 1,000 meter wave. On the completion of the new radio station at the Training Station, Great Lakes, time signals will be transmitted from that station for the benefit of shipping on the Great Lakes, as well as the weather reports for that region now transmitted by Arlington after the Atlantic coast weather bulletin following the 10 P. M. time signals.

WEATHER REPORTS

Thru coöperation with local offices of the United States Weather Bureau, weather forecasts are sent broadcast to sea thru naval coast radio stations at certain times which vary with the locality. Coast stations are generally prepared to give local forecasts to passing vessels without charge on request. Storm warnings are sent whenever received.

Since July 15, 1913, a daily weather bulletin has been distributed by the naval radio stations at Arlington, Va., and at Key West, Fla., a few minutes after the 10 P. M. time signal.

The daily bulletin consists of two parts. The first part contains code letters and figures which express the actual weather conditions at 8 P. M., 75th meridian time, on the day of distribution, at certain points along the eastern coast of North America; one point along the Gulf of Mexico and one at Bermuda. The second part of the bulletin contains a special forecast of the probable winds to be experienced a hundred miles or so off shore, made by the United States Weather Bureau for distribution to shipmasters. The second part of the bulletin also contains warnings of severe storms along the coast as occasions for such warnings may arise.

The points for which weather conditions are furnished are designated respectively by their initial letter, except in the case of Nantucket, for which the letter T is used; accordingly the code is S, Sydney; A, Atlantic City; H, Hatteras; C, Charleston; K, Key West; P, Pensacola, and Br, Bermuda.

The report is made by means of a special code furnished to mariners, and is followed by a general forecast for different zones of the coast. With the information contained in these broadcast messages, mariners should be able to make their own forecasts in addition to that given by the official forecaster at the headquarters of the Weather Bureau at Washington.

Digitized by Google

A daily weather bulletin for the Great Lakes is distributed broadcast by the Arlington Radio Station, immediately following the bulletin for the Atlantic coast.

This bulletin is similar to that of the Atlantic coast and contains code letters and figures which express the actual weather condition at 8 P. M., 75th meridian time on the day of distribution at the following points, and which are designated as follows: D, Duluth; M, Marquette; U, Sault Ste. Marie; G, Green Bay; Ch, Chicago; L, Alpena; D, Detroit; V, Cleveland; F, Buffalo.

Preliminary arrangements have been made by which weather reports will be exchanged between a Russian station at Anadyr, Siberian Russia, and Alaskan naval stations. This weather reporting service will also be enlarged to include reports from various stations in the West Indies which will be sent out from the high power station at Darien, on the Canal Zone, for the benefit of ships in the Caribbean, on the Pacific side, and those which may be in transit to or from the Panama Canal.

HYDROGRAPHIC INFORMATION

Information concerning wrecks, derelicts, ice and other dangerous obstructions to navigation, whenever received from the hydrographic office or from a branch hydrographic office is sent broadcast from naval radio stations four times daily; viz., at 8 A. M., noon, 4 P. M., and 8 P. M., local (standard) time of station. Ships within range of such stations should be prepared to receive these hydrographic messages at the hours mentioned, and should avoid sending at these times. One vessel sending may prevent several others receiving information necessary to their safety.

Naval stations will furnish information to passing vessels on request whenever practicable at other hours than those mentioned above.

The International Convention on Safety of Life at Sea, which convened in London on November 12, 1913, invited the Government of the United States to undertake the management of the services of derelict destruction, study and observation of ice conditions, and ice patrol in the North Atlantic. By this convention, the master of every ship which meets with dangerous ice or a dangerous derelict is bound to communicate the information by all means at his disposal (the principal of which will be radio communication) to the ships in the vicinity, and also to the competent authorities at the first point of the coast with which he can communicate. This information will be forwarded

Digitized by Google

to the Hydrographic Office, New York, and there made known to the maritime exchanges, and will be further forwarded to the headquarters at Washington to be broadcasted to sea from the Arlington radio station following the time signal and weather reports. At such times ships should be listening on the long wave of Arlington, 2,500 meters, and their receiving circuits should be tuned if they desire to receive these ice or derelict reports. In order to prevent delay in having such information reach as many ships as possible, the coast station which first receives the information will at once broadcast it, and with the increased power, should reach ships that could not be reached by the first reporting ships.*

Another provision of the convention requires that every ship fitted with a radio telegraphic installation which becomes aware of the existence of an immediate and serious danger to navigation, shall report it immediately to the Hydrographic Office, Washington, or to the Hydrographic Office, London. Such information reaching the Hydrographic Office, Washington, will be broadcasted thru appropriate naval stations. The reporting of information concerning ice and derelicts is *compulsory* under the terms of the London Safety Convention; the reporting of information relating to weather is voluntary. Information can be forwarded either in full or by means of a code adopted by the convention.

The radio stations which have to transmit to ships information involving safety of navigation and which is of an urgent character (reports of icebergs, derelicts, cyclones, typhoons, sudden changes in the position or form of fixed obstructions, or of land marks) are required to make use of the following signal, called the safety signal, repeated at short intervals ten times at full power —— —— —— (T T T). All radio stations receiving the safety signal are required, if the transmission of messages by them would interfere with the receipt by any other station of the safety signal and the following safety message, to keep silence, in order to allow interested stations to receive that message.

The safety message will be transmitted one minute after the safety signal has been sent out, and should be repeated thereafter, three times at intervals of ten minutes.

The above information will be sent out by naval stations as soon as it reaches them, and again later by such stations as transmit time signals. It will follow the weather reports.

[1] Ship owners should insist that receiving apparatus should be capable of being tuned to at least a wave length of 3,000 meters, in order to receive these valuable reports.

Digitized by Google

To provide for prompt warning of vessels in the immediate vicinity of obstructions at sea, as well as of those vessels which will eventually pass thru such danger areas during the course of their voyages, and to provide facilities for transmitting information to the nearest source of assistance promptly in case of vessels in distress, the following procedure is followed by all naval radio shore stations within the continental limits of the United States and Alaska.

Whenever a naval radio station receives information from a branch hydrographic office concerning any damage to navigation, wreck, light vessel off station, etc., that radio station immediately broadcasts such information for the benefit of shipping in the immediate vicinity, and again thereafter at the usual hours: viz., 8 A. M., noon, 4 P. M., and 8 P. M., local standard time. In all such cases the station on the Atlantic coast receiving such information forwards it by radio to Arlington addressed to the Hydrographer.

The Arlington station delivers the report to the hydrographer and broadcasts it at 10 P. M., daily, on 2,500 meters. All radio stations copy the broadcast message, and each in turn broadcasts it (on 1,000 and 600 meters) at the regular hours as given above, for the benefit of shipping in its vicinity.

The procedure on the Pacific coast is the same except that the Mare Island Navy Yard broadcasts to all Pacific stations, and the reports from coast stations are addressed to Mare Island for the Branch Hydrographic Office, San Francisco, and are delivered to that branch hydrographic office.

If information relating to danger at sea reaches a naval coast station by radio or flag signals from a passing vessel, that station at once broadcasts it and informs the nearest branch hydrographic office, if it is possible to do so by radio; which then relays it to Arlington or Mare Island stations for the procedure laid down in the preceding paragraph.

In order that the various naval radio stations may be informed as to the location of the nearest revenue cutter, which in many cases is the nearest source of assistance to shipping in distress, and which has to do with the removal of dangers to navigation, the captain of each revenue cutter equipped with a radio installation informs the nearest naval radio station at 8 A. M. each day, of the location of his ship and concisely her probable movements during the next twenty-four hours.

Each radio station receives such reports and keeps them

Digitized by Google

constantly on hand for guidance in transmitting messages that may require action on the part of a revenue cutter.

GENERAL SHIP TO SHORE WORK

The installations of the naval coast stations, including those on the lightships at Nantucket Shoals, Diamond Shoals, and Frying Pan Shoals are placed at the service of the public generally and maritime interests in particular for the purpose of:

(a) Reporting vessels and intelligence received by radio telegraphy with regard to maritime casualties, derelicts at sea, overdue vessels, and the reporting of all matters pertaining to ships in distress.

(b) Receiving radiograms of a private or commercial nature from ships at sea, for further transmission by telegraph, telephone or cable lines.

(c) Transmitting radiograms to ships at sea from inland points.

Information contained under heading (a) is transmitted free of all costs as far as radio charges are concerned. Readings (b) and (c) relate entirely to commercial work and will be considered separately.

Lightship stations are authorized to transmit reports received from masters of passing vessels to their owners, agents, or maritime agency to the nearest naval radio station without charge, but in all such cases arrangements must be made by such owners or agents for the forwarding of messages by land telegraph from the coast station to the point of destination.

Lightships display storm warnings when information regarding such is furnished them from the Weather Bureau by means of radiograms thru coast stations. Ship owners desiring to use any special code of signals for communicating with lightships fitted with radio apparatus, the messages to be by them transmitted to shore and then to their destination, may make special arrangements with the Navy Department, Superintendent of Naval Radio Service. The radio service connected with the transmission is free, but arrangements must be made with the land lines for the forwarding charges.

Vessels in the trans-Atlantic trade, either incoming or outgoing, make extensive use of the radio installation of the Nantucket Shoal light vessel for reporting their positions. Such messages are relayed to the naval station at Newport, whence they are forwarded to their destination free of all radio charges.

Similarly, the light vessel off Diamond Shoals transmits

Digitized by Google

messages to the naval radio station at Beaufort, N. C., from which station they are forwarded to their destination free of all radio charges.

During certain months in the year, when the whaling and sealing fleet is making its way into or out of Behring Sea, and passing thru Unimak Pass, a revenue cutter is stationed in that vicinity. Vessels fitted with radio apparatus may report the fact that they have passed thru the Pass to the revenue cutter, or forward this information by flag signals if not fitted with radio apparatus. The revenue cutter then transmits this information thru any naval radio station in Alaska and it is relayed to the naval station at North Head, which station transfers the message to its destination; generally the maritime exchanges at San Francisco or Seattle. This service is performed entirely free of all radio charges; owners or agents making the necessary arrangements for the payment of forwarding charges from North Head to destination.

COMMERCIAL WORK OF NAVAL RADIO STATIONS

In April, 1911, by order of the Navy Department, all naval radio stations with the exception of Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Norfolk, New Orleans, Yuerba Buena, Mare Island and Puget Sound, were directed to handle commercial messages under the following conditions:

(1) That no commercial station was able to do the work.

(2) That no expense was incurred by the government thereby.

(3) That no money or accounts in connection with this business was handled by any person in the employ of the government.

(4) That the handling of commercial business should not interfere with government business.

As this service was entirely free as far as the government radio stations were concerned, and commercial stations applied a comparatively high word rate, it was natural that many messages were forwarded thru these stations and transferred to land lines; all necessary arrangements for the collection of tolls being a private matter between the ships and the forwarding lines. The radiograms were placed on the land lines as domestic messages with charges collect. At that period, of course, neither operating companies nor the government were bound by the provisions of any international conventions, and radio matters were generally in a state of confusion. By the ratification of the Berlin

Digitized by Google

Convention of 1906, and the Proclamation of the President, all this changed, and it became necessary to follow all international agreements.

All business relating to government radio matters (both from the engineering and material point of view) as well as its operating features were conducted thru the Bureau of Steam Engineering of the Navy Department; which, for this particular work, had absorbed the duties of the old Bureau of Equipment. The officers in the Bureau of Steam Engineering were few in number, and soon found themselves swamped with work, and the attempt to handle all features of this service proved too much of a task. The passage of the Radio Act of August 13, 1912, and the joining of the London Radiotelegraphic Convention of 1912, threw extra work on the already overtaxed force. It was then determined to establish an office which would assume all the administrative and operating features of the service, the Bureau of Steam Engineering retaining all control over the engineering and technical details. Accordingly, in November 1912, by order of the Secretary of the Navy, the office of Superintendent of Naval Radio Service was established at Radio, Va.

The Radio Act of 1912 provided that the head of the department having control over the following named stations; viz., Arlington, Va.; Key West, Fla.; San Juan, P. R.; North Head and Tatoosh, Wash.; San Diego, Cal.; and those established or which may be established in Alaska and the Canal Zone *shall*, so far as is consistent with the transaction of government business, arrange for the transmission and receipt of commercial radiograms under the provisions of the Berlin Convention of 1906 and future international conventions or treaties to which the United States may be a party, at each of the stations referred to above and fix the rate therefor, subject to control of such rates by Congress. Further this Act provided that, "at such stations and *wherever* and *whenever* shore stations opened for general public business between the coast and vessels at sea under the provisions of the Berlin Convention of 1906 and future international conventions and treaties to which the United States may be a party shall not be so established, as to insure a constant service day and night without interruption, and in localities *wherever* and *whenever* such service shall not be maintained by a commercial shore station within 100 nautical miles of a naval radio station, the Secretary of the Navy, *shall*, so far as is consistent with the transaction of governmental business, open naval radio stations to the general public business described above,

Digitized by Google

and shall fix rates for such service, subject to control of such rates by Congress. The receipts from such radiograms shall be covered into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts."

In accordance with the above, the following stations of the naval radio service are now opened for general commercial work between shore and ships:

Charleston, S. C.
St. Augustine, Fla.
Jupiter, Fla.
Pensacola, Fla.
Key West, Fla.
Guantanamo Bay, Cuba.
Colon, R. P.
Balboa, I. C. Z.
Tatoosh Island, Wash.
North Head, Wash.
Cape Blanco, Oreg.
Tutuila, Samoa.
Eureka, Cal.
Point Arguello, Cal
San Diego, Cal.
Guam.
St. Paul, Pribilof Islands, Alaska.
San Juan, P. R.
St. George, Pribilof Islands, Alaska.
Unalga, Alaska.
Dutch Harbor, Alaska.
Kodiak, Alaska.
Cordova, Alaska.
Sitka, Alaska.

SHIP STATIONS OPENED TO COMMERCIAL BUSINESS

In addition to the above shore stations which were authorized to handle commercial business, all ships of the naval service are also available for the transaction of commercial business. This is for the benefit of officers and crews of such vessels and for their friends ashore, and all persons embarked on naval vessels have the same privileges as passengers on merchant vessels. This commercial business must not, of course, interfere with the transaction of necessary government business, and its regulation is a matter for the senior officer present in any organization to determine.

The opening of naval ship stations to commercial work has not only been a boon to the officers and crews of such vessels, whereby they can have intercommunication with their families or friends on shore, but in some instances has resulted in great convenience to the public at places where there are no shore radio stations or land lines or cables; as private citizens can file messages on board naval ships for further transmission. During recent troubles in Mexico, when land lines were interrupted, the only means of communication with certain points of the country was thru the radio stations of the United States ships in Mexican waters. Messages were received or delivered by boat and messengers or thru local ships, no ship charge is imposed on officers or crew of such ship; but the coast station charge and all forwarding charges are collected. Such messages to naval ships

Digitized by Google

carry the ship's receiving charges in addition to the shore station and forwarding line charges.

POINT TO POINT WORK

It should be noted that the London Radiotelegraphic Convention under the provisions and requirements of which the Naval Radio Service is organized and conducted as far as its commercial work is concerned, deals only with regulations that relate to communication between shore and ships. No special regulations were made to cover communication by radio stations between fixed points on land, these being left to the managements of the separate governments concerned.

Several of the stations of the naval service are advantageously situated for communication with fixed radio stations of other governments, and mutual agreements have been made for the conduct of commercial business between such points. A notable example of this communication is between the naval stations at Jupiter, Fla., and Nassau, Bahamas, paralleling the cable between these two points. On interruption of this cable, the entire business which previously was handled by the cable was taken by the exchange of radiograms between these two points. The erection of a commercial station at Miami, Fla., made a division of this traffic desirable, as the naval radio service is not considered as a competitor of any commercial company.

Similar point to point work is done between the naval station at Colon and the station at Cartagena, United States of Colombia, by which long transmission by land lines thru unreliable offices is eliminated and the cost to the senders of messages considerably reduced. Colon also communicates with the land stations at Limon, Bocas, and Bluefields in Costa Rica and Panama, and eliminate a round-about transmission by land lines and cables.

In Alaska there are a good many points that can be reached by radio which have no connections with land lines or cables, and the commercial work between such stations is of considerable magnitude. The Naval Radio Service thru its stations at North Head, Wash., Sitka, and Cordova in Alaska practically parallels the cable system of the Washington-Alaska Military-Cable and Telegraph Company, and the rates to points in Alaska are such that it practically makes no difference to the senders of messages whether the cable is interrupted or not, as either service delivers messages at practically the same cost, transferring messages from one system to another as may be required. On this particular class of Alaskan business, both systems use the same

Digitized by Google

system of counting and checking, and such messages carry the domestic (message) count thruout, whether wholly by radio or cable lines, or in part by them and the connecting land lines in the United States. On messages to ships at sea, however, the Naval Radio Service, the cable system and connecting land lines apply the cable count and charges.

Certain naval radio stations in Alaska communicate with a Russian station at Anadyr, and tests are being conducted between them and a Japanese station at Ochiishi. These systems of communication were developed primarily for the transmission of government messages, with special reference to Weather Bureau messages, tho such routes are open for the transaction of commercial business, and such messages have been so transmitted.

The unreliability of cable service to San Domingo necessitated some arrangement of communication by radio stations, and United States government messages are now delivered to officials in San Domingo or to ships in those waters thru the naval radio station at San Juan (Porto Rico), and the Dominican stations at La Romana and San Domingo. Similarly, Dominican government messages are transmitted to and from that country, and if occasion demands, these routes will be opened for commercial business.

The Naval station at Tutuila, Samoa, has no cable connection, but its radio station can communicate with the Suva radio station in the Fiji Islands where messages can be forwarded by cable. Commercial ships passing Samoa, as well as the inhabitants of Tutuila, make considerable use of this means of communication.

Ships passing Guam can transmit messages thru the naval radio station at that place for further transmission by radio to Yap*, or by cable at the sender's option.

RATES AND CHARGES

The London Radiotelegraphic Convention prescribes a maximum word charge applicable to all radiograms. For shore stations this is 60 centimes, or approximately 12 cents; and for ship stations 40 centimes, or approximately 8 cents. In the Convention, however, the United States abstained from all action with regard to rates, because the transmission of radiograms in this country is carried on wholly or in part by commercial or

*Transmission from the radio station at Yap has been interfered with because of the present European War. (Editor.)

Digitized by Google

private companies. However, no commercial company applies a higher word rate than allowed by the Convention, except certain shore stations engaged in long distance work.

The word rate fixed for naval stations must of necessity be based on that established by commercial companies operating in the same general locality. If naval radio service rates were higher, the service would not be of the same convenience to the public, and if lower, a state of competition would exist, which of course is undesirable. The word rates for all naval stations, except Alaskan stations, Guam, and Tutuila, for ship to shore work, is 6 cents per word, the excepted stations applying a 5-cent rate for local ship to shore work. Between North Head, Wash., and the Alaskan stations, for communication between ships and United States points, there is a flat word rate of 19 cents per word for ships beyond Cordova, and 9 cents per word for ships reached via Sitka. For local work between points in Alaska, a word rate of 5 cents is charged for radio service independent of the number of relays thru naval stations.

For point to point work the same rate of 6 cents per word applies, except in Alaska; and a special rate of 2 cents a word is allowed for press messages. This rate applies on all messages passing thru the stations in either direction.

Ships of the Navy apply a 4-cent word rate on all received commercial messages, making the radio tolls (shore and ship) thru a naval radio station 10 cents per word, with a minimum charge equal to that of a message consisting of ten words.

In general, commercial ships engaged in the North and South Atlantic trade apply a 4-cent word rate, while those engaged in trans-Atlantic trade apply an 8-cent word rate. Some coastwise vessels on the Pacific coast apply a 2-cent word rate, and it is these varying word rates applicable to ships which makes the accounting such an uncertainty, and which often result in over or under charges on radiograms addressed to ships at sea.

COUNTING OF WORDS

The cable count is used on all radiograms; that is, every word of the address, message, and signature is counted and paid for at a certain rate per word, tho every radiogram carries a minimum charge for its radio tolls which is equal to that of a ten-word radiogram. Where transmission is effected partly over cables, only the actual number of words is charged and paid for for this part of the transmission. The address must contain at least two words, one of which must be the coast station thru which the

Digitized by Google

message is transmitted, but a signature is not necessary, and there is no limit to the number of words in a message.

RELAYING

Messages are entitled to be relayed under the following conditions:

(a) In case direct communication cannot be established between the station of origin and destination.

(b) In case the relaying is solely for the purpose of reaching the nearest coast station (for messages originating on a ship).

(c) In case the relaying ship or station is in a position to forward the message.

(d) In case the total number of relays does not exceed two. Messages originating on a ship may be relayed to another ship by means of:

(1) One or two ships.

(2) A coast station.

(3) Two coast stations and then connecting telegraph lines. Messages from shore may be relayed to a ship by another ship, but only in case the sender has specifically demanded such relay and the preamble contains instructions as to the number of relays, which must not exceed two.

In cases of relaying to a ship at sea, the coast station forwards the message by one or two relay ships and then notifies the office of origin what the amount of relay charges is, so that they may be collected from the sender. All relay charges must be prepaid as must all other charges on radiograms. There is but one charge per station allowed; that is, the reception and retransmission is made a single—not a double—charge. The naval radio service makes no charge for relaying messages, nor do certain of the commercial companies, notably the Marconi Wireless Telegraph Company and their affiliated companies.

SPECIAL CLASSES OF COMMERCIAL RADIOGRAMS

The ordinary radiogram between ship and shore carries the prefix "Radio," which is an indication of its strictly commercial

Digitized by Google

character, and this is the ordinary type of prepaid message. In addition to this, special classes of commercial radiograms are authorized.

Classes of Messages	Designations
Radiograms with answer prepaid (on land lines "Reply Prepaid")	RP
Radiograms calling for repetition of message (on land lines "Repeat Back")	TC
Special delivery radiograms	EXPRESS
Radiograms to be delivered by mail	POST
Radiograms to be delivered by registered mail	PR
Multiple radiograms	TM
Radiograms calling for acknowledgment of receipt	PCP (by mail) PC (by telegraph)
Acknowledgment of above	CR
Paid service notice	RADIO ST (prefix)
"Ocean Letters" or radiograms to be mailed by a ship at a port of call	POSTE (in address)

The addressee of a reply prepaid message (RP) is given a voucher equal in value to the amount prepaid for reply and which is good for six weeks. The receiver of a reply prepaid message is not bound to a reply to the sender of the original message, but may apply the value of his voucher to the payment of any message he wishes to send.

Radiograms calling for repetition of message are for the purpose of verification only. Messages carrying the word "TC" are repeated back by each station that handled it to the one before. An additional charge equal to one-fourth of the regular tolls is charged for such service. Special delivery radiograms are those which involve delivery beyond the limits of a telegraph office, which delivery is accomplished by telephone or messenger. Such messages are only accepted where the charge for special delivery is paid by the addressee and the special prefix is charged for as one word.

Radiograms to be delivered by mail are distinguished by the word "Post." When such a radiogram is received at a coast station, it is sent by mail to the addressee; or if the name of some other place follows the word "Post," it will be forwarded by land line to that place with the instruction "mail." It is then mailed from the telegraph office to which forwarded. In addition to the extra charge for the word "Post," there is an additional charge

Digitized by Google

collected from the sender of 5 cents for postage; and if the expression " PR" is used instead of "Post," it signifies that the letter is to be forwarded by registered mail, which carries a collection from the sender of 15 cents instead of 5 cents.

By a multiple radiogram is meant one message addressed either by several persons, or to the same person at several addresses, in the same locality or in different localities served by the same telegraph office. Such messages contain the abbreviation "TM . . x" ("x" standing for the number of different addresses).

Radiograms calling for acknowledgment of receipt are limited to notification of the date and hour at which the coast station shall have transmitted the radiogram to the ship to which it was addressed. This notification is sent to the office of origin either by telegraph or mail, at the option of the sender of the message. The instruction to send acknowledgment of receipt is transmitted by the letters "PC," or the words "Acknowledgment Paid" as supplementary instructions at the end of the preamble, and also as the first item of the first address. The letters "PC" in the address are counted in the check charged for as one word. This calls for telegraphic acknowledgment by mail, and is charged for as one word. Should the expression "Acknowledgment Paid" be written on the blank, it shall be transmitted by the abbreviation.

If telegraphic acknowledgment is requested, the sender of the message is charged for a five-word telegram, by the same route. Mail acknowledgments are sent free. They are addressed to the telegraph office at which the message originated. Telegraphic acknowledgment is announced by service message containing the abbreviation "CR," followed by the name of the addressee, ship, the word "transmitted," and the hour and date.

Ocean letters are radiograms which may be transmitted by a coast station to a ship, or by a ship to another ship, to be forwarded by mail from a port of call of the ship receiving the radiogram. Such radiograms are not entitled to any relaying by radio. The address of such a radiogram shall embrace the following:

(1) The paid designation "Poste," or (if sent to a United States ship) "Mail," followed by the name of the port at which the message is to be mailed.

(2) Name and complete address of addressee.

(3) Name of station on shipboard by which the radiogram is to be mailed.

Digitized by Google

(4) When necessary, the name of the coast station.

The rate shall comprise, in addition to the radio and telegraph rates, the sum of 5 cents for postage.

ACCOUNTING

The system of accounting in vogue follows the requirements of Article XLII of the Service Regulations affixed to the International Convention of London, 1912. This article requires that the accounts regarding radio charges shall be drawn up by the radio managements to which the coastal stations are subject. Coastal and shipboard charges do not enter into the accounts provided for by the International Telegraph Regulations.

The primary requirements in the transmission of all radiograms is the prepayment of all charges from point of origin to point of destination, and no "collect" radiogram of any class is recognized. All telegraph, cable, and radio companies operating follow the same general system of accounting; which is, that the system on which a message originates becomes responsible for all the charges on said message, and that that system collects full tolls and thereupon pays to the next connecting line its tolls plus all tolls due forwarding lines. In turn, the second system handling the message pays the third connecting line its tolls and all tolls due systems following that system.

Altho the system on which the radiogram originates collects all tolls and is responsible for all charges beyond its system, the accounts are, in accordance with the Service Regulations, London Convention, drawn up by the radio management of the coast stations. This means that all the coast stations belonging to the Naval Radio Service which are opened to public general correspondence, draw up the accounts on all messages that pass thru them, either from shore to ship, or from ship to shore.

The required prepayment from shore to ship includes land line or cable charges from point of origin to the coast station (or a message may be filed locally at a coast station, in which the above charges do not appear), the coast station charge, and the ship station charge. If the message originates on ship and is destined to a shore point, the charges to be applied and paid on board ship are the ship's charge, the coast station charge, and the land line or cable charges to destination. If destined to be delivered locally at the coast station, there may be no forwarding charges. Thus on a message from an inland point to a ship at sea, the administration of the coast station charges the forwarding land line company which handed the message to it with

Digitized by Google

its own station charge plus the ship station charge, and on collection hands to the administration controlling the ship installation, the amount due it, retaining its own charge. Similarly on messages from sea the administration of the coast station thru which the message passed charges the company controlling the ship installation with the shore station charge plus all forwarding charges due to land line or cable companies. On collection of these charges, the administration of the coast station turns over to the forwarding company its proportion of the charges and retains its own.

The general principle followed is that the coast station debits the company that handed the message to it, whether from ship or shore, with its own and all forwarding charges, and credits the proper companies with all charges beyond it. Thus in case a shore station has no direct physical connection with a land telegraph or cable line, but is connected by means of a telephone line, the administration of the coast station does its accounting with the company controlling the telephone line and turns over all forwarding charges to it, and this company in turn accounts with any further forwarding company, unless both telephone and telegraph lines are controlled by the same company.

Most naval coast stations in the continental limits of the country have direct connection with either Western Union Company telegraph lines or Postal Company telegraph lines and some have both. In some instances there is but a telephone line connection, as at Cape Blanco, Ore., where accounting is done with the Coos Bay Home Telephone Company. At Tatoosh, the connecting telegraph line is controlled by the Weather Bureau which involves accounting with that bureau. Several naval coast stations that are open to commercial business are on outlying possessions, as at Guantanamo Bay, San Juan, Colon, Darien, Balboa, Guam and stations in Alaska. These are connected to land lines in the countries in which they are situated; some of them foreign as in the case of Guantanamo thru Cuba, and the Canal Zone stations thru the Republic of Panama. All are connected with other points by cables which thru their connections may reach all parts of the world.

SUMMARY: The work done by the United States Government in connection with radio telegraphy is historically traced, and the practical control of government radio service by the Navy Department is described. The division of duties in this field is between the Bureau of Steam Engineering, which is in charge of engineering and technical details, and the Superintendent of Naval Radio Service, who controls the administrative and operating features. The transmission of time signals, weather reports, hydrographic information, and

Digitized by Google

ship messages from the naval shore stations is considered. The commercial work of the naval radio stations, both shore stations and ship stations, is discussed. This is followed by a description of shore point-to-point work. Certain traffic matters are then handled, such as: rates and charges, the counting of words, relaying of messages, special classes of commercial radiograms, and methods of accounting for tolls.

DISCUSSION

Edward J. Nally: I have read Captain Bullard's paper on "Naval Radio Service" very carefully and with great interest. I think it is a text-book on the subject, and one in which the subject is most thoroly and lucidly handled. In fact, I think it is a historic document.

Alfred N. Goldsmith: Captain Bullard's description of the work of the United States Government in the radio field will doubtless be an interesting revelation to those who have been accustomed to regard that field as in large part monopolized by commercial companies. It will be seen that the government has organized a highly efficient service of its own, quite apart from military necessity. The scope of that service, particularly in Alaska, is practically as complete as that of any of the operating companies. It is a subject for careful consideration as to what will be the ultimate outcome of this incursion of the government into the field of public communication.

Digitized by Google

A DIRECT-READING DECREMETER AND WAVE METER[1]

By

FREDERICK A. KOLSTER

INTRODUCTION

The laws of the United States governing radio communication specify, among other things, that at all stations the logarithmic decrement per complete oscillation in the wave trains emitted by the transmitter shall not exceed two-tenths, except when sending distress signals or messages relating thereto.

The importance of the regulation lies in the fact that when persistent oscillations of single frequency are emitted from a radio transmitting station much more selective receiving apparatus may be employed with advantage at receiving stations, permitting sharp tuning with consequent minimizing of interference caused by stations other than those with which communication is desired.

When full advantage is taken of the rapid scientific and technical progress which has been made in the methods of transmission of electromagnetic waves it is not at all difficult to comply with this requirement. In fact, it is practicable as well as desirable to keep well within this limiting value of two-tenths.

The purpose of this paper is to describe a new direct-reading instrument for measuring the logarithmic decrement and wave length, especially designed about two years ago for the radio inspection service of the Bureau of Navigation, Department of Commerce, and since adopted by the War and Navy Departments.

GENERAL THEORY

It is supposed that in the primary of two coupled circuits there exist damped electrical oscillations of decrement δ_1, the natural decrement of the primary. The natural decrement of the secondary circuit is δ_2. When the secondary circuit is tuned

[1] Delivered before The Institute of Radio Engineers, Washington Section, February 5, 1914. This article is based on a publication in the Bulletin of the Bureau of Standards, Vol. 11 (Scientific Paper Number 235).

Digitized by Google

so that maximum current is induced in it by the primary, it is assumed that its capacity is C_r and the current in it I_r. If the secondary capacity is altered to a new value, C, the current will drop to a value I. Bjerknes has shown that the sum of primary and secondary decrements is given by the equation:

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_r - C}{C} \sqrt{\frac{I^2}{I_r^2 - I^2}}$$

The conditions under which this formula may be applied with sufficient accuracy are,

1. That $\delta_1 + \delta_2$ be small as compared with 2π.
2. That $\frac{C_r - C}{C}$ be small as compared with unity.
3. That the degree of coupling between the circuits be small.

Let us assume that it is desired to determine the logarithmic decrement of the oscillations in the aerial circuit of a radio transmitter as shown in Figure 1. A circuit containing inductance

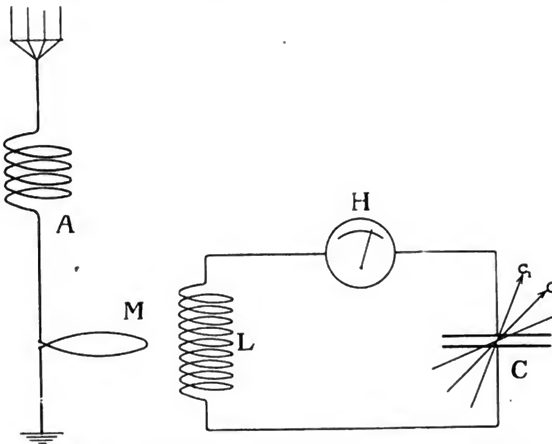


FIGURE I—Decremeter Circuit Coupled Loosely to the Antenna Circuit of a Transmitter

L, a calibrated variable condenser C, and a sensitive low resistance hot-wire instrument H, is very loosely coupled to the aerial or antenna circuit A. Readings of the hot-wire instrument

H, which are proportional to the square of the current in the circuit, are taken for several values of capacity C on both sides of the resonant value C_r. Plotting these readings against capacity, a resonance curve such as Figure 2 is obtained, and from one of the following formulas,[2] the sum of the logarithmic decrements δ_1 and δ_2 may be obtained.

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_r - C_1}{C_1} \sqrt{\frac{I^2}{I_r^2 - I^2}}$$

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_2 - C_r}{C_2} \sqrt{\frac{I^2}{I_r^2 - I^2}}$$

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_2 - C_1}{C_2 + C_1} \sqrt{\frac{I^2}{I_r^2 - I^2}}$$

If the decrement δ_2 of the measuring circuit has been previously determined, the decrement δ_1 of the aerial circuit under test is at once obtained.

Altho the measurement of the logarithmic decrement as outlined above appears to be comparatively simple, nevertheless, to obtain reasonably consistent and accurate results, the observations must be taken with considerable care, the resonance curve must be plotted on a large scale, and calculations must be made from several points on the curve. In fact, it is only with laboratory conveniences that satisfactory measurements can be obtained.

The instrument, which it is the purpose of this paper to describe, was designed for the purpose of facilitating the work involved in making measurements of decrement and yet permitting as great accuracy as can be expected in the ordinary laboratory method. These requirements are particularly desirable for the purposes of the inspection service of the Bureau of Navigation in the enforcement of the radio communication laws. The inspection of a radio station on board ship, for example, has to be done quickly and in many cases under very unfavorable circumstances.

In Figure 2, a typical resonance curve is shown, and the task of obtaining the logarithmic decrement by the ordinary method is indicated. Identical results are obtained in a very much shorter time by means of the direct reading instrument.

[2] In practice it is found permissible to make the change in capacity from C_r to C_1 such that I^2 becomes $\frac{1}{2}I_r^2$, thus making the expression under the radical sign equal to unity.

Digitized by Google

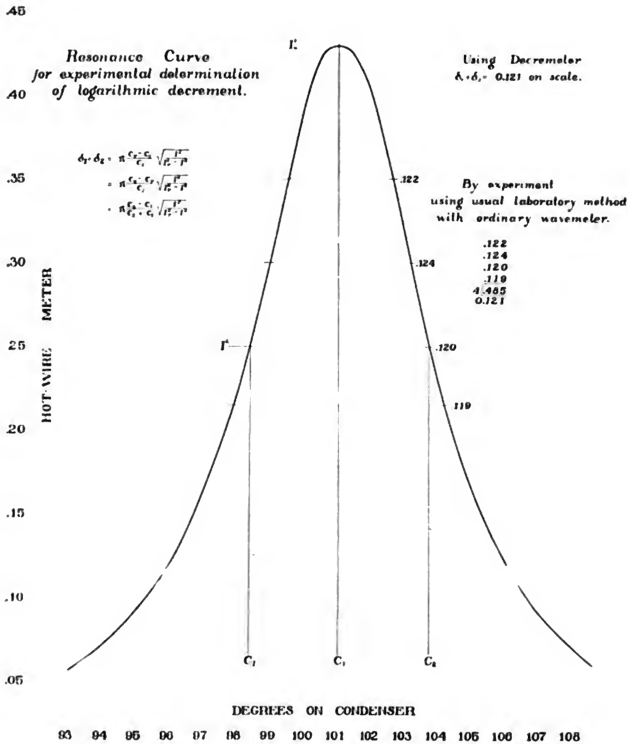


FIGURE 2—Resonance Curve for Experimental Determination of Logarithmic Decrement

THEORY OF THE INSTRUMENT

The shape of the moving plates or surfaces of the ordinary variable condenser in common use is such that for equal angular displacements of these surfaces from the position of minimum capacity to that of maximum capacity, an approximately straight line variation of capacity is obtained. It is evident, therefore, that for any given displacement of the plates, the percentage change of capacity, $\frac{\Delta C}{C}$ will not be equal to that

obtained for an equal displacement of the plates at any other point.

In order to make it possible to attach to a variable condenser a single predetermined scale giving values of logarithmic decrement corresponding to various percentage changes of capacity thruout the range of capacity of the condenser as defined by the Bjerknes formula,

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_r - C}{C}, \text{ for } I^2 = \tfrac{1}{2} I_r^2,$$

the capacity variation with equal displacements of the moving plates must be such that for any given displacement of the plates, taken at any point from the original position of the plates to their final position,

$$\frac{C_r - C}{C} = \frac{\Delta C}{C} = \text{a constant.}$$

The problem, therefore, of constructing a direct reading instrument for decrement measurements is largely that of determining the proper shape for the plates or surfaces of the condenser to produce a variable capacity such that for any given displacement the value of $\frac{\Delta C}{C}$ will be constant thruout the range of motion of the moving surfaces.

In other words, for a displacement of ΔX, Figure 3,

$$\frac{C_2 - C_1}{C_1} = \frac{C_3 - C_2}{C_2} = \frac{C_4 - C_3}{C_3} = \ldots\ldots \frac{C_n - C_{n-1}}{C_{n-1}}$$

but if, $$\frac{C_2 - C_1}{C_1} = \frac{C_3 - C_2}{C_2}$$

then $$C_2^2 = C_1 C_3, \text{ or } C_2 = \sqrt{C_1 C_3}$$

similarly, $$C_3 = \sqrt{C_2 C_4}$$

or, $$C_n = \sqrt{C_{n-1} C_{n+1}}$$

It is seen, therefore, that the capacity of the variable condenser must vary in accordance with the law of geometric progression, and it is now easy to formulate the equation giving the connection between the value of capacity and the position

Digitized by Google

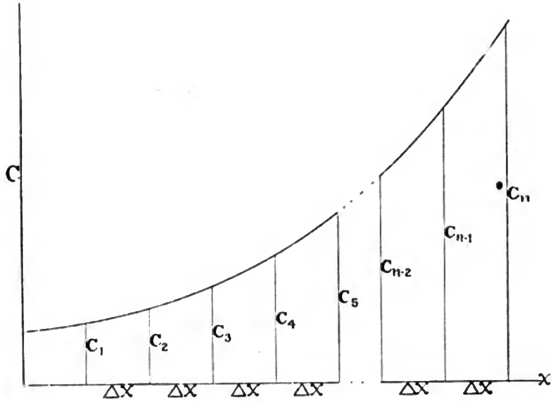


FIGURE 3—Capacity Varying in Accordance with the Law of Geometric Progression

of the moving plates, for since the curve of capacity must obey the law of geometric progression, we have the following, Figure 4.

$$
\begin{array}{rll}
\text{at } x = o & \text{let } C_o = aK^o = a \\
\text{then at } x = 1 & C_1 = aK^1 \\
x = 2 & C_2 = aK^2 \\
x = 3 & C_3 = aK^3 \\
\vdots \quad \vdots & \vdots \quad \vdots \\
x = n^n & C_n = aK^n,
\end{array}
$$

or, in general,
$$C = aK^x \tag{1}$$

This is equivalent to equation (1) derived above.[1]

[1] This law might have been deduced more directly as follows: The fundamental requirement of the condenser may be written:

$$\frac{dC}{C} = ndx \tag{2}$$

$$\therefore \log C = nx + h$$

and
$$C = \varepsilon^{nx+h} = \alpha\varepsilon^{nx}$$

For the case of a rotary condenser where θ is the displacement angle in degrees

$$C = a\,\varepsilon^{m\theta} \tag{3}$$

Digitized by Google

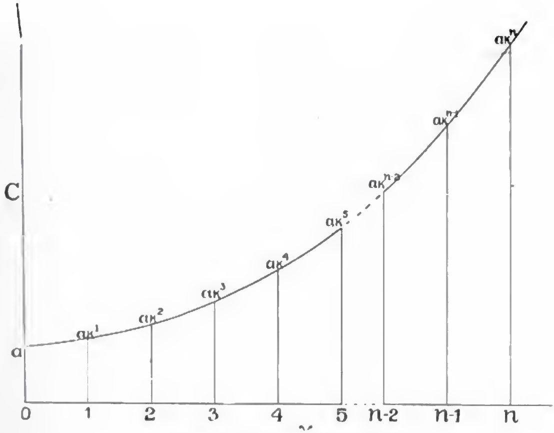


FIGURE 4—Geometric Progression

DESIGN OF CONDENSER

Since the capacity of a condenser is directly proportional to the active area of the movable surface, neglecting edge effects we may write,

$$A = b\,\varepsilon^{m\theta}$$

A being the area of the active surface of the moving plate, and θ the angle of displacement.

If we now consider Figure 5, the actual shape of the moving plate can be determined.

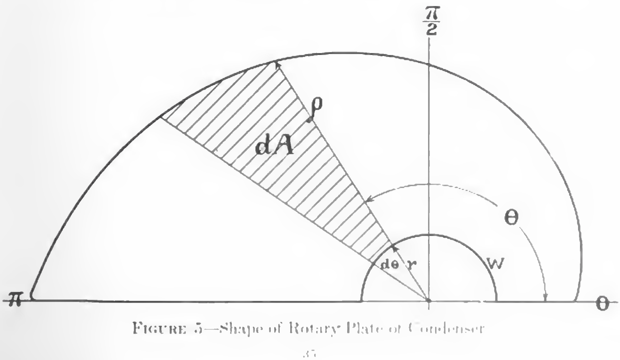


FIGURE 5—Shape of Rotary Plate of Condenser

Digitized by Google

By analogy with equation (2)

$$\frac{d\,A}{A} = m\,d\,\theta$$

or, $$d\,A = b\,m\,\varepsilon^{m\theta}\,d\,\theta$$

but, $$d\,A = \frac{1}{2}\left(\rho^2 - r^2\right)d\,\theta$$

ρ being the distance from the center O to the enveloping curve of the plate, or the radius vector, and r being the radius of the small circular space occupied by the separating washers between the plates.

Then $$\frac{1}{2}\rho^2 - \frac{1}{2}r^2 = b\,m\,\varepsilon^{m\theta}$$

and $$\rho = \sqrt{2\,b\,m\,\varepsilon^{m\theta} + r^2}$$

b and m are constants which determine the minimum and maximum values of capacity of the condenser to be used, and having chosen these constants to suit our particular requirements, we can immediately determine the size and shape of our plates and construct a condenser, the capacity of which will vary in accordance with the law of geometric progression.

In Figure 6 are shown the stationary and rotary plates of the condenser. The stationary plates are made semicircular for convenience.

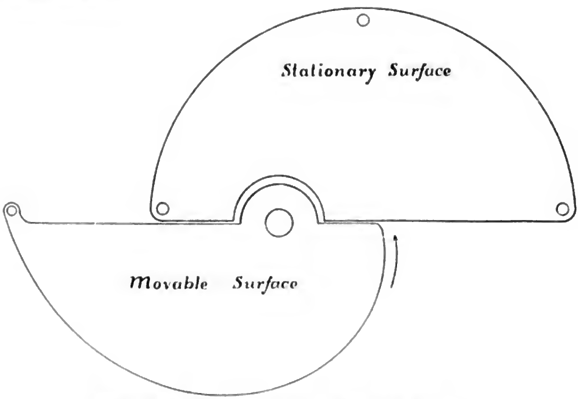


FIGURE 6—Stationary Surface, Movable Surface

Digitized by Google

Equations (1) and (3) are identical and we may write

$$K^x = \varepsilon^{m\theta}$$

or

$$x \log K = m\,\theta$$

therefore

$$m = \frac{x \log K}{\theta}$$

If we assume that when

$$x = 1, \ \theta = 180^{\circ}$$

then

$$x = \frac{\theta}{180}$$

and

$$m = \frac{\log K}{180}$$

therefore,

$$C = a\,\varepsilon^{\frac{\log K}{180}\theta}$$

for

$$\theta = o, \ C_o = a$$

for

$$\theta = 180^{\circ} \qquad C_{180} = a\,K$$

hence, the ratio between maximum and minimum capacity will be

$$\frac{C_{180}}{C_o} = K$$

In order to obtain the ratio K which has been chosen to suit our particular requirements, a fixed condenser is connected in parallel with the rotary condenser. The capacity of this fixed condenser is determined experimentally.

A rotary condenser constructed in accordance with the theory just given, with a fixed capacity connected in parallel with it, so chosen as to give the desired ratio between the maximum and minimum capacity of the combined condensers, will give a calibration curve in exact agreement with theoretical values.

DETERMINATION OF DECREMENT SCALE

It has been shown that since the capacity of the condenser to be used in the instrument varies in accordance with the law of geometric progression, the term $\frac{C_r - C}{C}$ in the formula,

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_r - C}{C} \sqrt{\frac{I^2}{I_r^2 - I^2}} = \pi \frac{C_r - C}{C}$$

when

$$I^2 = \frac{1}{2} I_r^2$$

will remain constant for any given angular displacement of the rotary plates thruout the range of motion from 0° to 180°.

In order, therefore, to predetermine a scale which can be attached to the rotary condenser and which will indicate directly the value of $\delta_1 + \delta_2$ for various displacements of the rotary plates, the following calculations are made.

$$\text{Case I: } \delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_r - C_1}{C_1}$$

where C_r is the value of capacity at resonance and C_1 is a smaller capacity of such a value that the current squared is reduced to one-half of its value at complete resonance.

Since C_r is proportional to $\varepsilon^{m\theta_r}$ and C_1 is proportional to $\varepsilon^{m\theta_1}$, we may write

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{\varepsilon^{m\theta_r} - \varepsilon^{m\theta_1}}{\varepsilon^{m\theta_1}} = \pi\left(\varepsilon^{m(\theta_r - \theta_1)} - 1\right).$$

Let $\qquad \delta = \delta_1 + \delta_2$ for convenience,

then, $$\varepsilon^{m(\theta_r - \theta_1)} = \frac{\delta}{\pi} + 1 = \frac{\delta + \pi}{\pi}$$

and $$\theta_r - \theta_1 = \frac{1}{m} \log \frac{\delta + \pi}{\pi}$$

The displacement angle $\Delta\theta = \theta_r - \theta_1$ may therefore be immediately calculated for various values of $\delta = \delta_1 + \delta_2$. m is as before a constant dependent upon the ratio of maximum to minimum capacity of the condenser and is equal to $\frac{\log K}{180}$, where K represents this ratio.

$$\text{Case II: } \delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_2 - C_r}{C_2}$$

where C_r is again the value of capacity at complete resonance and C_2 is a larger capacity of such a value that the current squared is reduced to one-half of the value at complete resonance.

Since C_2 is proportional to $\varepsilon^{m\theta_2}$ and C_r is proportional to $\varepsilon^{m\theta_r}$

$$\delta = \delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{\varepsilon^{m\theta_2} - \varepsilon^{m\theta_r}}{\varepsilon^{m\theta_2}} = \pi\left(1 - \frac{\varepsilon^{m\theta_r}}{\varepsilon^{m\theta_2}}\right)$$

then $$\varepsilon^{m(\theta_2 - \theta_r)} = \frac{\pi}{\pi - \delta}$$

and $$\theta_2 - \theta_r = \frac{1}{m} \log \frac{\pi}{\pi - \delta}$$

and again, the displacement angle $\Delta\theta = \theta_2 - \theta_r$ may be readily calculated for various values of $\delta = \delta_1 + \delta_2$.

Digitized by Google

For the particular case in question, the following angles and corresponding decrements as calculated are tabulated:

$\delta_1 + \delta_2$	Case I. Reducing capacity from resonance: $\theta_r - \theta_1$	Case II. Increasing capacity from resonance: $\theta_2 - \theta_r$
0.05	1°.292	1°.313
0.10	2 .564	2 .650
0.15	3 .821	4 .008
0.20	5 .055	5 .389
0.25	6 .272	6 .793
0.30	7 .472	8 .222

It should be emphasized that the formula

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_r - C}{C} \sqrt{\frac{I^2}{I^2_r - I^2}}$$

does not strictly apply in cases where $\delta_1 + \delta_2$ is great in comparison with 2π and $\frac{C_r - C}{C}$ is great in comparison with unity.

For $\delta_1 + \delta_2 = 0.2$ the formula may still be applied for practical purposes with reasonable accuracy. In the foregoing tabulation calculations have been made for $\delta_1 + \delta_2$ as high as 0.3, but the method and formula should preferably not be applied at values of $\delta_1 + \delta_2$ greater than 0.2.

It will be noted that the angles tabulated above are very small, and if the decrement scale were attached directly to the shaft of the condenser it would be extremely short and difficult to read.

In order to open out the scale, it is geared to the condenser shaft at a 6-to-1 ratio, as shown in Figure 7.

Furthermore, the decrement readings are taken in such a way as to simultaneously include both measurements as defined by cases I and II. The displacement angle is then the sum of the angles tabulated under these two cases.

$$\Delta\theta = \theta_2 - \theta_r + \theta_r - \theta_1 = \theta_2 - \theta_1$$

The value of this angle $\Delta\theta = \theta_2 - \theta_1$ could have been calculated directly from the formula

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_2 - C_1}{C_2 + C_1}$$

for since C_2 is proportional to $\varepsilon^{m\theta_2}$ and C_1 is proportional to $\varepsilon^{m\theta_1}$, then carrying out the method used in cases I and II we get directly,

$$\theta_2 - \theta_1 = \frac{1}{m} \log \frac{\pi + \delta}{\pi - \delta}$$

Digitized by Google

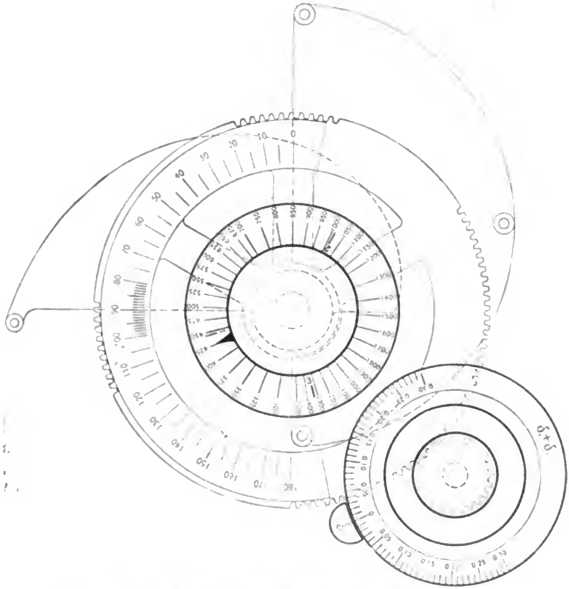


FIGURE 7—Variable Condenser, Showing Gears and Scales Mechanically Attached

The final graduations for the decrement scale are obtained by multiplying $\theta_2 - \theta_1$ by the gear ratio of 6, as in the following table:

$\delta_1 + \delta_2$	$\theta_2 - \theta_1$	$(\theta_2 - \theta_1) \times 6$
0.	0	0
0.05	2°.605	15°.63
0.10	5 .214	31 .28
0.15	7 .830	46 .98
0.20	10 .444	62 .70
0.25	13 .065	78 .39
0.30	15 .694	94 .20

The decrement scale is marked to the left and to the right of zero in accordance with this table.

Digitized by Google

Considering now Figure 8, the operation for measuring the logarithmic decrement is as follows:

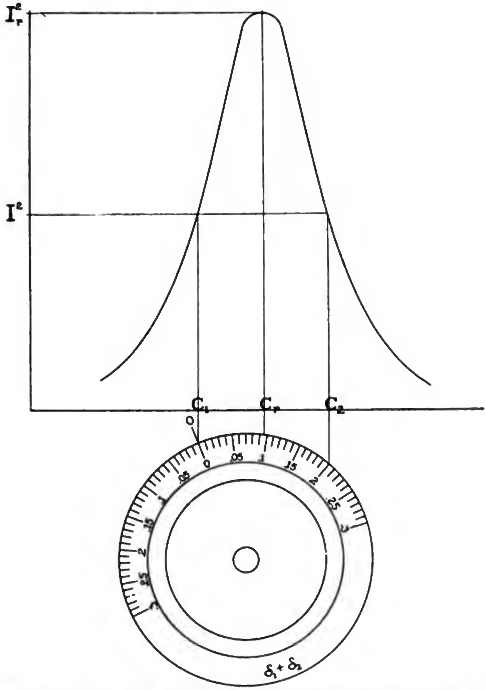


FIGURE 8—Diagram Showing Relation Between Decrement Scale and Resonance Curve

The rotary condenser is first set at the position of complete resonance as indicated by the maximum deflection of the sensitive hot-wire instrument, the scale readings of which are proportional to the current squared. This maximum deflection is now reduced to one-half its value by decreasing or increasing the capacity of the rotary condenser. The decrement scale, which may be rotated independently, is now set at zero, then clamped so that when the condenser is again varied it will rotate with it.

Digitized by Google

Starting at the zero setting with the hot-wire instrument reading one-half the maximum deflection, the condenser is varied continuously in one direction until the needle of the hot-wire instrument makes a complete excursion from one-half deflection to maximum deflection and back again to one-half deflection. The scale reading now opposite the index mark O is the value of $\delta_1 + \delta_2$, δ_1 being the decrement of the circuit under test and δ_2 the known decrement of the instrument.

It will be noted by referring to Figure 7, that it is desirable to make the zero setting of the decrement scale at the point of half deflection and also to take the final reading at the point of half deflection, because at these points the resonance curve is steep, and consequently the settings are sharply defined and easily made. In this connection it will be noted that the formula

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_2 - C_1}{C_2 + C_1}$$

does not involve the resonant value of capacity C_r, but only those at the points of half deflection where the slope of the resonance curve is steep. This formula is therefore the most desirable one to use, and the decremeter is consequently operated in accordance with it.

In Figure 9 a schematic diagram of the circuit is shown. I is a single-turn coil which may be connected in the circuit under test, as, for example, the aerial circuit of a radio transmitter. The inductance of this single turn is, in the majority of practical cases, small as compared with the total inductance of the circuit under test, and therefore will not affect the tuning adjustment.

The coil L is the inductance of the decremeter circuit and is so arranged that the mutual inductance between it and coil I can be easily varied. It is very essential that the degree of coupling between the circuit under test and the decremeter circuit be small.

C_v is the variable condenser to which the decrement scale is attached thru gears. In parallel with C_v is a small condenser C_f which remains fixed in value after proper adjustment.

H represents the hot-wire instrument or indicating device, the scale of which is so marked that the readings are proportional to the square of the current passing thru it.

A crystal dector D is provided and the wave length of distant stations may be measured by using telephone receivers T.

By means of a switch, the buzzer circuit R B E may be connected to the instrument for calibration purposes.

Digitized by Google

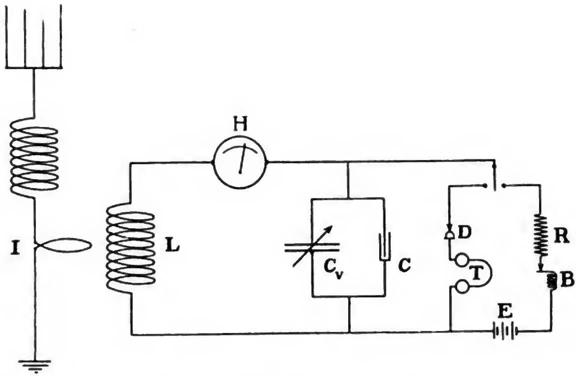


FIGURE 9—Diagram of Connections

Figure 10 shows a top view of the instrument in detail.

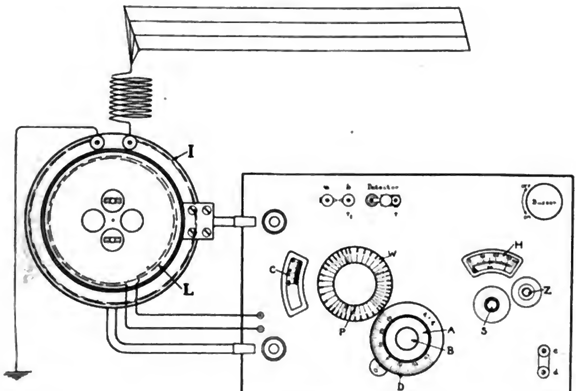


FIGURE 10—Top View of Decremeter

W = Wave length scale
C = Condenser scale in degrees
D = Decrement scale
H = Scale of hot wire instrument
A = Knob operating variable condenser

B = Clamping screw
S = Short circuit release
Z = Zero adjusting screw
a b = Terminals of condensers
c d = Terminals for series connection

Digitized by Google

EXPERIMENTAL DATA

In order to determine the accuracy of the instrument for measurement of $\delta_1 + \delta_2$ the following experiments were made:

Experiment 1.—The decremeter was used as an ordinary wave meter, loosely coupled to the secondary of a quenched spark transmitter. A resonance curve was obtained similar to that shown in Figure 2, and for several ratios $\frac{I_r^2}{I^2}$, $\delta_1 + \delta_2$ was calculated from the formula

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = 2\pi \frac{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1}{\lambda_2 + \lambda_1} \sqrt{\frac{I^2}{I_r^2 - I^2}}$$

and the following values obtained:

$\frac{I_r^2}{I_2}$	$\delta_1 + \delta_2$
1.180	0.0970
1.475	0.0893
1.735	0.0911
2.000	0.0903
Average	0.0919

A single measurement obtained by means of the decremeter used as a direct reading instrument gave at once a value of 0.091 for $\delta_1 + \delta_2$

A further check was obtained by calculating the required value of $\theta_2 - \theta_1$ for $\delta_1 + \delta_2 = 0.091$ from the formula

$$\theta_2 - \theta_1 = \frac{1}{m} \log \frac{\pi + \delta}{\pi - \delta} \text{ for } I^2 = \frac{1}{2} I_r^2$$

$\theta_2 - \theta_1 = 4°.75$ by calculation

$\theta_2 - \theta_1 = 4°.68$ as determined from the experimentally obtained resonance curve.

Experiment 2.—In this experiment the decremeter was again loosely coupled to the secondary circuit of a quenched spark transmitter and a direct measurement made of $\delta_1 + \delta_2$. A resistance, in the form of a short straight piece of about No. 40 manganin wire, was then inserted in the circuit of the instrument and a direct measurement made of $\delta_1 + \delta_2 + \Delta\delta_2$, $\Delta\delta_2$ being the additional decrement due to the inserted resistance.

The capacity of the condenser and the frequency of the oscillations being known, the value of the inserted resistance R was calculated from the formula

$$R = \frac{\Delta\delta_2}{\pi C \omega}$$

and the following results obtained.

TEST NO. 1

$\delta_1+\delta_2$ read from decrement scale of instrument	$\delta_1+\delta_2+\Delta\delta_2$ read from decrement scale of instrument
0.132	0.168
0.130	0.169
0.130	0.163
0.131	0.172
0.130	0.167
Average = 0.131	Average = 0.168

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 + \Delta\delta_2 = 0.168$$
$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = 0.131$$
$$\therefore \quad \Delta\delta_2 \quad 0.037$$

Capacity of condenser at resonance = 334 $\mu.\mu.f.$

$$\omega = 2\pi n = 3.66 \times 10^6.$$

$$R = \frac{\Delta\delta_2}{\pi C\omega} = 9.63\Omega$$

By measurement on D. C. bridge,

$$R = 9.51\Omega$$

Another test was made at a different frequency and consequently with a different value of capacity.

TEST NO. 2

$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 + \Delta\delta_2 = 0.155$$
$$\delta_1 + \delta_2 = 0.099$$
$$\Delta\delta_2 = 0.056$$

Capacity of condenser at resonance = 764 $\mu.\mu.f.$

$$\omega = 2\pi n = 2.47 \times 10^6$$

$$R = \frac{\Delta\delta_2}{\pi C\omega} = 9.45^{\Omega}$$

Value of R measured on D. C. bridge = 9.51.

$$\text{Test No. 1: } R = 9.63^{\Omega}$$
$$\text{Test No. 2: } R = 9.45^{\Omega}$$
$$\text{Average} = 9.54^{\Omega}$$

Experiment 3.—In this case resistance was inserted in the secondary circuit of the transmitter and the value of this resistance calculated in the same manner as in experiment 2.

Digitized by Google

TEST No. 1

$$
\begin{aligned}
\delta_1 + \Delta\delta_1 + \delta_2 &= 0.141 \\
\delta_1 \qquad\quad + \delta_2 &= 0.089 \\
\Delta\delta_1 \qquad\quad &= 0.052
\end{aligned}
$$

Capacity of condenser at resonance = 3900 $\mu.\mu.f.$

$$\omega = 2\pi n = 3.35 \times 10^6$$

$$R = \frac{\Delta\delta_1}{\pi C\omega} = 1.27^{\Omega}$$

Value of R measured on D. C. bridge = 1.242^{Ω}

TEST No. 2

$$
\begin{aligned}
\delta_1 + \Delta\delta_1 + \delta_2 &= 0.111 \\
\delta_1 + \qquad\quad \delta_2 &= 0.074 \\
\Delta\delta_1 \qquad\quad &= 0.037
\end{aligned}
$$

Capacity of condenser at resonance = 3900 $\mu.\mu.f.$

$$\omega = 2.43 \times 10^6$$

$$R = \frac{\Delta\delta_1}{\pi C\omega} = 1.24^{\Omega}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text{Test No. 1: } R &= 1.27^{\Omega} \\
\text{Test No. 2: } R &= 1.24^{\Omega} \\
\text{Average} &= 1.255^{\Omega}
\end{aligned}
$$

DETERMINATION OF WAVE-LENGTH SCALE

Since the capacity of the variable condenser in the instrument varies according to a definitely known law, it is possible to attach to this condenser a predetermined scale indicating wave lengths directly. The graduations of the wave length scale are determined by calculation in the following manner:

It has been shown that the capacity of the condenser may be expressed as $C = a\varepsilon^{m\theta}$.

The wave length λ is proportional to $\sqrt{C}$

therefore, λ is proportional to $\sqrt{\varepsilon^{m\theta}}$

or λ is proportional to $\varepsilon^{\frac{m\theta}{2}} = \varepsilon^{n\theta}$

where $n = \dfrac{m}{2}$

Digitized by Google

Now let λ_1 be any wave length within the range of the instrument, and λ_2 any other wave length desired, then

$$\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} = \frac{\varepsilon^{n\theta_2}}{\varepsilon^{n\theta_1}} = \varepsilon^{n(\theta_2 - \theta_1)}$$

and $$\log\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} = n(\theta_2 - \theta_1)$$

or $$\theta_2 - \theta_1 = \frac{1}{n}\log\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} = \frac{2}{m}\log\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1}$$

therefore $$\theta_2 = \theta_1 \pm \frac{2}{m}\log\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1}$$

For the purpose of determining the graduations for the scale, λ_1 may be any wave length, as, for example, 300 meters. Furthermore, θ_1 may be taken as zero, for convenience, then

$$\theta_2 = \pm\frac{2}{m}\log\frac{\lambda_2}{300}$$

From this equation θ_2 may be calculated for any wave length λ_2.

The scale is arranged so that it can rotate about the shaft of the variable condenser independently but remains stationary when the condenser is rotated. A pointer is attached to the shaft of the condenser and travels over the scale as the condenser rotates.

In order to cover a wide range of wave lengths, several coils are supplied with the instrument, each coil covering a part of the range. It is necessary, therefore, to adjust the position of the wave length scale to correspond with the particular coil in circuit. Red marks on the wave length scale indicate the maximum wave length obtainable with the coils 1, 2, and 3, respectively. The position of these red marks is determined experimentally.

THE MEASUREMENT OF WAVE LENGTH

The variable condenser is first set at 180°, the wave length scale is then adjusted so that the red mark on the scale corresponding to the coil in circuit is directly under the pointer attached to the condenser shaft. The wave length scale remains in this position and, as the condenser is varied, the pointer travels over the scale, indicating the wave length when resonance is obtained, as shown by the maximum reading of the hot-wire instrument needle.

When the instrument is used as a receiver with detector and telephones, or as a transmitter using the buzzer, the wave length

Digitized by Google

scale does not strictly apply for the wave length range below the 90° position of the condenser. In these cases it is necessary to refer to calibration curves for the small correction.

The instrument may be used in an interesting manner for receiving audible signals from a source of undamped oscillations, such as an arc circuit or a high frequency alternator. To accomplish this, oscillations are set up in the wave meter circuit by means of the buzzer and the telephone receivers are connected to the detector at T and to the binding post a instead of b (see Figure 10). Under these conditions, when undamped oscillations are induced in the circuit, a heterodyne effect is produced and the wave meter becomes a comparatively sensitive receiver of undamped oscillations. Very weak harmonics existing in arc circuits may be readily measured by using the instrument in this manner.

DETERMINATION OF THE DECREMENT OF THE INSTRUMENT

To obtain the logarithmic decrement, δ_1 of the circuit under test, it is necessary to know δ_2, the decrement of the instrument, in order that it may be subtracted from the scale reading which is $\delta_1 + \delta_2$.

An ideal method for determining δ_2 would be to charge the condenser of the instrument at a given potential and allow it to discharge thru the circuit, first without inserted resistance and then with a known resistance inserted in the circuit, noting in each case the reading of the hot-wire instrument.

The energy in the circuit in both cases would then be equal and,

$$I_1^2 R = I_2^2 \ (R + \Delta R)$$

where R is the resistance of the circuit and ΔR is the resistance inserted. Then,

$$R = \Delta R \frac{I_2^2}{I_1^2 - I_2^2}$$

where I_2^2 and I_1^2 represent, respectively, the readings of the hot-wire instrument with and without inserted resistance, these readings being proportional to the square of the current flowing in the circuit.

If the inductance L or capacity C of the circuit are known, δ_2 is then determined for any value of ω, since,

$$\delta_2 = \pi RC\omega = \pi \frac{R}{L\omega}$$

Digitized by Google

A method used in practice which approaches this ideal case very closely is as follows:

Energy is supplied to the instrument by means of impact excitation, in which case nearly free oscillations exist in the circuit of the instrument. These oscillations, therefore, have a frequency and damping determined by the constants of the circuit. To determine the resistance of the circuit, readings of the hot-wire instrument are taken with and without inserted resistance. The energy in the circuit, however, would not in practice be strictly equal in the two cases and

$$I_1^2 R = K I_2^2 (R + \Delta R)$$

or

$$R = \Delta R \frac{K I_2^2}{I_1^2 - K I_2^2}$$

It has been shown in previous works[1] on this subject that

$$K = 1 + \frac{\Delta \delta}{\delta_1 + \delta_2}$$

where δ_1 is the decrement of the exciting circuit, δ_2 the decrement of the instrument circuit, and $\Delta\delta$ the additional decrement due to the insertion of a small resistance ΔR.

It is seen that for the case of impact excitation where δ_1 is very large as compared to $\Delta\delta$, K will be very nearly unity and for practical purposes we may write

$$R = \Delta R \frac{I_2^2}{I_1^2 - I_2^2} = \Delta R \frac{1}{\frac{I_1^2}{I_2^2} - 1}$$

Where it is desired to make ΔR, the inserted resistance equal to R, the resistance of the instrument circuit, which corresponds to making $\Delta\delta$ equal to δ_2, then for the case of impact excitation,

$$\frac{I_1^2}{I_2^2} = 2$$

On the other hand, if $\delta_1 = 0$ as in the case of undamped oscillations,

$$K = 2 \text{ and } \frac{I_1^2}{I_2^2} = 4$$

In general, therefore, when it is desired to make the inserted

[1] Lehrbuch der Drahtlosen Telegraphie. Zenneck, 1913, p. 142.

Digitized by Google

resistance ΔR equal to the resistance of the instrument R, the amount by which I_1^2 must be reduced or the ratio of $\frac{I_1^2}{I_2^2}$ depends upon the ratio of δ_1 to δ_2, for when $\Delta\delta = \delta_2$

$$K = 1 + \frac{\delta_2}{\delta_1 + \delta_2} = 1 + \frac{1}{\frac{\delta_1}{\delta_2} + 1}$$

and for $$\delta_1 = 0,\ K = 2 \text{ and } \frac{I_1^2}{I_2^2} = 4$$

$$\delta_1 = \infty,\ K = 1 \text{ and } \frac{I_1^2}{I_2^2} = 2$$

For intermediate values of $\frac{\delta_1}{\delta_2}$ between 0 and ∞, K will vary from 2 to 1 and the ratio $\frac{I_1^2}{I_2^2}$ correspondingly from 4 to 2.

The most direct and simple method, however, for obtaining δ_2 is to excite the instrument by means of undamped oscillations. Then

$$\delta_2 = \pi \frac{C_2 - C_1}{C_2 + C_1} \sqrt{\frac{I^2}{I_r^2 - I^2}}$$

as shown in the earlier part of this paper.

If suitable means for producing undamped oscillation are not available the method of impact excitation is very satisfactory, provided that δ_1 is very large as compared with $\Delta\delta$.

The curves in Figure 11 give the values of δ_2 for coils 1, 2, and 3, at various settings of the variable condenser. These values were obtained by the method of impact excitation.

On curve 3 are shown values of δ_2 obtained by using undamped oscillations from a Poulsen arc as a source of excitation.

In Figure 12, the assembled decremeter is shown, with the cover of the carrying case turned back. As will be seen, the coupling and decremeter coils and their supports are mounted for transportation in the cover. The function of the other parts shown is made clear by reference to the key of Figure 10. Figure 13 is a photograph of the interior of the instrument. To the right is the special variable condenser, and to the left the variable condenser which is set once for all in the initial calibration of the instrument. This latter condenser is of the rectangular sliding interwoven plate type

Digitized by Google

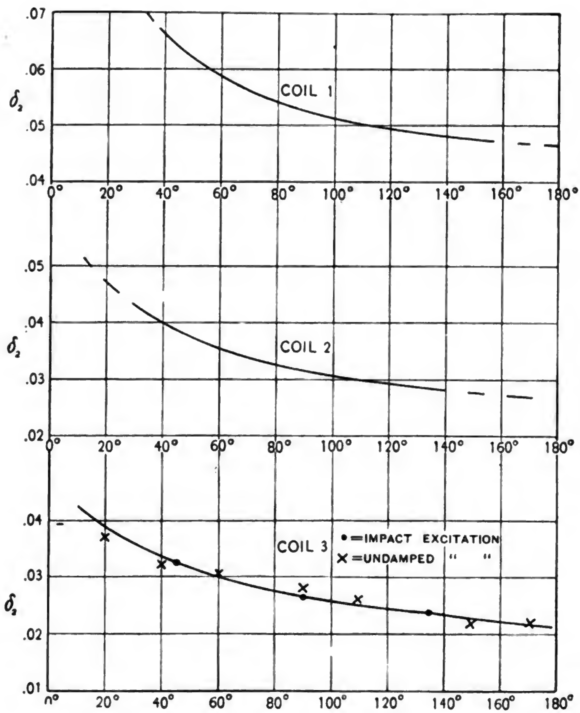


FIGURE 11—Decrement of Instrument

SUMMARY: A new type of direct-reading decremeter and wave meter is described. It is based on the Bjerknes method, but much simplifies the measurement and increases the accuracy thereof. The variable condenser of this wave meter is of a special type, the movable plates being cut to an appropriate outline. By placing a fixed capacity in parallel with this variable condenser, which fixed capacity is adjusted once for all in each instrument, a standard and predetermined calibration curve can be used with all instruments. The design and construction of the apparatus is given in detail, and a number of measurements with it are considered critically. Several methods of determining the decrement of the instrument itself are shown. The instrument can also be used as an exciting circuit of known wave length and decrement. An interesting example of heterodyne reception of sustained oscillations with this instrument is described.

Digitized by Google

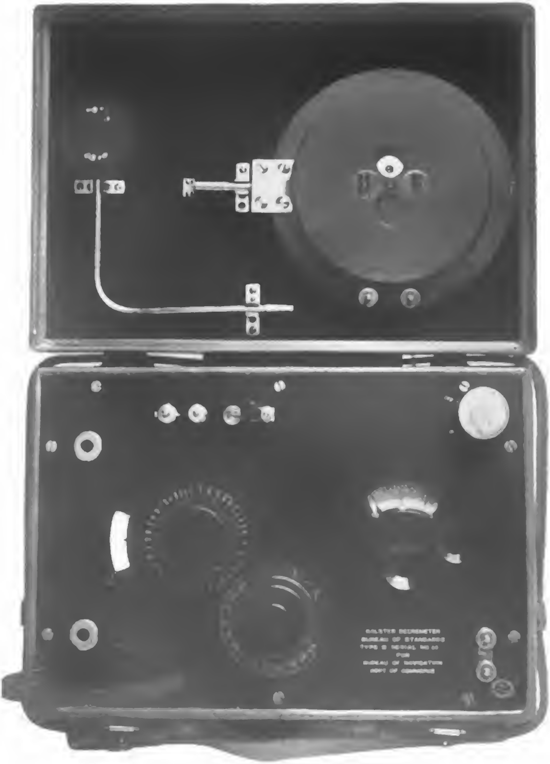


FIGURE 12—Decremeter Mounted in Leather Carrying Case

Digitized by Google

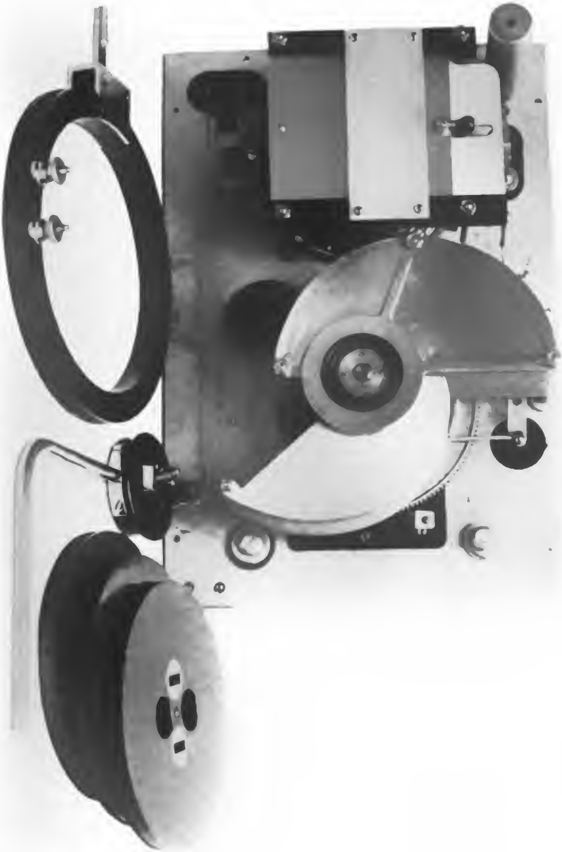


FIGURE 13—Interior View of Decremeter Showing Condensers

Digitized by Google

RADIO FREQUENCY CHANGERS*

By

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH

For a considerable number of years after its inception, the development of radio transmission was bound up practically completely with the generation of radio frequency currents by means of the discharge of a condenser in an oscillatory circuit which contained a spark gap discharger. The use of a section of an ionised gas in an oscillatory circuit has never completely satisfied those members of the radio engineering fraternity who are most imbued with the older and more usual methods of generating various types of alternating currents. To them the employment of a spark (which is a never failing source of thermal energy dissipation) has seemed an uncertain method, and they have always believed that the deterioration, uncertainty, and impairment of efficiency of such apparatus did not compensate for its simplicity and comparative inexpensiveness. We shall not here attempt to decide the relative merits of the spark methods of generating radio frequency currents and the newer alternator-frequency changer methods. Such an attempt would be necessary futile, since only time, patient development of the frequency changers, and detailed experiments under widely varied conditions could definitely settle the question. We shall merely confine ourselves to a description of the various types of apparatus whereby the frequency of an alternating current may be directly increased without the use of the usual gap discharger.

Furthermore, we are completely unconcerned here with the difficult and delicate questions of historical precedence of invention. Unfortunately there can be but little doubt that the courts will be required to adjudicate the property rights of the various inventors in this as in so many other cases. It is only to be hoped that the deterrent influence of such patent litigation on the genuine scientific and commercial development of the frequency changers will be slighter than is usual. We shall

* Delivered before The Institute of Radio Engineers, New York, October 7, 1914; and before the Boston Section, December 3, 1914.

Digitized by Google

attach the names of certain investigators to definite pieces of apparatus as an indication that the investigators in question have clearly described and claimed such apparatus in open publications.

The first method we shall consider is dependent on electrostatic induction and involves the use of moving parts. It was first described by Petersen.† The principle of the machine is illustrated in Figure 1. As will be seen, the terminals of a

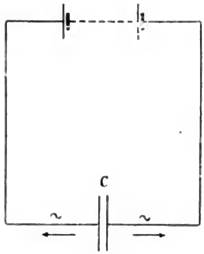


FIGURE 1

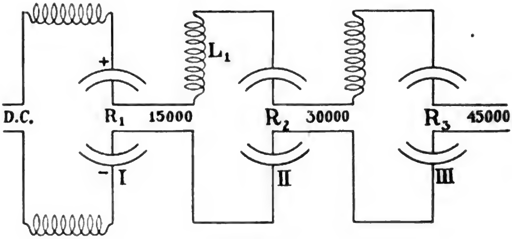


FIGURE 2

battery are connected to the plates of the condenser C. The capacity of the condenser C may be cyclically varied; either by altering the separation of its plates or by altering the dielectric constant of the medium between them. If either of these expedients is adopted, current will flow into the condenser and out of it cyclically, and by appropriate means, alternating current energy can be obtained from the arrangement. It involves

† Petersen, German Patent Number 2578.

Digitized by Google

a simple type of transformation of mechanical energy into alternating electric energy.

The type of machine just described produces the fundamental frequency which is increased by the method shown in Figure 2. At A we have a high voltage source, e. g., a storage battery of many cells. Its terminals are connected thru large inductances to the field plates of generator I. Within the strong electric field thus produced, two sets of insulated plates rotate. Alternating differences of potential appear at the terminals of the rotating armature plates. By properly constructing the machine, with due regard to the necessary limits of tensile strength of the materials used, it may be possible to secure a fundamental frequency of 15,000 cycles per second. The terminals of the armature of generator I are connected thru the carefully adjusted inductance L_1 with the field plates of the second machine, which is a frequency changer. The inductance L_1 is so chosen that the circuit in which it is placed is resonant to the frequency n_1 of generator 1; which may be, say, 15,000. In the electric field of machine II (the first frequency changer) there rotate the armature plates, and their speed of rotation is chosen so that they revolve synchronously with the electric field in which they move There will then appear at their terminals an alternating potential of frequency $2\ n_1$. The reason for this is the following. Let F_m be the maximum field intensity in a vertical direction between the field plates. At any time t the field intensity will be

$$F = F_m \sin \omega t$$

where

$$\omega = 2 \pi n_1.$$

Suppose that the armature plates have rotated thru an angle θ from the position shown in the diagram. Then, if m is a constant, the instantaneous difference of potential **e** between the armature plates is

$$e = m\, F_m \sin \omega t \cos w\, t$$

where

$$w\, t = \theta$$

If, now, we rotate the armature synchronously, so that

$$w = \omega$$

we have

$$e = \frac{m}{2} F_m \sin 2\, \omega t$$

It is thus clear that we are producing an electromotive force of double frequency. Physically this corresponds to the fact

Digitized by Google

that the alternating electric field which is due to the field plates may be regarded as the sum of two rotating electric fields, revolving synchronously in opposite directions. If now the armature also rotated synchronously, it will be stationary relative to one of the rotating component fields and will rotate with twice synchronous speed relative to the other component rotating field. The first of these rotating fields will therefore produce in the armature no alternating potential differences, whereas the second will produce an alternating potential difference of twice the fundamental frequency. This principle should be remembered, since it is also extensively applied in radio frequency changers dependent on electromagnetic induction. As an example of an important machine wherein this method of frequency doubling is employed, the Goldschmidt alternator may be mentioned.

It is therefore evident that in the first frequency changer, an alternating potential difference having a frequency of 30,000 cycles per second will be produced. The process of frequency doubling may be increased thru any desired number of steps; tho, in general with a consequent diminution in over-all efficiency of the system. It is also noteworthy that, by somewhat the same artifice as will be later described in connection with the Goldschmidt alternator, all the frequency transforming processes just described may be caused to take place in a single machine.

As has been stated, each of the circuits consisting of a pair of armature plates, a tuning inductance, and a pair of field plates of the next frequency changer, must be tuned to resonance to the appropriate frequency. The resonance condition, which is readily fulfilled, is that

$$\omega^2 L C = 1$$

where ω is the angular velocity (2π times the frequency), and L and C are the total inductance and capacity of the circuit in question. The final circuit comprises the armature of the last frequency changer, a tuning inductance, and the capacity comprised by antenna and ground.

It is as yet too early to decide even vaguely the probable commercial value of this type of machinery. It must be admitted that the electrostatic machine herein described can be built so as to have the utmost simplicity. To avoid losses thru high voltage brush discharges, the entire machinery might be enclosed in compressed air, as has in fact already been done for the normal types of electrostatic generators. A marked increase in efficiency was thereby produced.

Digitized by Google

Still considering rotary machinery we pass to those frequency changers based on electromagnetic induction. One of the simplest of these is that one worked out independently by E. Arnold and D. Korda in 1893. The circuit diagram is shown in Figure 3.

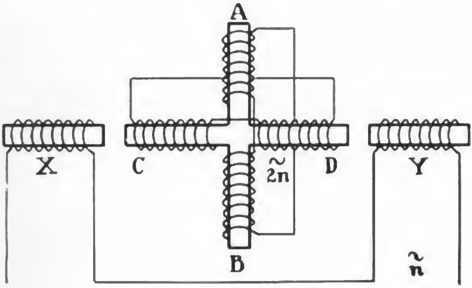


FIGURE 3

In this diagram X and Y are two field coils thru which a single phase alternating current passes. As a matter of practical construction a great number of arrangements of such a field can be employed; for example, a Gramme ring connected to the alternator at two opposite points of its circumference. There will be produced, then, between the coils X and Y a stationary alternating field. The two coils A B and C D, which are mutually perpendicular, rotate in this field. In the figure each of these coils is shown as short-circuited, but instead their terminals may be connected to a slip ring. If now the two coils mentioned rotate at synchronous speed, it can be shown that there will be induced in each of them, electromotive forces of double frequency. The proof of this is quite similar to that already given for the case of the electrostatic generator. Two alternating currents differing in phase by 90 degrees can be obtained from the two rotating coils, and the magnitude of these currents can be brought to a maximum by appropriate tuning thru inserted condensers in the circuits connected to the rotating coils. It can be shown further that the sum of the torques for an entire revolution is zero if the coils are rotating in phase with the field of the field magnets.

If we desire to draw energy from this device, that is, to use it as a generator, the rotating coils must lead the field of the coils

Digitized by Google

X and Y. The process of frequency doubling herein described may be carried thru any number of stages.

The arrangement described may be modified, as Korda has shown, by using stationary armature coils and rotating field coils. A number of ingenious modifications of this method are possible whereby direct current field excitation can be employed and also two phase alternating current excitation. In this latter case, it is possible to produce currents of double frequency but of cyclically varying amplitude; and such a method may well be applicable for tone production in radio frequency generators.

Korda has worked out a very ingenious method whereby the frequency of an alternating current may be directly tripled. In Figure 4 is shown the arrangement previously described with an additional coil E F. The field of the two coils A B and C D compound to a single field having an angular velocity of rotation which is twice that of the coils; that is, twice synchronous speed. If now this field were to rotate in the same direction as the coils rotate, its absolute angular velocity in space would be three times synchronous speed, and if this could be accomplished, there would be induced by it, in the stationary coil E F, a current of three times the fundamental frequency. Unfortunately, in the arrangement shown, the field of the rotating coil rotates in the opposite direction to the coils, and therefore induces in the stationary coil E F a current of the fundamental frequency.

In order to cause this rotating field to have the same direction of rotation as the coils themselves it is necessary to displace the alternating current in one of these coils by 180 degrees in phase. This can be done readily enough in the arrangement shown in Figure 5. Coils 2 and 4, which are mounted parallel to each other on the same shaft, are wound in the same direction and connected as shown. Coils 1 and 3 are mounted parallel to each other on the same shaft, wound in opposite directions, and then connected. Coils 1 and 2 correspond respectively to coils A B and C D of Figure 4. It will be seen that inasmuch as the current in coil 3 has been displaced 180 degrees thru the use of the reversing connection, the field of coils 3 and 4 combined will rotate at twice synchronous speed relative to these coils and in the same direction as that of their rotation. There will therefore be induced in coils 5 and 6 a current of triple frequency. The device described is directly applicable to multipolar machines and it is easily seen that a rapid multiplication of frequency can be produced by its use. It is further advantageous in that no brushes or slip rings are employed.

Digitized by Google

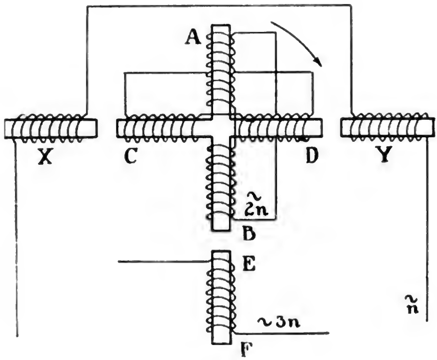


FIGURE 4

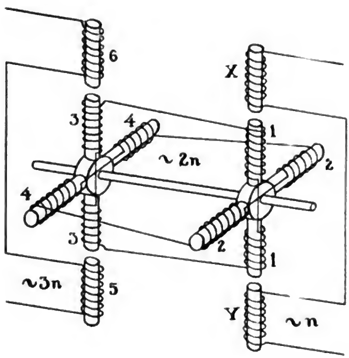


FIGURE 5

A further method based on electromagnetic induction and employing moving parts was described by Cohen in the "Electrical World" in 1908. It was proposed to place a number of alternating current generators on the same shaft, as shown in Figure 6. The field of the first generator was excited by direct current. The armature of each generator was connected thru an appropriate tuning condenser to the field magnets of the next. The device shown is perfectly analogous to Petersen's method previously

Digitized by Google

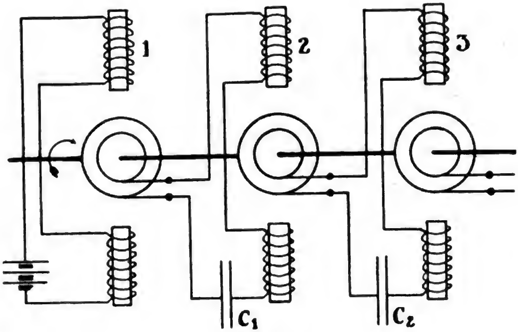


FIGURE 6

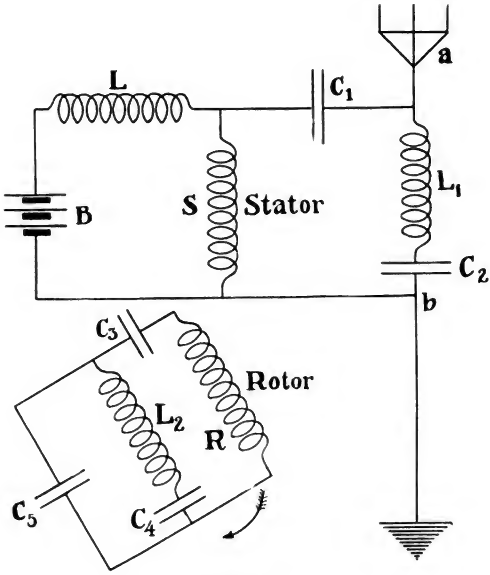


FIGURE 7

Digitized by Google

described. As in that former case, there will be a doubling of frequency in each step. The alternators used in any process of this sort must be particularly adapted to their purpose. A minimum of iron should be used, particularly when working at the higher frequencies. Such iron as is used should have a small hysteresis constant and should be very finely laminated. It may further be stated that the armature reaction in each of the frequency changers will require correction of the values of the tuning condenser of the field magnet circuit of that frequency changer, this correction being different for each different output. The varying permeability of the iron coils employed will introduce a certain error in the tuning, and somewhat diminish the over-all efficiency.

It remained for Dr. R. Goldschmidt to work out the method described in German patent Number 208,206, wherein all the changes of frequency performed by separate machines in the previous method take place in a single machine. It is not necessary for me to describe this method in detail. A full description of it is found in the PROCEEDINGS OF THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, Volume 2, Number 1, page 69, et seq. The method is diagrammatically illustrated in Figure 7. Herein the battery B supplied the current necessary to excite the field magnet S of the stator. L is a large inductance intended to prevent the flow of alternating currents thru the battery circuit. In the field of the stator S is a rotor which is short circuited for the fundamental frequency by means of the capacities C_3 and C_4 and the inductance L_2. It is to be noted that R and C_3 alone would be in resonance to the fundamental frequency, as also would L_2 and C_4. The complete circuit $RC_3L_2C_4$ therefore contains approximately twice the inductance and half the capacity of either RC_3 or L_2C_4. Its period is therefore the same as that of either of these, and even if L_2C_4 were to be short-circuited, the rotor would still be resonant to the fundamental frequency. A perfectly similar arrangement is adopted for the stator by the use of the circuit S C_1 L_1 C_2, except that the circuit in question is tuned to twice the fundamental frequency. It will be seen that as the rotor revolves in the field of the stator, powerful currents of the fundamental frequency will flow thru it. The great magnitude of these currents is due to the fact that the rotor is itself part of a circuit resonant to the fundamental frequency. If we consider the field of the rotor, we may regard it as resolved into two component fields of constant and equal magnitude, rotating in opposite directions relative to the rotor.

Digitized by Google

Their absolute angular velocity relative to the stator will therefore be zero and twice synchronous speed respectively. There will therefore be induced in the stator electromotive forces of twice the fundamental frequency (and zero frequency); and since a circuit resonant to the double frequency is provided, powerful currents will flow thru the stator. These alternating currents of double frequency will induce in the rotor electromotive forces of frequencies 3n and n, where n is the fundamental frequency. By means of the condenser C_5, a path resonant to the frequency 3n is provided in the rotor. By properly choosing the constants of the various rotor circuits, the current of frequency n mentioned first can be made very nearly to neutralize the second current of frequency n which we have mentioned. The reason for this is that these currents may be brought to nearly complete opposition in phase, and equal amplitude. There will be left then in the rotor a powerful current of triple frequency. Its field may be resolved into two equal and constant revolving fields, rotating in opposite directions, with absolute angular velocities twice and four times the fundamental angular velocity. There will therefore be induced in the stator, currents of frequency 2n and 4n. Of these the current of frequency 2n will nearly completely neutralize the former current of frequency 2n in the stator, which was mentioned above. The outstanding current of frequency 4n, in the diagram of Figure 7, is shown as flowing into the capacity and inductance formed by the antenna a and the ground b.

In practice, very finely laminated iron of high quality, worked far below the saturation value of flux density, is used in these machines. The air gap between rotor and stator is kept as small as possible, and in some cases special methods of cooling the machine are employed. In order to prevent the radiation by the antenna of some of the lower frequencies, it is desirable to keep the coupling between the various oscillatory circuits at moderate values. Too large a coupling also tends to distribute the energy absorption in the circuits of lower frequency instead of concentrating it in the circuit of highest frequency.

In 1913, Leon Bouthillon described an ingenious type of generator, intermediate in type between a rotary converter and an alternator. It depends on the following principle. If, in any circuit, there are a number of alternating electromotive forces of any wave form, and each of these is equally displaced in phase relative to the preceding, under certain conditions the resultant electromotive force has a much greater frequency than

Digitized by Google

any of the component forces and a very appreciable amplitude. Analytically and more exactly expressed: if there are m such electromotive forces, each of frequency n, and the phase displacement of each relative to the preceding is $\frac{2\pi G}{m}$, where G is a whole number, the resulting electromotive force has a frequency $\frac{m}{V}n$, where V is the greatest common divisor of G and m. The amplitude of the resulting potential difference is the product of m and the amplitude of the $\frac{m}{V}$th term of the Fourier's series expressing the original electromotive forces.

To carry out this idea, we need only use an alternator having Y poles in the field, with the armature rotating U times per second. Then

$$n = \frac{UY}{2}.$$

If the armature has m conductors, the phase displacement of the electromotive force in each relative to the preceding will be $\frac{\pi Y}{m}$. Bouthillon has calculated that a machine could be built with the following characteristics: peripheral velocity of rotor = 196 meters per second, outer diameter of pole supports = 156 centimeters, 40 revolutions per second, 2,401 (=49 x 49) turns on rotor, 49 pairs of poles, final frequency 96,040 cycles, corresponding to a wave length of 3,124 meters, rotor of solid steel, output 100 kilowatts. Such a machine, he states, could be built in any good electrical factory.

The desired overtones in the component electromotive forces are exaggerated by properly shaping the pole pieces, and by coupling suitable resonant circuits. The machines should be suitable for producing musical tones by the use of alternating current excitation, and are also applicable to the field of radio telephony.

We pass now to frequency transformers without moving parts. In the following we shall consider only such methods as deliver appreciable amounts of energy at a reasonable efficiency. The first we shall consider is the method described by Kruh (in American patent No. 787,193 of 1905). The somewhat complicated wiring diagram of the complete arrangement is shown in Figure 8. At the bottom of the figure is the mercury arc rectifier on which the whole arrangement is dependent. It has two

Digitized by Google

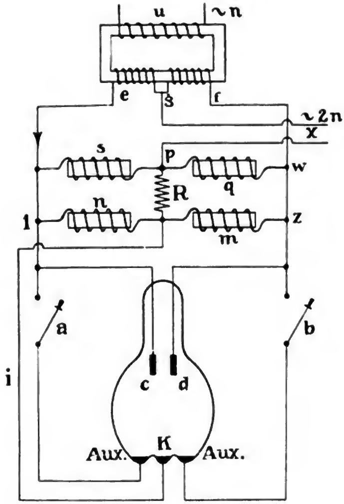


FIGURE 8

anodes c and d, one cathode K, and two auxiliary anodes for starting the arc. To ignite the arc the rectifier is tipped in one direction or the other, while the auxiliary lighting circuits are closed thru the switches a, b. So soon as the current flow is established, the switches are opened, automatically or otherwise, and the normal operation of the arc between K and c, d begins. The two coils e, g and g, f are the halves of the secondary of a transformer, the primary u of which is supplied with a current of the fundamental frequency n. The four coils q, s, m, and n, are inductances, the connecting points of which are joined thru the small resistance R. Between the points g and p can be drawn a current of double frequency. The explanation of the phenomena follows.

If, at any given time e is the positive end of the secondary of the transformer, current will flow thru the anode c to the cathode K and thence to the point p where the current will pass thru two alternative paths. One of these paths is to the double frequency circuit and the remaining portion of the current, after passing thru the inductance q assists in magnetizing the

Digitized by Google

core of the transformer. There is also stored in the core of the inductance q a certain amount of energy, and this energy storage continues until the peak of the positive path of the alternating current wave is reached. Thereafter, in accordance with Lenz's law the coil q tends to keep the current flowing in the positive direction. This discharge current of the choke coil q also has the choice of two paths. It may pass to the cathode K by means of the anode d and thence return to the point p thru the circuit i. Another portion thereof will flow thru the section f, g of the transformer secondary into the double frequency circuit and thence back to p.

It is to be noted that while the current amplitude was increasing, the current flow in the double frequency circuit was *away* from p, but that during the second half of the positive portion of the alternating current wave (that is, during the decrease of current amplitude) the direction of current flow in the double frequency circuit was *toward* the point p. Evidently then, during a half cycle of the primary current there is produced in the double frequency circuit a complete cycle of current changes. It is evident, therefore, that the device is a frequency changer. The function of the extra choke coils m and n is easily understood. The losses in the core of the inductance q during the time that its core is being magnetized are necessarily greater than during the time of its de-magnetization. A disymmetry in the double frequency current would be thereby produced, and this disymmetry is minimized by the use of the extra inductances m and n and the resistance R. The current thru the inductances s and q is thereby made larger than the arc current. The resistance R also prevents the arc current passing into the double frequency circuit thru the conductors l and z and then thru i. A nearly uniform alternating double frequency current is thus produced. Inasmuch as it has been shown that mercury arc rectifiers can be operated at a good efficiency even at radio frequencies, it would seem that the method of Kruh might be applicable in radio work.

We pass to the methods of frequency change involving the use of the electrolytic cell rectifiers. If we study the behavior of an electrolytic cell employing a solution of alum as the electrolyte and carbon and aluminum as the electrodes, we discover that it permits the passage thru it of current only in one direction, namely, from the aluminum to the carbon. In Figure 9 is shown an application of such a cell to a frequency changer. V_1 and V_2 are two such electrolytic cells; and S_1 and S_2 are the

Digitized by Google

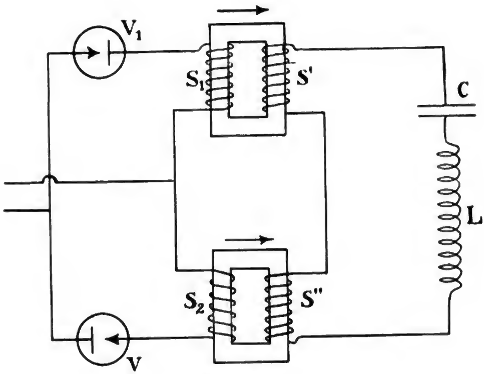


FIGURE 9

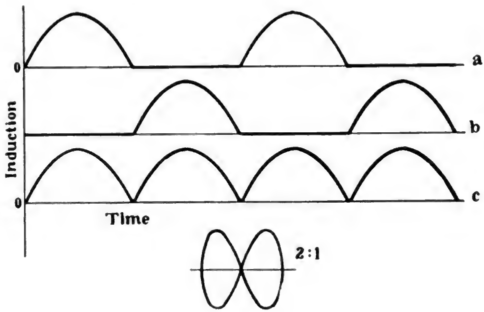


FIGURE 10

primaries of two transformers of which S′ and S″ are the secondaries. It will be noticed that V_1 and V_2 are connected with opposite polarity in their respective circuits, and that in consequence current can flow thru S_1 only in one direction and thru S_2 in the opposite direction. Furthermore, coil S_1 is wound in the opposite direction to coil S_2. On the other hand, S′ and S″ are wound in the same direction. In Figure 10, curve a shows the current passing thru S_1, and the consequent magnetic flux thru the corresponding transformer core. Curve b shows similarly the induction in the core of the second transformer.

Digitized by Google

The total magnetic induction for both transformers is shown in curve c. It will be seen that during the time of a single alternation of the supply current there are two maxima and two minima of the magnetic induction in the transformer cores. It is therefore clear that there will be produced in the circuit containing the two secondaries a current of double frequency altho the wave form of this current will be noticeably distorted in view of the non-sinusoidal character of the magnetic induction.

If it is desired to draw any appreciable amount of energy from the frequency changer, the inductance L and the capacity C are connected in series with the two secondaries, thereby bringing that circuit to resonance with the double frequency. Zenneck has done a considerable amount of valuable work along these lines and has found these cells to be usable at radio frequencies. However, the passage thru them of considerable energy is attended with certain difficulties based on excessive heating and deterioration of the electrodes. Using a cell having lead and aluminum electrodes in a 5 per cent solution of ammonium phosphate, Zenneck has demonstrated the production of the double frequency in an admirably clear way by the Lissajous figures. A Braun tube oscillograph was employed. Near the cathode stream were placed two mutually perpendicular coils, one of which was connected to the primary circuit of the frequency transformer and the other to the secondary circuit thereof. The familiar Lissajous "figure of eight," which signifies a ratio of frequencies of two to one, immediately appeared on the screen (Figure 10).

Among the other circuit arrangements suggested by Zenneck are those shown in Figures 11 and 12. In Figure 11 only a single transformer is used, and in spite of the interaction between S_1 and S_2 in that case, a double frequency secondary current is obtained. In Figure 12 a transformer with but a single winding on both primary and secondary is employed. The current path during a half cycle in this case is thru the path V_2 S_1 V_3. During the second path of the cycle the current path is V_1 S_1 V_4.

Continuing the consideration of frequency changes without moving parts, we come to a method for tripling the frequency directly by taking advantage of certain characteristics of an ordinary alternating current arc. It is well known that the potential difference at the terminals of an alternating current arc may have the form shown in Figure 13. So greatly deformed a wave form naturally suggests the existence of strong upper harmonics. It is in fact found that if we decompose this curve

Digitized by Google

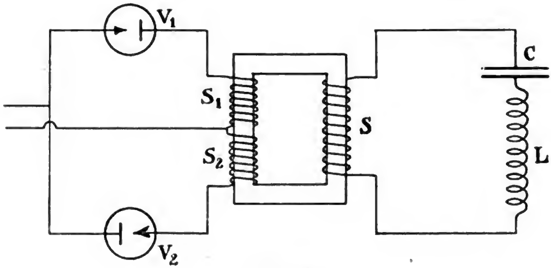


FIGURE 11

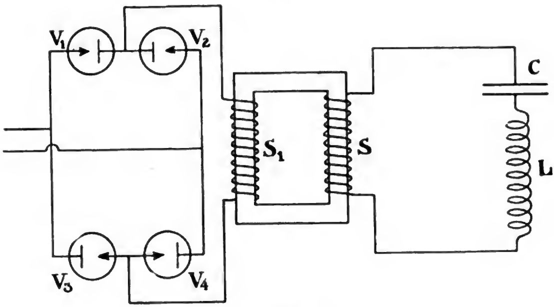


FIGURE 12

into component waves of the fundamental and other frequencies, the third harmonic is very prominent. In Figure 14, curve *a* represents fairly accurately the potential difference at the terminals of the arc. Curve *b* shows one of its components; namely, that of the fundamental frequency. Curve *c* shows the component of triple frequency; in fact, curve *a* is merely the sum of curves *b* and *c*. A circuit arrangement which can be employed to advantage under these conditions is given in Figure 15. The circuit L C is tuned to the triple frequency, and the inductances D prevent to a certain extent the triple frequency current from getting back to the alternator. The arrangement shown further permits obtaining the fifth, seventh, ninth and so on, frequencies, provided the circuit L C is tuned to the appropriate frequency. In fact, Rukop and Zenneck have done considerable work for the case where the frequency

Digitized by Google

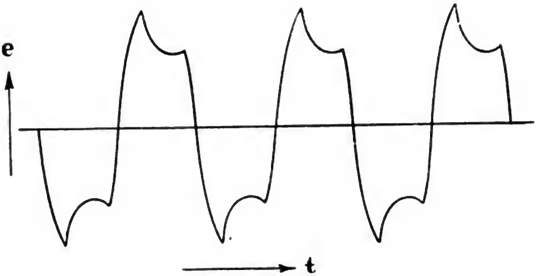


FIGURE 13

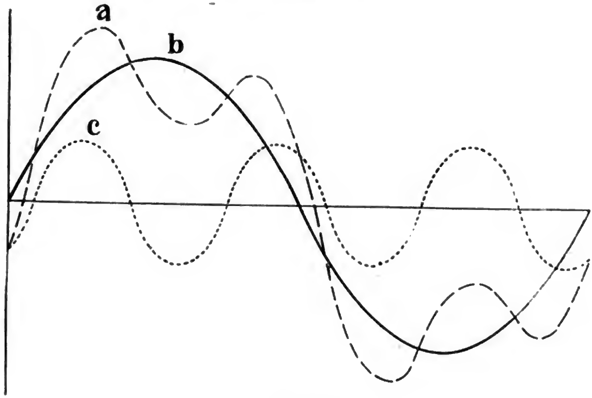


FIGURE 14

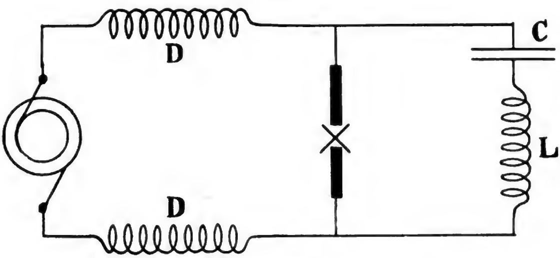


FIGURE 15

Digitized by Google

of the circuit L C was 300 times the fundamental frequency. For details of this investigation, the reader is referred to their article in "Annalen der Physik," 1914, Volume 44, page 97.

We consider now the extremely important cases wherein stationary frequency changers are employed, their operation being dependent on electromagnetic induction and the peculiar properties of iron. In Figure 16, is shown a typical B-H (magnet-

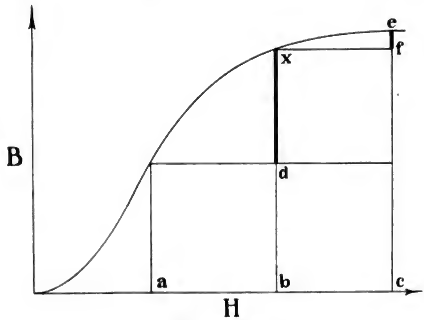


FIGURE 16

izing force-induction) curve for iron. Let us suppose that the magnetization of the iron has been brought to the point x. If now, by means of a superposed alternating magnetizing force, equal increments and decrements be added to the magnetizing force, the magnetic induction will increase during the positive half of the cycle by the small amount e f. On the other hand, during the negative half of the cycle, the induction will diminish by the considerably larger amount x d. The explanation of this phenomena is to be found in the well known magnetic saturation qualities of iron. In other words, a marked deformation from a sinusoidal variation of magnetic induction will occur when nearly saturated iron cores are employed. Such a deformation always leads to the production of upper harmonics, and it is upon this principle that the entire series of frequency changers employing iron is based.

A modification of the method just mentioned, and one of a highly ingenious sort, has been devised by Dr. R. Goldschmidt. It will be remembered that Rutherford first showed that remanent magnetism in iron could be destroyed by an alternating current field of high frequency. Furthermore, the hysteresis loop of

Digitized by Google

iron for a magnetic cycle is much diminished in area if the iron is at the same time placed in a weak high frequency field.

Consequently it follows that if a piece of iron be magnetized longitudinally by a direct current field and transversely by an alternating current field, any slow variations in the direct current field will show only small hysteresis effect. A rough physical explanation of this phenomena is given by the consideration that the transverse magnetization keeps the elementary magnets of the iron in a mobile condition and thereby permits the longitudinal field to control them accurately and instantaneously. The large "static friction" between them is replaced by a much smaller "dynamic friction." Furthermore, if a direct current transverse field be employed, the effective permeability of the iron for the longitudinal magnetization will be diminished, and the hysteresis loop therefor will be changed in slope. We have here the interesting situation that two mutually perpendicular coils may react on each other thru the influence of the medium between them, and in spite of their apparent zero mutual inductance.

The arrangement used by Goldschmidt is given in Figure 17.

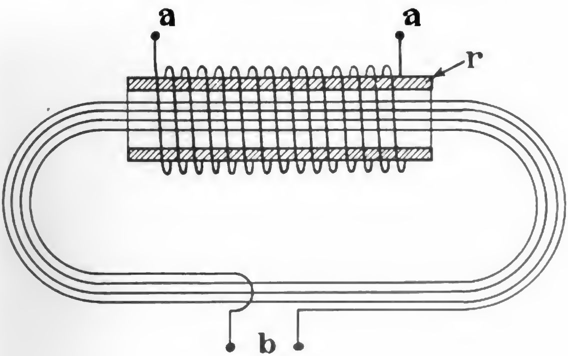


FIGURE 17

The iron tube r is magnetized longitudinally (axially) by means of the coil *a* and is magnetized transversely by means of the coil *b*. If the longitudinal magnetization is produced by direct current and the transverse magnetization by alternating current, both the positive and the negative maxima of the alternating trans-

Digitized by Google

verse field will cause minima in the strength of the longitudinal field. These variations in the longitudinal field have, therefore, a frequency which is twice that of the alternating current supplied to the transverse field.

If now we connect across the terminals of coil *a* a condenser, whereby coil *a* and the condenser are resonant to the double frequency, and if we simultaneously place in the large choke coils direct current supply lines to the coil *a* to prevent alternating current getting back to the direct current source, we shall be able to draw considerable amounts of double frequency energy from the terminals of coil *a*.

By a further artifice we may carry the process of frequency transformation forward any desired number of steps. If we have a direct current as well as an alternating current flowing in the transverse magnetizing coil *b*, the double frequency current in coil *a* will produce a quadruple frequency current in coil *b*. The next step will give us a current of eight times the fundamental frequency in coil *a*, and the process may be continued thru any desired number of steps. Any of the upper frequencies may bé brought to resonance and energy absorbed at that frequency by appropriate tuning. The limitations of the process as to energy output are based on the small amount of iron which is available in any arrangement of this sort and the consequent over-loading thereof.

The method next described was shown by Epstein in 1902 (German patent 149,761) and has since been worked out and amplified in detail by Joly in 1910, and by Vallauri in 1911. The circuit arrangement employed is shown in Figure 18. As will be seen, an alternating current source A sends its current thru the primary P_1, P_2 of two transformers. These primaries may be either connected in series or in parallel. They are wound oppositely. A direct current source B supplies two auxiliary coils M_1, M_2, which coils are wound on the transformer cores. These direct current coils are also wound oppositely. The secondaries of the transformers S_1 S_2 are wound in the same direction and connected as shown.

The operation of this device is as follows: The direct current magnetization of each of the transformer cores is such that it is working at the knee of the magnetization curve. If we consider Figure 19, curve a, we shall have a representation of the varying magnetic flux or induction in one of the transformers. The dotted horizontal line represents the constant direct current induction, the full line represents the resulting induction. It

Digitized by Google

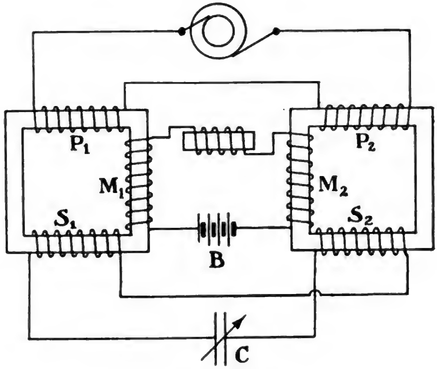


FIGURE 18

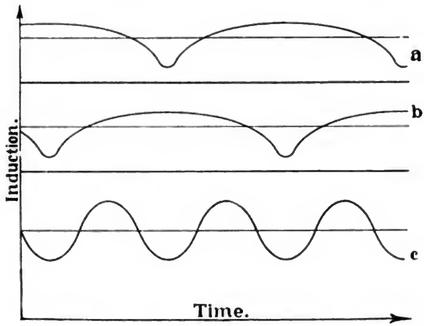


FIGURE 19

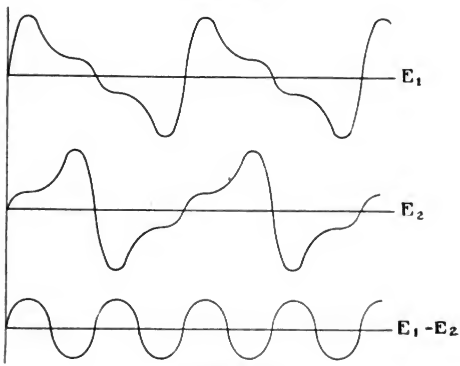


FIGURE 20

Digitized by Google

will be seen that when the positive half of the alternating current cycle is taking place, there is only a small increase in the magnetic induction, whereas when the negative half cycle is taking place, there is a large diminution in the induction. It will be noticed that the direct current coils and the alternating current coils on the two transformers are wound so that during the positive half cycle they assist each other on one transformer and oppose each other on the other. From this it follows that the induction in the second transformer is given by curve b, which lags practically 180 degrees behind curve a. The resulting total induction is given by curve c, and is seen to have a double frequency. In Figure 20, oscilligrams of the phenomena mentioned are shown. The voltage at the terminals at one of the transformers is given by E_1; that at the terminals of the other transformer by E_2, and there is also shown the resultant voltage, namely E_1-E_2. This latter is seen to be of double frequency.

A simplified modification of the circuits shown is given by Vallauri, and is illustrated in Figure 21. It will be seen that

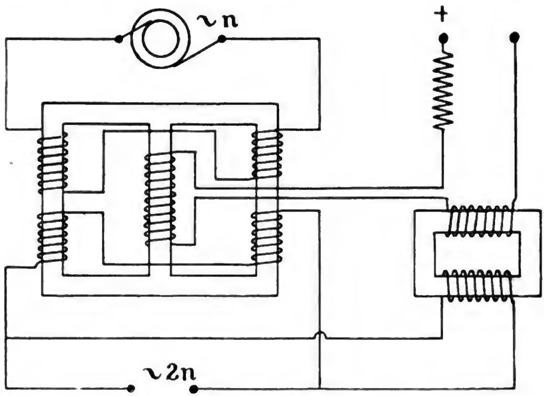


FIGURE 21

only a single transformer is used, and that a special small auxiliary transformer T is employed, whereby the double frequency alternating current which is induced in the direct current circuit is neutralized and suppressed. All the arrangements described are readily adaptable to use with two phase and polyphase currents. Some interesting data is given by the inventor. Using a 0.5

Digitized by Google

kilowatt transformer without tuning capacity, and with fairly large leakage, an efficiency of 0.75 was obtained. It was possible to increase this efficiency still further by making the alteration in flux density considerably larger than in the usual transformer. In all frequency changers of this type, the secondary voltage leads the primary current considerably, and the device works at a low power factor; say under 0.5.

Joly has described a method for directly tripling the frequency, using iron core transformers. It depends upon the following principles. If we send an alternating current thru the primary of a transformer, and arrange that at the maximum current point of the cycle the iron core shall still be working far below saturation, the induction curve will be a peaked curve such as is shown in curve c of Figure 22. On the other hand if we work the iron at saturation value for the maximum current point of the cycle, we shall obtain a very flat-topped induction curve as shown by curve b of the same figure. If two such primaries, of the classes mentioned, are connected in series in opposite directions on two transformers, as shown by S_1 S_2 of Figure 23, the resulting secondary electromotive force will be of triple frequency. This is clearly seen from curve d in Figure 22, which curve represents the difference of the two induction curves in the separate transformer. It will be noted that the secondaries, S' and S'', are wound with appropriate numbers of turns, so as to compensate for the inequalities in the number of turns of S_1 and S_2. Furthermore the secondary circuit is carefully tuned to the triple frequency. Needless to say a very rapid multiplication of frequency can be obtained by this method. For example, the frequency can be raised 81 times in only 4 steps. In the foregoing, the author has utilized among many other sources, discussions on the subject of radio frequency generation and multiplication by Professor B. Glatzel and Dr. F. Kock.

It is our belief that the most fruitful results in the field of radio telephony may well be obtainable by the use of one or the other of the frequency changers which have been herein described. One of the difficulties in practical long distance radio telephony, and it is a very serious difficulty, is the control or modulation to speech form of the outgoing energy by an ordinary microphone transmitter. Up to the present time, it has not been possible to replace the ordinary transmitter by any simple and at the same time reliable device. We are therefore driven to use some method of trigger control whereby small changes in the resistance of the microphone transmitter, such as are caused by

Digitized by Google

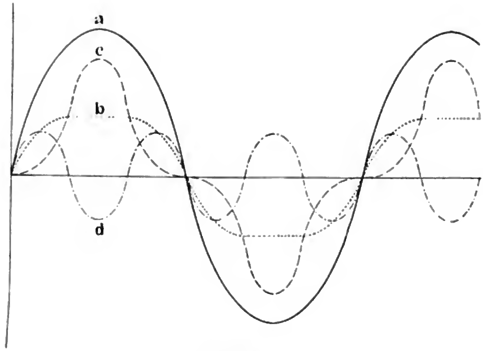


FIGURE 22

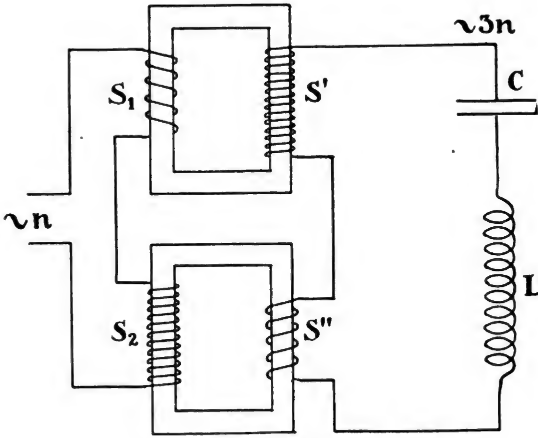


FIGURE 23

speech, will produce proportionate but highly magnified changes in the amount of radiated energy. The various frequency changers described lend themselves admirably to different forms of trigger control of output. For example, many of them are very sensitive to a small change in tuning in one of the inter-

Digitized by Google

mediate steps. If, therefore, we shunt one of the tuning condensers in the iron core type of frequency changer by either one or more microphones, we are given a ready means of controlling the output to a certain extent. Still another possibility is given in some of these types of transformers just described if we cause the microphone to vary the direct current magnetization which brings the iron cores to the saturation point. Since the proper operation of the Joly frequency transformer is largely dependent on an accurate adjustment of the core magnetization, it is clear that microphone control thereof should be successful in practice. The Telefunken Company, which has widely experimented with the Joly transformer, has attained considerable success in radio telephony by some of the above means.

It seems to the writer that the apparent trend of high power radio design is in the direction of the moderately high or even radio frequency alternator, employed in conjunction with one or more of the frequency changers. So far as radio telephony is concerned, this direction of development should be highly favorable to success.

SUMMARY: Starting with the principle that a coil (or capacity) rotating in a single phase alternating magnetic (or electric) field, may be regarded as producing a magnetic (or electric) field rotating with double frequency, a number of frequency doublers and multipliers of magnetic and electric nature are described. Under this heading, the reflection or Goldschmidt alternator is considered. A typical mercury arc frequency doubler is treated. The use of electrolytic rectifier cells in increasing frequency is discussed, and a number of useful arrangements of this type shown. Frequency multiplication by the use of the arc is also handled. A detailed description of a number of frequency changers depending on the nature of the magnetising force-induction curve of iron follows. The application of the results to the field of radio telephony, and the possibility of adequate trigger control of the outgoing energy by ordinary microphones is considered.

Digitized by Google

DISCUSSION

NEW YORK SECTION

John Stone Stone: There is no doubt as to the importance of the frequency changer, and it is particularly pleasing to know that Dr. Goldsmith regards some of the stationary frequency changers as promising, because on shipboard, where the vast majority of radio sets are going to be for many years to come, the high speed dynamotors are bound to be excluded for mechanical reasons.

There is one further type of frequency changer to which reference may be made. A friend of mine in Boston (Mr. Sewall Cabot) has worked out a synchronous pole changer which, in connection with the discharge of a condenser, is capable of converting direct to sinusoidal alternating current and alternating to direct current. This principle has been patented for use in X-ray work, but may well be applicable to the radio field as well.

Guy Hill: There seems to me to be one serious drawback to the methods of frequency transformation described; namely, the inability to change wave length quickly (and continuously, if need be). Of course, this would not make much difference for long range stations working on fixed wave lengths, but it is of great importance in military work, particularly in time of war. Until some such method can be devised for the frequency changers, the rapid changing of wave length possible with the arc transmitter as developed by the Federal Telegraph Company will make this system more valuable than any of the frequency changing systems described.

John Stone Stone: Some of us are inclined to believe that ability to change frequency rapidly is of importance in commercial working thru serious interference as well as for military purposes. Furthermore, the only practical secrecy systems known at present depend on a rapid switch control of wave length, such as would prevent the enemy from following the messages.

Guy Hill: I have heard, however, that it is possible, using the Goldschmidt system, to build apparatus which will permit rapid change of wave length.

H. E. Hallborg: In connection with the study of frequency changers, the interesting question arises whether it is necessary to use them at all in connection with very long distance trans-

Digitized by Google

mission from large stations. The frequency multiplying devices described have all, I believe, an initial frequency of say 10,000 cycles per second. This, however, is not far from the operating frequency of the New Brunswick, N. J., station. Since successful transmission across the Atlantic has been accomplished from New Brunswick at a frequency of 19,000 cycles, it seems that the source of initial power described could be quite efficiently applied to an aerial of the size of the one at New Brunswick without the necessity of further increasing the frequency. This brings up the open question; how low may the frequency of a transmitter be for successful long distance communication?

Alfred N. Goldsmith: In favor of the use of low frequencies for radiation are the facts that the original alternator may be of low frequency and therefore standard and inexpensive; and that if a frequency changer is still employed, less steps in the transformation are necessary. The over-all efficiency is therefore fairly high, and the machinery comparatively simple. On the other hand, a much larger antenna, ground, and tuning system are necessary. If land is expensive, the use of an extremely long antenna is sometimes prohibited on the score of cost. It will be seen that the most advantageous frequency of radiation is a fairly complex function of

(a) Cost of land;
(b) Cost of towers, and wires for antenna and ground;
(c) Cost of erection of large antennas and placing of grounds;
(d) Cost of alternators (as dependent on frequency);
(e) Cost of frequency transformers (as dependent on number of stages of transformation);
(f) Over-all efficiency of complete set (taking into account the cost of fuel, the cost of operation, freedom from interference by static at various frequencies, and the absorption in transmission at various frequencies);
(g) Rate of depreciation of such antennas, ground, alternators, and frequency transformers as required at various frequencies.

In fact, even the current state of the money market, and the terms on which loans may be secured will exert a considerable influence on the type of machinery chosen and the proper frequency therefor.

Lester L. Israel: It is of interest to note that heating of the iron core of the frequency transformer has been resorted to in the search for higher efficiencies. Hans Boas of Berlin has recently

Digitized by Google

patented (D. R. P., Number 268,161) a method for frequency transformation above 1,000 cycles along the lines of the saturated iron core transformer described in the paper.

The interesting feature is that iron heated to about the critical temperature is used for the core. At this temperature, the permeability is large for small values of the magnetomotive force ($\mu = 12{,}000$ for $H = 0.15$), and diminishes sharply for higher values ($\mu = 1{,}000$ for $H = 9$). Consequently a flat-topped magnetic curve suitable for frequency transformation is obtained. Since the specific resistance of the iron is greatly increased, eddy currents are diminished. Hysteresis losses decrease from 3,660 ergs per cc. at 24° C. to 120 ergs per cc. at 764.5° C.

It is held that high efficiencies of transformation are thus obtained.

William Dubilier: In the paper which has been presented this evening, there have been shown some widely different forms of frequency changers, all to be used at radio frequencies. I would like to add that a large amount of research work has been going on for some time to produce currents of audio frequency directly from direct current. In a machine that I constructed to obtain these musical frequencies from direct current, a vibrating or revolving member was employed for breaking the direct current source; but so connected with an auxiliary oscillating circuit, that altho it opens the circuit, it does not actually interrupt the current. The method used has been fully described in the "London Electrician" of December 12 and 19, 1913, and the "Revue de Radiotelegraphie et Radiotelephonié" (T. S. F.) of April and May, 1914.

It was interesting to note from these experiments that the mechanical motion can be controlled by simply varying the capacity or inductance of a controlling circuit. That is to say, the mechanical interrupter can be forced to come to the same frequency as that of the oscillating circuit. If the proper inductance is inserted in the primary circuit, and the proper capacity in the oscillating circuit, there will be a time when the discharges of the condenser in the negative direction will entirely neutralize the primary current; and at this point there will be no current flowing in the primary of the transformer. The oscillator or interrupter will then be released without any arcing or sparking. On the other hand, when the condenser charges in the same direction as the primary current, the energy thru the transformer becomes the sum of the primary and condenser currents, thus giving the wave a higher amplitude.

Digitized by Google

By means of this method, I have been able to build an apparatus for producing a uni-directional pulsating current with a sine wave, and at a frequency of 1,000 cycles per second using direct current.

I have made experiments using this method of tuning the oscillating circuit to a mechanical interrupter and have obtained radio frequencies. It is possible to transform a direct current into an alternating current of radio frequency with a high efficiency by means of a revolving commutator whose segments were about one-thirty second of an inch wide, the space between the segments having the same valûe. This commutator is made of a single wheel, all the segments being connected together. The brush consists of a needle point. A number of these points may be used to increase the total surface of contact. By rapidly revolving this commutator, which is about one foot (30 centimeters) in diameter, and not more than one-eighth of an inch (3 millimeters) wide on the outer surface of the commutator, a frequency of about 50,000 cycles per second and even more can be obtained. A proper capacity and inductance was shunted across this interrupter, the natural frequency of their circuits being equal to the working frequency of interruption. This apparatus would be found suitable for use on board ships.

Austen Curtis: Some time ago, in connection with the design of head receivers for radio telegraphy, I had occasion to make some measurements on the coils of a Marconi magnetic detector in an impedance bridge at audible frequencies; and discovered that if a current of frequency n is sent thru one of the coils, a current of frequeney 2n makes its appearance while the band is moving, and disappears when the band is stopped. For each value of impressed current there is a certain speed of the band which gives the maximum strength of the harmonic. When the break in the band passes thru the coil, the harmonic disappears momentarily, but if one magnet only is used with its poles opposed to the band on either side of the coil, no harmonic is produced except for the instant when the break in the band passes thru the coil. Large changes in the distances of the magnets from the band cause little difference in the strength of the harmonic, but a sudden movement of the magnets in any direction causes a transient increase in the strength of the harmonics.

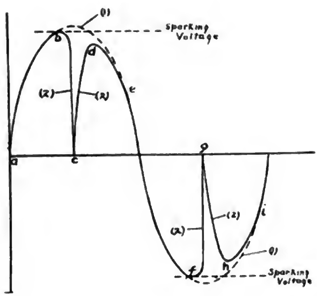
It is generally known that effects quite similar to those described are noted with the detector in radio telegraphic recep-

Digitized by Google

tion; the changes in signal strength corresponding to the changes in strength of the harmonic produced when the impressed current is of audible frequency. It therefore seems probable that both groups of effects are caused by the same property of the magnetic detector.

The impressed currents of audible frequency used in the measurements during which the above effects were noted, were of the order of 0.5 milliampere.

Fritz Lowenstein: The paper on "Radio Frequency Changers" brings to my mind a phenomenon of which I have made use in the design of transformers for radio operation.



Considering a quenched gap outfit, and referring to the accompanying figure in which curve (1) represents the impressed condenser voltage without sparking; it will be seen that curve (2) represents the condenser voltage with sparking. With no spark gap, curves (1) and (2) would coincide. When the condenser is robbed of its charge, however, by a spark gap as in radio operation, the condenser voltage takes the form shown in curve (2). From a to b (1) and (2) coincide. At b the gap breaks down, amounting to a short circuit; and curve (2) drops to zero as indicated at c. The condenser voltage then rises again to d, but not sufficiently to cause resparking. It again coincides with curve (1) at e, and again drops at f, to g, and so on.

From c to g the condenser voltage goes thru a complete cycle, whereas the generator voltage goes thru a half cycle. The spark gap as used in radio operation might therefore be termed a "frequency changer."

Digitized by Google

John H. Morecroft: I congratulate the Institute upon having had such an able presentation of the development of generating apparatus for continuous waves; and think it fortunate that at this time such a paper has been presented, because the continuous wave generators are by all means the most important pieces of generating apparatus for the radio engineers to investigate and develop. In my opinion the large stations using spark apparatus will surely be changed over to continuous wave stations in the course of the next year or two. This remark is based upon the results of experiments which have been carried out in the radio laboratory of Columbia University during the past two years, which experiments have shown the great possibilities, in range and selectivity, of continuous wave transmission, when received by a suitable scheme.

I question very much the claims which many inventors make for their apparatus and further question the explanation of the operation of some of the pieces of apparatus which the speaker of the evening offers; I understand, of course, that the explanations offered are those of the inventor and not necessarily the ideas of the speaker, who probably questions some of them himself.

When one teaches a subject it is necessary to do more than read a patent claim; it is necessary to ask oneself if the inventor, himself, knew how his apparatus was operating. It is from this standpoint that I have been studying radio telegraphy for the past two years and have used the oscillograph actually to find out how some of the apparatus functions. Instead of using very high frequency current and the Braun tube oscillograph, we have used the General Electric oscillograph and low frequency currents; the phenomena investigated all occur in the same way at 60 cycles as they do at 100,000 cycles. I hope to be able to present some of the more interesting oscillograms at some future meeting of the Institute.

John Stone Stone: I feel it safe to say that to-day there is no branch of the electrical art in which research work and theoretical work are so far ahead of practice as in the radio field. There is no comparison between the apparatus supplied to commercial users and that which is known to exist in laboratories, and is described in published books and in patents.

I wish to state further that the art is far from being in as empirical a state as we are led to believe by some of the speakers of this evening. Our knowledge of radio engineering is extremely exact, and I believe that time will show that most of the explana-

Digitized by Google

tions of phenomena which have been given are absolutely correct.

Robert H. Marriott: The condition which Mr. Stone mentions relative to the inferiority of commercially used apparatus compared to laboratory apparatus is caused by the objectionable way in which the radio business was conducted in its early days.

In those days the then existent companies sold stock; and in order to raise the value of the stock which was being sold, placed the price of their apparatus at far below actual cost so that the purchaser of the stock would imagine that a large business was being done. This has given rise to difficult conditions to-day, when the purchaser of modern apparatus must be trained to pay an appropriate and suitable price for it.

Another objectionable feature of radio commercial work in the past was the extremely large salary paid to publicity men as compared to those paid to the engineer. It would be difficult to expect to obtain good apparatus from engineers who are shamefully underpaid, particularly when they know that the publicity end of their enterprise is, if anything, very considerably overpaid.

It is necessary that in the future the radio engineers should get proper compensation for good work.

Alfred N. Goldsmith: As far as the explanations of the phenomena given by me this evening are concerned, it is my opinion that most of them are correct. It may be that detailed points in the operation of some of the apparatus have not been clearly understood by the inventors and patentees, but only much research work can make this clear.

I would call attention to the necessity for much caution in applying the principle that phenomena at radio frequency are necessarily identical with those at audio frequencies. It is true that if we know accurately the law of variation of these phenomena with frequency, we may by rational processes predict radio frequency phenomena. This seems to me, however, to be begging the question; because, before we can obtain this law of variation, we must investigate the phenomena of radio frequencies as well as at audio frequencies. I refer specifically to such phenomena as arc and spark conduction.

Digitized by Google

A. E. Kennelly: Dr. Goldsmith's paper collects, in an interesting way, a number of proposed methods of frequency multiplication. Broadly speaking, these may be divided into two classes, namely—machines, and induction apparatus. The former employ rotating parts; while the latter do not. The machines, as described in the paper, may be either electric or magnetic and an interesting parallelism runs between these two types, one depending on variations in electric flux, the other on variations in magnetic flux. In both cases the method of operation may be readily conceived of by the concept of a single alternating field being substituted by a pair of oppositely and synchronously revolving fields of half strength. There has also been suggested another type of single-phase machine* in which a high-frequency harmonic is carefully nurtured and augmented with multiplication and resonance while the fundamental frequency is suppressed by cancellation.

The types of induction-apparatus mentioned are particularly interesting on account of their mechanical simplicity. They may be regarded as harmonic-nurseries. Iron cores are electromagnetically excited in such a manner as to set up powerful harmonic alternating-current ripples. These higher-frequency harmonics are then carefully nursed and amplified for delivery to the antenna. In alternating-current power transmission and distribution, such harmonics are regarded as objectionable visitors, and efforts are made to exclude them or at least to minimize their influence. In radio engineering, however, these ordinarily unbidden visitors are specially invited and encouraged The actions here considered depend upon their presence.

As a mere matter of nomenclature, it would seem to be unfortunate if the name "frequency-changer" should continue to be applied to the devices described in the paper; for the reason that this name has for years been applied to a class of machines in which alternating-current power of one frequency is converted into alternating-current power of either a higher or lower frequency, as for example, when a synchronous motor operated from a 50-cycle system is directly coupled to an alternator of half the number of poles, supplying a 25-cycle system. Such machines are also known as frequency converters. In radio engineering, the corresponding devices raise the frequency from a lower to a higher value, and there does not seem to be

*Science Abstracts (Engineering), Vol. XVI, p. 558, 1913, No. 1162, Bouthillon, Lumiere—Elect., Sept. 13, 1913.

any need for a device to operate inversely from a higher to a lower frequency. On this account, it would seem desirable to name these radio devices "frequency-raisers" or "frequency-multipliers," either of which would be a distinctive term free from possible ambiguity or misapplication to the ordinary "frequency changers" or "frequency converters."

Alfred N. Goldsmith: I have preferred to employ the term "frequency changer" for the devices described rather than "frequency raiser." My reasons for this are that many of these devices are usable interchangeably either for increasing *or diminishing* the frequency, and that some of them have actually been used in radio reception to convert the received energy into energy of a *lower* and audio frequency. Some confusion might therefore be caused by invariably applying the term "frequency raiser."

Melville Eastham: As regards the use of compressed air in electrostatic alternators, as suggested by Dr. Goldsmith, such radio frequency alternators have a very high electrical efficiency in theory, and would seem to have great possibilities if a design could be worked out which would give a reasonably large output from a machine of ordinary size. The electrical losses, being practically confined to dielectric losses, might be made extremely small; but the losses due to air friction would probably be very high. The use of compressed air would greatly increase these losses, and it would seem preferable to work in a vacuum, since the same or a higher dielectric strength could be thus obtained with much smaller air resistance. Alternators of this type, used by Tesla about 1890 and by Fessenden about twelve years later, have a number of advantages; such as the possible generation of pure sine wave currents, extremely simple construction, and high theoretical efficiency. It is to be hoped that more development work will be done on the electrostatic alternator, as it would be a valuable piece of apparatus at least for very high frequency bridge tests and similar work, even with the small outputs which it seems possible to secure from such an alternator at present.

Sewall Cabot: The use of a vacuum in an electrostatic alternator seems to me to be objectionable because of the necessity of securing extremely low pressures. Unless an extremely low pressure is reached, the air is more conducting than at ordinary pressures. The pressure which would probably be

Digitized by Google

needed would be of the order of one millionth of an atmosphere, and it would be extremely difficult to obtain or maintain so low a pressure because of the liberation of occluded gases from the generator. It would probably be necessary to use metal parts made, for example, of tungsten from which it would be possible to remove all the air. But even then, the difficulty would be very serious.

As regards the Goldschmidt alternator or any other generator of frequencies of the order of 50,000 cycles, described in Dr. Goldsmith's paper, employing iron in the paths of magnetic flux, I do not see how the efficiencies can ever become comparable to those obtained in low frequency machinery; since the losses must increase at some greater ratio than the first power of the frequency, other conditions remaining the same.

It would be of interest to have some data regarding the Goldschmidt alternator losses, so that we might compare it with other forms of generators.

Such data might consist of the output in K. V. A., watts lost in windings of the alternator, in windings of the component resonant circuits, in iron laminations, in dielectric hysteresis of the condensers, in friction and windage, etc. If we also had data regarding the masses of iron and copper referred to, we could then make an intelligent comparison of efficiency and cost of generation with this machine with that using other forms of generators concerning which there is available data.

I regard the electrostatic alternator as a promising piece of apparatus; but the mechanical construction, because of the necessity for high speed and careful insulation, would be very difficult.

In this connection, I should like to call attention to a somewhat analagous device of mine described in United States letters patent, 1,081,090, December 9, 1913, and 1,112,435 of October 6, 1914.

The apparatus in question essentially consists of two condensers and two inductances, together with a contact making device. One condenser and inductance form a resonant circuit which is tuned to the desired frequency. The second condenser is charged by a source of high potential direct current. The contact making device is timed to make one contact per cycle, the contact having a duration of only a fraction of a cycle.

The contact making device connects the first mentioned condenser with the second mentioned condenser in series thru an inductance of such value as to make the duration of the

Digitized by Google

contact equal to the time of a half cycle of oscillation of the circuit comprising the two condensers in series, the contact maker, and the inductance in series with it.

This results in the transfer of electrical energy from the condenser charged by direct current to the oscillating circuit condenser, in the form of free half oscillations, provided there has been a dissipation of energy in the oscillation circuit during the cycle.

The advantage of using a natural half oscillation to accomplish this transfer of energy is that the current starts at zero and rises to a maximum at the middle of the duration of the contact, and falls to zero just as the contact is breaking; which phenomena permits of sparkless interruption as the contact opens.

The contact device might consist of two toothed wheels rotating at very high velocities in opposite directions, so mounted that the teeth pass as close as possible to each other without engaging.

Melville Eastham: The electrostatic alternator might possibly be built in such a way as to act like a Gaede molecular pump as well as an alternator, and so to remove any gases as rapidly as they appear. The losses in the pump would be very slight since no large volume of air was being removed.

As regards the efficiency of the Goldschmidt alternator, its inventor has claimed up to 80 per cent under certain conditions. Up to date, the largest current obtained by any radio set of which I am aware, is above 200 amperes and is found in the antenna of the Hanover and Tuckerton stations.

Emil E. Mayer: (by letter to the Editor): As regards the efficiency of the large Goldschmidt alternator at Tuckerton, it is possible to give the following figures. Working with an antenna of about 6 ohms resistance, an antenna current of 140 amperes is obtained with an input (direct current) of 990 amperes at 218 volts. The direct current input is, therefore, 217 kilowatts, the radio frequency output 117 kilowatts, and the efficiency 54 per cent. This efficiency is that obtained while sending a continuous dash. While sending messages with the same radiation at a speed of about 15 to 18 words per minute, the input decreases to 690 amperes at 222 volts, equalling 153 kilowatts. The efficiency therefore becomes 76.5 per cent. It is to be understood that it is this latter efficiency which is of real importance in the determination of the actual energy used for

Digitized by Google

transmission. The same machine working on the same antenna with an antenna current of 120 amperes gives about 115 kilowatts during transmission; so that for that energy the efficiency would be of about the same order as before.

Herman A. Affel: The iron losses in radio frequency alternators are probably much lower than might be expected because the volume of iron employed can be rapidly reduced as the frequency is raised.

Sewall Cabot: It may well be that the efficiency of the Goldschmidt alternator is due in large part to the suppression of all the lower frequency fields by the neutralizing effect of the field in opposite phase but at the same frequency. (This is described in PROCEEDINGS OF THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, Volume II, Number 1, page 71—EDITOR.)

Digitized by Google

VOLUME 3 JUNE, 1915 NUMBER 2

PROCEEDINGS
of
The Institute of Radio Engineers
(INCORPORATED)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

MATTERS RELATING TO
THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS

TECHNICAL PAPERS AND DISCUSSIONS

EDITED BY
ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, Ph.D.

PUBLISHED QUARTERLY BY
THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, INC.
ONE HUNDRED AND ELEVEN BROADWAY
NEW YORK

THE TABLE OF CONTENTS FOLLOWS ON PAGE 95

Digitized by Google

GENERAL INFORMATION

The right to reprint limited portions or abstracts of the articles, discussions, or editorial notes in the Proceedings is granted on the express condition that specific reference shall be made to the source of such material. Diagrams and photographs in the Proceedings may not be reproduced without securing permission to do so from the Institute thru the Editor.

Those desiring to present original papers before the Institute of Radio Engineers are invited to submit their manuscript to the Editor.

Manuscripts and letters bearing on the Proceedings should be sent to Alfred N. Goldsmith, Editor of Publications, The College of the City of New York, New York.

Requests for additional copies of the Proceedings and communications dealing with Institute matters in general should be addressed to the Secretary, The Institute of Radio Engineers, 111 Broadway, New York.

The Proceedings of the Institute are published quarterly and contain the papers and the discussions thereon as presented at the meetings in New York, Washington, Boston or Seattle.

Payment of the annual dues by a member entitles him to one copy of each number of the Proceedings issued during the period of his membership. Members may purchase, when available, copies of the Proceedings issued prior to their election at 75 cents each.

Subscriptions to the Proceedings are received from non-members at the rate of $1.00 per copy or $4.00 per year. To foreign countries the rates are $1.25 per copy or $5.00 per year. A discount of 25 per cent. is allowed to libraries and booksellers. The English distributing agency is "The Electrician Printing and Publishing Company," Fleet Street, London, E. C.

Members presenting papers before the Institute are entitled to ten copies of the paper and of the discussion. Arrangements for the purchase of reprints of separate papers can be made thru the Editor.

It is understood that the statements and opinions given in the Proceedings are the views of the individual members to whom they are credited, and are not binding on the membership of the Institute as a whole.

COPYRIGHT, 1915, BY

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, INC.

ONE HUNDRED AND ELEVEN BROADWAY

NEW YORK, N. Y.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS AND BOARD OF DIRECTION, 1915

(Terms expire January 5, 1916; except as otherwise noted.)

PRESIDENT

JOHN STONE STONE

VICE-PRESIDENT

GEORGE W. PIERCE

TREASURER

WARREN F. HUBLEY

SECRETARY

DAVID SARNOFF

EDITOR OF PUBLICATIONS

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH

MANAGERS

(Serving till January 2, 1918.)

LOUIS W. AUSTIN

JOHN HAYS HAMMOND, JR.

(Serving till January 3, 1917.)

ROBERT H. MARRIOTT

GUY HILL

(Serving till January 5, 1916.)

GEORGE S. DAVIS

ROY A. WEAGANT

EMIL J. SIMON

JOHN L. HOGAN, JR.

LLOYD ESPENSCHIED

ADVERTISING MANAGER

LOUIS G. PACENT

PAST-PRESIDENTS

SOCIETY OF WIRELESS TELEGRAPH ENGINEERS

JOHN STONE STONE, 1907-8

LEE DE FOREST, 1909-10

FRITZ LOWENSTEIN, 1911-12

THE WIRELESS INSTITUTE

ROBERT H. MARRIOTT, 1909-10-11-12

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS

ROBERT H. MARRIOTT, 1912

GREENLEAF W. PICKARD, 1913

LOUIS W. AUSTIN, 1914

Digitized by Google

STANDING COMMITTEES

1915

COMMITTEE ON STANDARDIZATION

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, *Chairman*, College of the City of New York,	New York
LOUIS W. AUSTIN	Washington, D. C.
LOUIS COHEN	Washington, D. C.
JAMES ERSKINE-MURRAY	London, England
JOHN L. HOGAN, Jr.	New York
GUY HILL	New York
LESTER ISRAEL, *Secretary*	New York
ARTHUR E. KENNELLY	Cambridge, Mass.
FREDERICK A. KOLSTER	Washington, D. C.
ROBERT H. MARRIOTT	Seattle, Wash.
GREENLEAF W. PICKARD	Boston, Mass.
GEORGE W. PIERCE	Cambridge, Mass.
EMIL J. SIMON	New York
CHARLES H. TAYLOR	New York
C. TISSOT	Paris, France
ROY A. WEAGANT	Aldene, N. J.
JONATHAN ZENNECK	Munich, Germany
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON PAPERS

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, *Chairman*, College of the City of New York,	New York
LOUIS W. AUSTIN	Washington, D. C.
JOHN L. HOGAN, Jr.	New York
ARTHUR E. KENNELLY	Cambridge, Mass.
ROBERT H. MARRIOTT	Seattle, Wash.
ROBERT B. WOOLVERTON	San Francisco, Cal.
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON PUBLICITY

JOHN L. HOGAN, JR., *Chairman*	New York
GEORGE S. DAVIS	New York
ROBERT H. MARRIOTT	Seattle, Wash.
DAVID SARNOFF	New York
EMIL J. SIMON	New York
ROBERT B. WOOLVERTON	San Francisco, Cal.
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

Digitized by Google

COMMITTEE ON FINANCE

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, *Chairman*, College of the City of New York,	New York
GUY HILL	New York
JOHN L. HOGAN, JR.	New York
ROY A. WEAGANT	Aldene, N. J
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

SPECIAL COMMITTEES

COMMITTEE ON SAN FRANCISCO REPRESENTATION

ROBERT B. WOOLVERTON, *Chairman*	San Francisco, Cal.
JOHN L. HOGAN, JR.	New York
ROBERT H. MARRIOTT	Seattle, Wash.
DAVID SARNOFF	New York
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON FORMATION OF SEATTLE SECTION

ROBERT H. MARRIOTT, *Chairman*	Seattle, Wash.
FREDERICK G. SIMPSON	Seattle, Wash.
ROY A. THOMPSON	Seattle, Wash.
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

771928

Digitized by Google

INSTITUTE CORRESPONDENCE

In view of the kind cooperation of Messrs. John Hays Hammond and John Hays Hammond, Jr., the Board of Direction of the Institute of Radio Engineers, on the occasion of the removal of the office of the Institute to 111 Broadway, decided on the action expressed below:

April 19, 1915.

Mr. John Hays Hammond,
71 Broadway, New York City.

Dear Mr. Hammond:

The Board of Direction of the Institute has instructed me to express its thanks, and sincere appreciation as well as that of the membership for the very kind and material assistance that you have been good enough to extend to us during our existence. and particularly during the past year when we were favored with the free use of your offices and its facilities.

The Institute has advanced to a position of prominence and recognition in the engineering world, and in its building up, you and your son have been most helpful.

I feel it a privilege to extend to you our grateful thanks.

Very truly yours,

David Sarnoff,

Secretary

Mr. John Hays Hammond responded as follows:

April 21st, 1915.

Gentlemen:

Thanks for your appreciative letter of April 19th.

I wish the Institute of Radio Engineers great success.

Yours very truly,

John Hays Hammond.

The Institute of Radio Engineers,
71 Broadway,
New York City.

Digitized by Google

SEASONAL VARIATION IN THE STRENGTH OF RADIOTELEGRAPHIC SIGNALS*

By

Louis W. Austin, Ph.D.

(*Director of the United States Naval Radiotelegraphic Laboratory*)

In 1912, experiments were begun at the Bureau of Standard on the measurement of the strength of the receiving antenna current produced by signals sent from the radio stations in the Philadelphia and Norfolk Navy Yards. The object of the experiments was the determination of the variation in the strength of the signals at different times of the year.

It had been known qualitatively that the winter signals in general were stronger than those of summer, especially when the transmission took place overland. The reason ordinarily given for this was the absorption of the waves during the summer, due to the vegetation.

The conditions of the experiments were as follows: The sending wave length was 1,000 meters, and the spark frequency was approximately 1,000 per second, the sending antenna current being kept not far from 10 amperes, and care being taken that waves of only one frequency were emitted. The height to the center of capacity of the Philadelphia antenna was 39 meters, and of the Norfolk antenna 52 meters. The antenna at the Bureau of Standards is a harp 55 meters high, having an effective height to the center of capacity of 30 meters. The capacity is 0.0014 microfarad. The distance from the Bureau of Standards to the Philadelphia station is 185 kilometers, and to the Norfolk station 235 kilometers. The method of measuring the received antenna current has been described in another place.†

The observations are shown in the accompanying figure. The ordinates represent microamperes of received current reduced to a constant sending antenna current of 10 amperes. The total receiving antenna resistance, including that of coupling,

* Delivered before The Institute of Radio Engineers, New York, December 2, 1914.

† Bulletin, Bureau of Standards 7, p. 295, 1910. Reprint No. 157.

Digitized by Google

was 69 ohms. The figure shows a well marked difference between the summer and winter intensities, but the great variation among the individual values makes it difficult to draw quantitative conclusions; observations on succeeding days in several instances differing from each other in a ratio of more than two to one, while the errors of observation are certainly less than 10 per cent. Rough curves have been drawn among the individual points of observation, indicating the general course of the changes. The Philadelphia values in general lie higher than the Norfolk values, with the exception of those taken in the Autumn of 1912 before certain changes were made in the Philadelphia antenna which appear to have increased its efficiency. No observations were taken in Norfolk after November, 1913, as changes in that station made it impossible properly to make comparison between the observations before and after that time. Notwithstanding the irregularities among the observations, a few facts appear fairly certain: The seasonal variations seem to be different in different years, the minimum of 1912 being higher than that of 1913. The rise in the curves in the Autumn of 1912 appears to be steeper than that of 1913, the practical maximum being attained by November 1st in 1912 and not until the middle of December in 1913. It has not been found possible definitely to connect the strength of signal with the changes in foliage conditions, altho it is possible that this is an important factor in the variations. Contrary to the ideas previously held, there seems to be no very marked connection between rainfall and the transmission of the signals. This was especially noticeable in the Autumn of 1912, when after a dry period, rain set in and fell heavily for four days. This, however, caused no certain increase in the strength of the received signals.

This preliminary series of observations shows that for a thoro study of the subject it will be necessary to observe at least twice a week, and preferably every day, for a long period of time. From these observations it will then be possible to derive average values from which the general course of the phenomena can be deduced with some degree of accuracy. It may then be possible by comparison with the curves of meteorological and magnetic phenomena to find relations which will help to explain the seasonal changes, and also the irregularities among the single observations.

Most of the observations have been taken by my assistant: H. J. Meneratti, Chief Electrician, U. S. N

Digitized by Google

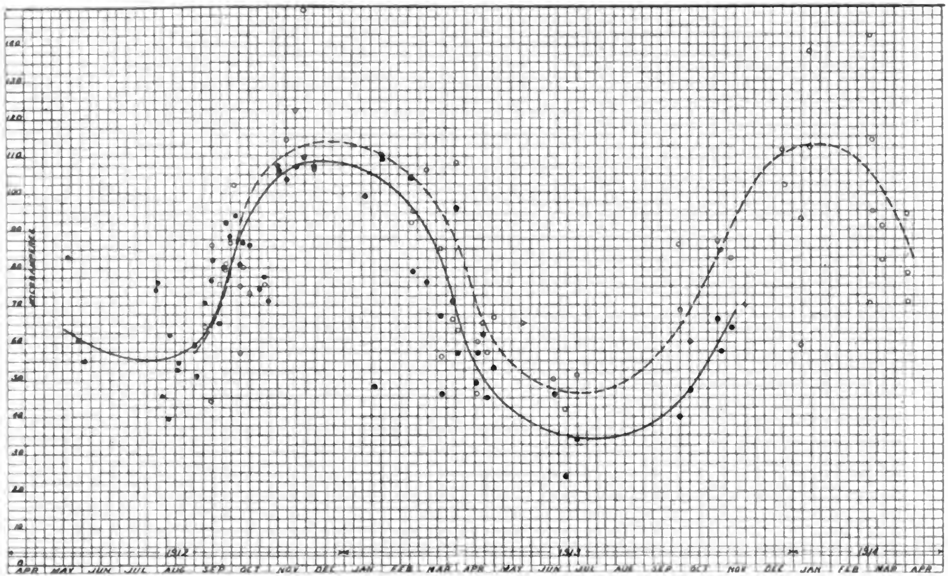
SUMMARY: The strength of received signals from two stations was measured at the Bureau of Standards over a period of about two years. The transmitting wave length was 1,000 meters, spark frequency, 1,000, and sending antenna current about 10 amperes for each of the transmitters. Their distances were respectively 185 and 235 kilometers. The curves giving variation in intensity of received signals are shown and discussed.

DISCUSSION

Robert H. Marriott: It will be found interesting and instructive to compare what Dr. Austin has found with the results I described in my paper on "Radio Range Variation" before the Institute, (PROCEEDINGS OF THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, Volume 2, Number 1, page 37) and especially with chart 3, Figures 1 and 12 of that paper.

Alfred N. Goldsmith: It is evident from Dr. Austin's results that for the particular stations under consideration, the day of best transmission is close to January 1st, and the day of most difficult transmission to July 15th. The average ratio of received energy in winter to received energy in summer (for the extreme cases) is found to be 6.3. However, this last result is not very accurate, since the individual values of the ratio lie between 3.9 and 10.

Digitized by Google



STRENGTH OF SIGNALS RECEIVED AT WASHINGTON
o = SIGNAL FROM PHILADELPHIA
• = SIGNAL FROM NORFOLK

Digitized by Google

RESONANCE PHENOMENA IN THE LOW FREQUENCY CIRCUIT OF RADIO TRANSMITTERS*

By

Henry E. Hallborg

It is the purpose of this paper to outline briefly the principal low (audio) frequency circuit characteristics common to all radio transmitters using alternators and transformers for charging the condensers of the radio frequency circuit. By low frequency we mean frequencies of the order of 60 to 500 cycles as commonly used.

The transformer is one of the important units of all radio stations, except in those of the arc or reflector alternator type. A practical study, therefore, of the phenomena occurring in the alternator-transformer circuit cannot fail to be of interest. In working with this circuit are to be found some of the most perplexing experiences of the experimenter and of the engineer. Strangely enough, many engineers who calculate freely the important constants of radio frequency circuit combinations entirely overlook the fact that the low frequency circuit combinations are equally numerous, and their proportioning equally important. Possibly more cases of inefficiency in radio transmitters are due to improper alternator-transformer circuit adjustments than to any other one cause. To sum up briefly, in the radio circuit resonance plays the master role, from generator slip rings to aerial.

In presenting this paper, the writer realizes that the subject has had much mathematical treatment, and that many empirical expressions covering particular phases and conditions of circuits have been derived. Unfortunately much of this work has been presented in such a way as not to appeal to the average engineer. It is the writer's hope so to cover the subject that its treatment may have more practical applications than heretofore. The expressions and circuit relations given are for the most part fundamental, or easily derived. The methods of taking these

*Delivered before The Institute of Radio Engineers, New York City, November 4, 1914.

Digitized by Google

resonance observations were devised by the writer, and the curves shown are nearly all actual graphs of measurements on circuits of various types and sizes.

Resonance readings in the alternator-transformer circuit can be obtained by several methods. Since we can readily make quantitative measurements of the variation of current and voltage, two methods immediately present themselves. The first is a method which we shall call the **primary ampere method,** and the second a method which we shall term the **secondary voltage method.**

The **primary ampere method** consists simply in plotting relations between the current in the generator circuit, and capacity load in the high tension circuit, the latter being varied step by step. It is evident, since the circuit constants on the high and low tension sides of a transformer bear a definite relation to each other, that if the point of resonance in the primary circuit is determined, the constants of the entire circuit may be closely calculated. The only equipment necessary for obtaining this data is an ammeter, a frequency meter, and a widely adjustable field rheostat. The connections for taking measurements by the **primary ampere method** are shown in Figure 1.

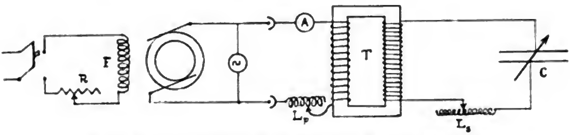


FIGURE 1—Connections for Primary Ampere Method

Here (F) represents the alternator field, and (R) a resistance inserted in this field of such a value, determined by trial, that the primary ammeter (A) has less than full scale deflection when the point of resonance is reached. (T) represents the transformer, and (L_p) and (L_s) series connected primary and secondary inductances. These are not essential to making the measurements; but are shown to cover general conditions. (C) is the condenser which is to be varied in known steps.

A plot may be made between any of the variables; capacity, frequency, or amperes. The most practical method is to hold the frequency (f) constant, and to determine the relation between primary current and the capacity load. When the exact value of (C) at which maximum current occurs is found, the value

Digitized by Google

of the effective inductance of the secondary circuit is calculated by the well known relation:

$$L_2 = \frac{10^6}{4 \pi^2 f^2 C} \text{ Henrys (C being in microfarads).}$$

This value of L_2 is especially useful from the point of view of the designer, since the maximum secondary current value may be obtained from it by the relation:

$$I_2 = \frac{E}{2 \pi f L_2}.$$

E is the potential applied to the condensers determined by the usual power relation.

Several curves taken by the primary ampere method are shown later in the paper. In making this measurement with a closed core transformer, an error may be introduced by the low magnetic density of the iron. Ordinarily this error is not large, since high resistance silicon steel cores are now almost universally used. With open core transformers, the error is negligible since their saturation characteristic is a straight line. Slight error may also be introduced by a low saturation effect in the generator, but this error has not been found to be appreciable.

The **secondary voltage method** consists in determining the relation between generator open-circuit voltage,, and the discharge voltage of a calibrated ball or sphere gap connected in parallel with the secondary condenser. The connections are somewhat similar to the primary method, and the apparatus required is no more elaborate. The connections are shown in Figure 2.

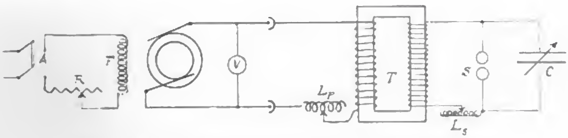


FIGURE 2—Connections for Secondary Voltage Method

Here (A) represents the alternator field switch, and (R) the rheostat of the alternator field, capable of varying its excitation thru a wide range. (V) is a voltmeter connected to read the alternator open-circuit voltage, and (S) is a calibrated discharge gap adjusted to breakdown at a point which will not

Digitized by Google

endanger the transformer insulation. (C) is the capacity load as before.

The process of taking readings consists in varying (C) by known steps, and finding the alternator excitation which just causes a discharge across (S) when the field switch (A) is closed. The point of resonance is found by noting the condenser setting (C) which leads to a discharge of (S) at the least alternator excitation. The order of the resonance effect is found by dividing the known sparking voltage of (S) (which remains fixed) by the primary voltage (V) required to discharge it. A curve may be plotted from these values, showing the secondary voltage obtainable for any applied constant primary voltage as the value of (C) is varied. While open to criticism due to transient effects, this method gives information regarding the secondary potential under conditions that make static voltmeters unavailable. Curves taken by this method are shown below.

By reference to the vector diagrams of the ideal transformer, as given in most text books, we obtain three important relations between primary capacity, inductance, and resistance, and their equivalent values when transferred to the secondary of the transformer. These relations are useful enough in conjunction with transformer resonance to be here stated.

If we call the ratio of transformation (i. e., the number of secondary turns divided by the number of primary turns) of the transformer G, the relations are:

$$C_1 = G^2 C_2$$

$$L_2 = G^2 L_1$$

$$R_2 = G^2 R_1$$

Given a transformer ratio of 10, for example, these expressions may be interpreted as follows: The total capacity inserted in the primary to have the equivalent effect of a capacity C_2 inserted in the secondary is 100 C_2. Similarly an inductance L_1 inserted in the primary has an equivalent effect of 100 L_1 inserted in the secondary. Likewise a resistance R_1 inserted in the primary has a secondary equivalent effect of 100 R_1. The curves presented are evidence enough of the importance of these relations in connection with low frequency resonance. The writer has made several predeterminations of resonance characteristics in fair agreement with later measurement by transferring circuit constants by this means. For the prede-

Digitized by Google

termination of the primary current, the fundamental formula was used, namely:

$$I = \frac{E}{\sqrt{R^2 + \left(\omega L - \frac{1}{\omega C}\right)^2}}$$

The values of ωL and $\frac{1}{\omega C,}$ where L and C are the total circuit inductance and capacity respectively referred back to the primary by the relations above shown, were obtained on both sides of the resonance value and plotted. Similarly, the equivalent value of R was obtained. In finding an equivalent primary value of R for this formula, a difficulty is experienced in determining a proper value of the total secondary resistance of the condenser circuit. This resistance is a function of the applied frequency, the number of condensers connected, and their manner of connection. Tests made at the Naval Radio Telegraphic Laboratory in Washington (See PROCEEDINGS OF THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, Volume 1, part 2, page 35) indicate that this resistance for a single plate glass condenser of 0.002 microfarad capacity is of the order of 50,000 ohms at 60 cycles. This figure agrees quite well with values obtained by the writer.

A most useful and practical method of obtaining the low frequency characteristics of a radio set is by measurement of the percentage reactance of the transformer, the alternator, and the other circuit inductances. This method consists in observing the voltage drop at the terminals of each inductance in question: alternator, transformer, etc., when rated full load current is flowing. The percentage reactance is the percentage voltage drop on each unit in terms of the rated voltage. For instance, if a 500-volt generator has a synchronous impedance of 10 ohms at normal frequency, and if the rated full load current is 10 amperes, the impedance voltage of the machine is 100 volts, and its percentage reactance is 100–500, or 20 per cent. Similarly two or more reactances connected in circuit are added arithmetically to obtain the percentage total circuit reactance. This is the reactance value having direct bearing on the resonance characteristic. From it may be obtained the total primary inductance value L_1 as well as the total secondary inductance value L_2, as follows:

Digitized by Google

$$L_1 = \frac{\text{(Percentage Reactance of Total Circuit)} \cdot \text{(Normal Primary Volts)}}{2\pi f \cdot \text{(Normal Primary Amperes)}}$$

$$L_2 = \frac{\text{(Percentage Reactance of Total Circuit)} \cdot \text{(Normal Secondary Volts)}}{2\pi f \cdot \text{(Normal Secondary Amperes)}}$$

where (f) is the frequency of the generator.
Having these inductance values the capacity required for resonance is easily computed from the formula:

$$C = \frac{10^6}{4\pi^2 f^2 L} \text{ microfarads.}$$

In this formula, L, calculated as shown above, is given in henrys.

The capacity value is usually fixed by considerations other than those of transformer resonance, and the problem is one of adjusting the circuits properly for the specified capacity values. A few experimentally determined facts tend to simplify this adjustment. Nearly all spark transmitters operate most efficiently when the natural frequency of the alternator-transformer circuit, that is,

$$F = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}}$$

is lower than the impressed circuit frequency (f) of the alternator. The choice of the percentage difference between F and f depends on the type of spark gap used. The writer has found that a value of inductance 30 per cent. greater than the resonating value is a proper value for synchronous rotating gaps, and for quenched gaps a value 40 per cent. in excess of the value to give transformer-alternator resonance. The natural frequency of the circuit therefore must be 12 to 15 per cent. lower than the impressed frequency (f). In some cases it is necessary to detune to the extent of 20 per cent. or more; but wide detuning always results in loss of efficiency. In the case of quenched gaps, the choice usually lies between a clear note with lower efficiency, and a "medium" note with higher efficiency. The value of L for quenched spark sets given above as 40 per cent. above the resonance value, is a compromise choice between the limits just mentioned.

The transformers for the American Marconi high power stations were successfully adjusted by the methods above out-

Digitized by Google

lined. No condensers were required for test purposes, and the available test frequency was only 60 cycles, whereas the rated frequencies of the several equipments covered a wide range. All of these transformers are of the closed core, oil cooled type. One of them is shown in Figures 3 and 4. The total station capacity 300 kilowatts is obtained by paralleling four 75 kilowatt units, and supplying one spare unit. The complete breakdown of the transformer equipment is thereby made quite remote.

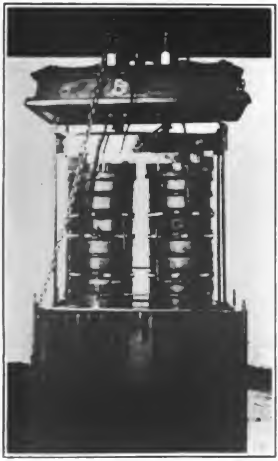


FIGURE 3

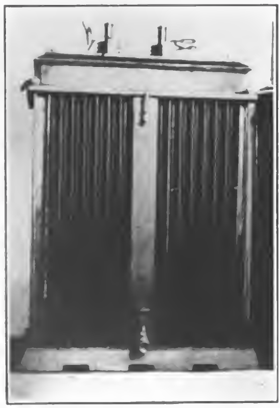


FIGURE 4

A transformer of the closed core type with alternate primary and secondary windings lends itself well to wide reactance variation. The design is not unlike the "tub" arc lighting transformer. The difference between the two lies in the fact that the flux leakage of the tub type is a function of the load, while the leakage of the radio transformer is fixed, and is made sufficient to suppress arcing and excessive wattless current when spark discharge occurs. With this type the required leakage is obtained by proper separation of the primary and secondary coils. The exact amount of leakage in the transformer is apportioned in accordance with the total circuit inductance found necessary, and is high or low as the condition may require.

Digitized by Google

In the case of the transformers for the Marconi high power stations, it was necessary to adjust precisely the reactance of each unit to insure proper division of the load when four units were operated normally in parallel. When similar adjustment of all the units for one station had been made, actual reactance readings on one unit were found to suffice, since the combined inductance value for normal operation could be obtained by dividing the single unit value by the number of units it was desired to operate in parallel. Actual measurement on four units in parallel checked this assumption exactly. The problem of reactance adjustment in a circuit consisting of alternator, several transformers in parallel, and a series of secondary loading coils is to determine the combined transformer inductance which, with the alternator and the secondary loading coils, gives a total secondary circuit inductance 30 per cent. in excess of the inductance calculated for resonance with the specified capacity.

Figure 5 illustrates a method used by the writer for charting a low frequency circuit, and thereby obtaining a complete graphical record of its inductance characteristics. It shows the

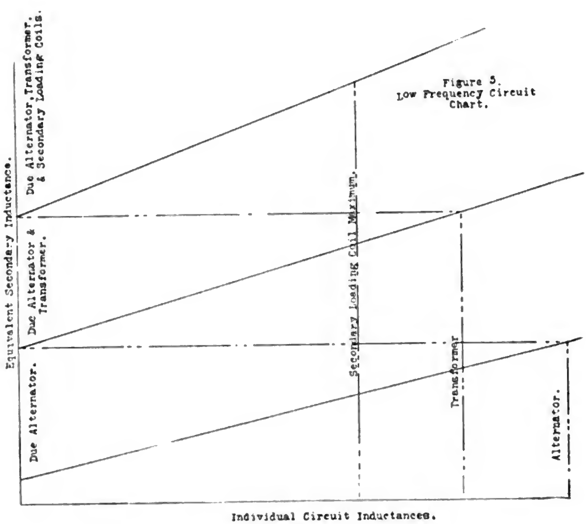


FIGURE 5

relation between total secondary inductance as ordinates, and series connected inductances (primary and secondary), as abcissas. The three curves shown give respectively, the value of the alternator inductance referred to the secondary, the value of alternator and transformer referred to the secondary, and the value of alternator, transformer, and secondary loading coils referred to the secondary. Data on any condition of the circuit is at once available. When the iron is worked at moderate densities, as in the units above mentioned, it was found that the curves are nearly straight lines, and only a few readings were necessary to locate the entire curve. With this data at hand, the value of condenser for resonance, the point of best operation, and even the general shape of the resonance curve can be closely approximated.

Figure 6 taken by the primary ampere method shows the actual tuning curves of the 300 kilowatts alternator-trans-

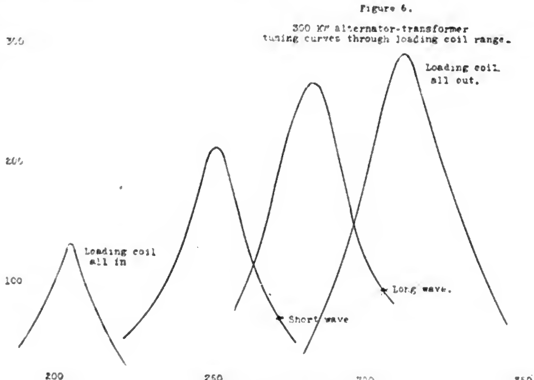


FIGURE 6

former circuit at New Brunswick, N. J., for various settings of the secondary loading coils. It will be noted that as the circuit is stiffened by adding loading coils, the primary current amplitude falls, and the resonance effect is sharpened. The decrease in primary current amplitude is probably partly due to added resistance as coils are inserted, and to the large increase in resistance due to the smaller number of condensers required.

Digitized by Google

as the inductance is increased, as previously pointed out. The stars indicate actual operating points at different wave lengths. Since these operating points fall quite within the middle ranges of the loading coils, it is evident that it is possible to make factory adjustments as above outlined, with a high degree of accuracy.

Figure 7 is an application of the primary ampere method and the secondary voltage method to a 2 kilowatt, 500 cycle,

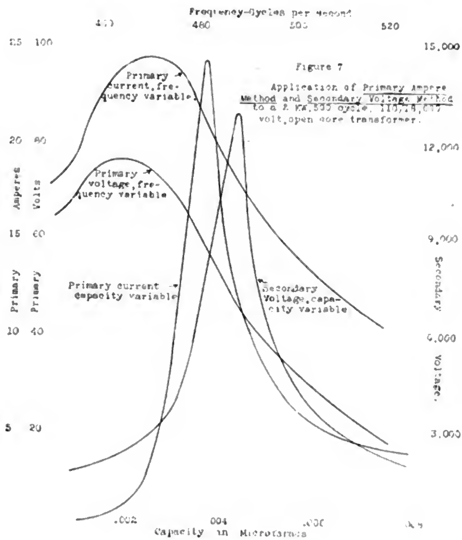


FIGURE 7

110–18,000 volt, open core transformer, designed for a synchronous rotary spark set. It will be noted that the point of resonance taken by the two methods does not occur at the same condenser value; but that the secondary voltage method gives an inductance value somewhat less than the value obtained by the primary voltage method. From the alternator-transformer constants of this particular circuit, namely 3.4 ohms synchronous impedance, and 2.8 ohms transformer impedance, we deduce for the equivalent secondary inductance by the "(ratio)² transformation" the value 19.7 henrys. The value of capacity for resonance should

Digitized by Google

therefore be 0.0051 microfarad. However, the curves show this inductance to be about 30 per cent. greater than the figure deduced by the "(ratio)^2 method." For a loosely coupled transformer, such as the one under consideration, Seibt deduced the expression

$$L_2 = \frac{1}{\omega^2 C (1 - k^2)}.$$

We found the value of secondary inductance for resonance, with capacity C, and coupling factor K taken as equal to 0.7. Solving for K from the data above given we get a value of about 0.5. This figure is more nearly in conformity with the writer's experience and results on open core transformers. With closed core transformers, K is unity (or at least nearly enough so for all practical purposes). The operating point for best results is shown on the diagram by a star. The natural frequency of the circuit corresponding is 407 cycles, or 18 per cent. below the alternator frequency. The variation of primary voltage and current with frequency changes is also shown. These curves are quite similar, as is to be expected, since they are linked together by the relation

$$E = 2\pi f L_1 I$$

where $2\pi f_1 L$ is the generator impedance, and I_1 the current flowing.

Figure 8 is of interest since it demonstrates quite conclusively that the alternator synchronous impedance has an effect on resonance similar to that of any inserted inductance of equivalent value, and must be considered as such. Curve A is the resonance characteristic when no reactance is inserted in series with a transformer and a 2 kilowatt, 500 cycle alternator of 0.5 ohm synchronous impedance. Curve B results from connecting a reactance of 3 ohms in this alternator-transformer circuit. Curve C is the result obtained by using the same transformer with another alternator, the synchronous impedance of which is 3.4 ohms, or roughly the sum of the impedances of curves A and B.

Figure 9 illustrates the effect on resonance of adding resistance in series with the secondary circuit of a 7.5 kilowatt open core transformer. The resistances inserted were carbon rods of 700 ohms each. The curves become rapidly flatter as the resistance, or damping, is increased. The amount of resistance required completely to wipe out resonance is approximately such that

Digitized by Google

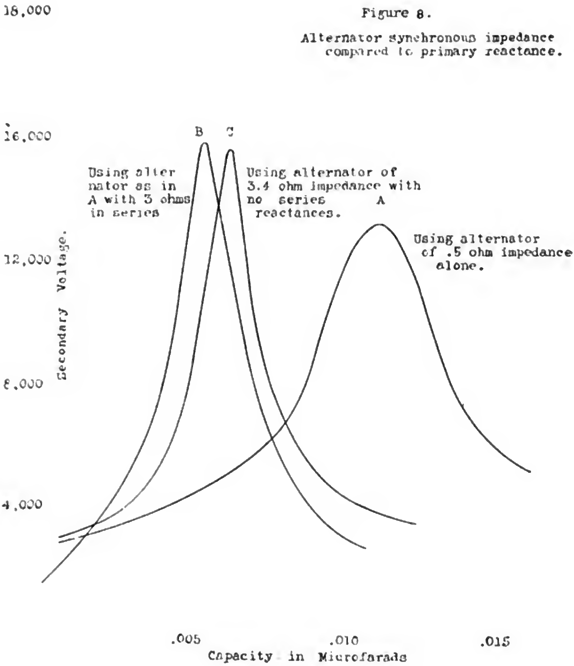


FIGURE 8

the rated output is all consumed in the resistance. Resistance has no effect on the resonance curve other than that of "broadening the tuning," so to speak.

Figure 10 shows the effect of resistance inserted in the primary of a 2 kilowatt, 500 cycle, 110–18,000 volt transformer circuit. These curves are striking examples of the correctness of the deduction that inserting a resistance R_1 in the primary circuit has an equivalent secondary effect of G^2R_1. Resonance is wiped out with astonishing facility. In this experiment, the point of resonance moved slightly to the left in the direction of increased inductance, since the rheostat used was slightly inductive. The curves were made by the secondary voltage method.

Digitized by Google

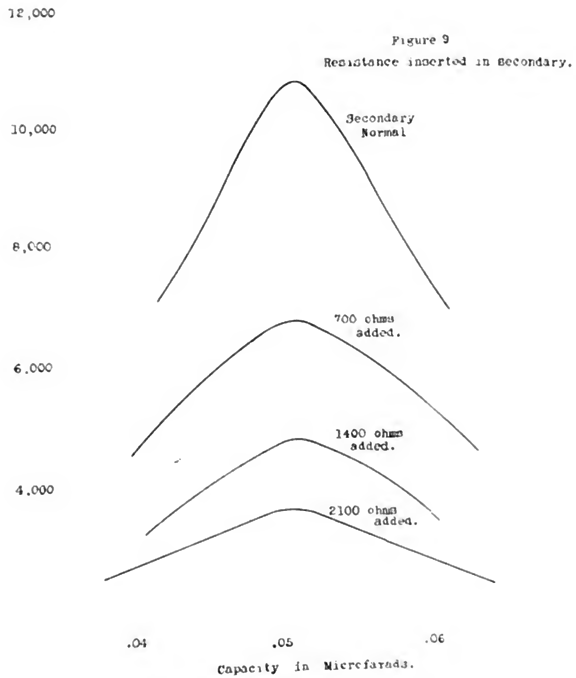


FIGURE 9

Figure 11 represents the conditions found to occur in a 5 kilowatt, 500 cycle, 110–12,500 volt, open core transformer tested by the secondary voltage method, when a step by step primary inductance was inserted. The secondary voltage rise becomes sharper, and its amplitude greater, as more primary inductance is inserted. We have noted in Figure 6 that the primary current diminishes with increased inductance, hence the secondary current must likewise drop. If the secondary voltage is to be considered as resulting simply by the building up of voltage across the inductance of the secondary, in accordance with the relation

$$E_2 = 2\pi f L_2 I_2,$$

Digitized by Google

it is evident that a condition such as that here shown can result only when the secondary inductance increase is more rapid than the secondary current decrease. This is probably the case with open core transformers having a liberal copper allowance, and a relatively weak coefficient of coupling.

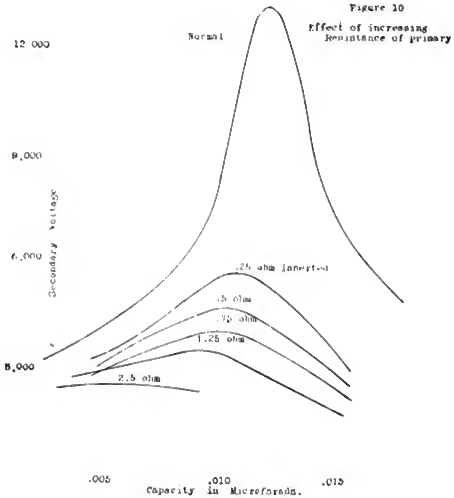


FIGURE 10

Figure 12 demonstrates the desirability of detuning the alternator-transformer circuit of a quenched spark transmitter with respect to the alternator frequency. The natural frequency of this circuit is seen to be 450 cycles, or 50 cycles lower than the alternator. This setting represents the working point nearest resonance, with this particular set, for a perfectly clear note. It was also the most efficient operating point. A detuning of 100 cycles or 20 per cent. is nearer the average condition for a good tone.

Figure 13 shows a simultaneous series of primary voltage and primary current readings for one of the settings made on the 300 kilowatt set at New Brunswick (and shown in Figure 6).

Digitized by Google

The primary voltage curve checks quite closely with the voltage calculated from the simple relation:

$$E_1 = 2\pi f L_1 I_1$$

or is merely the product of alternator synchronous impedance and the current flowing. A few calculated points are shown by circles.

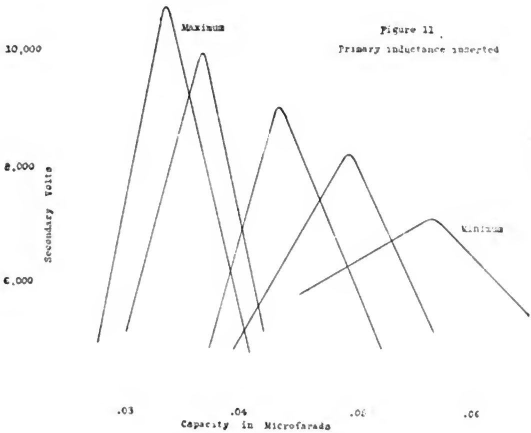


FIGURE 11

Figure 14 is a record of the simultaneous primary and secondary currents of the 300 kilowatt set at New Brunswick, using a resonance setting as above. These curves were taken to determine the extent of the variation of transformer ratio during resonance. The two curves are plotted against the same ordinates by multiplying the secondary current by the winding ratio of transformation and plotting primary amperes direct. It is apparent that no wide change of ratio occurs.

Some vital facts may be gleaned from the data presented in regard to the design of transformers for this class of work. Quite evidently, low resistance values in both primary and secondary are desirable. Further, it has been demonstrated that the total circuit inductance is the quantity of chief importance from the point of view of resonance.

Digitized by Google

We have also noted that this circuit inductance may be made up of a number of separate small inductances, or concentrated in the alternator and transformer alone. For a

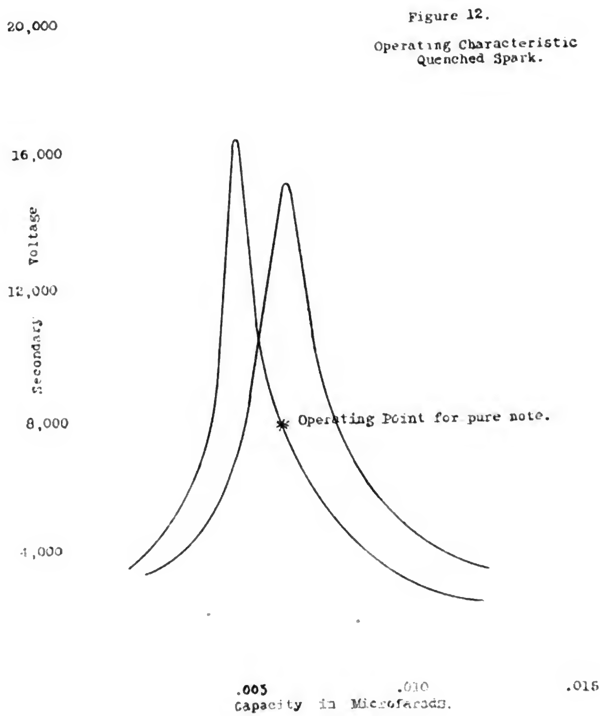


FIGURE 12

particular specified capacity value in the oscillating circuit, the most efficient arrangement is that in which the total inductance is concentrated in the alternator and transformer only. Both copper and iron losses are thereby reduced; but the arrangement lacks flexibility if a wide range of capacity is to be used. Usually this is not the case. Flexibility, if desired, is most easily obtained

Digitized by Google

by means of primary variable reactance, or better still from the point of view of efficiency, by varying the mutual inductance of the transformer, thereby regulating its flux leakage.

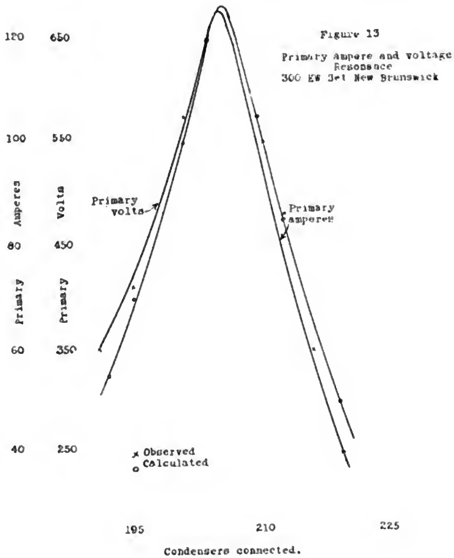


FIGURE 13

The choice between open and closed core transformers for radio work has long been a point in dispute. The open core transformer has the advantage of simplicity. It has also the inherent high leakage characteristic sometimes so desirable. It requires more iron and wire for a given output than the closed core unit. Assuming the same magnetic flux density in a similar unit of each type, the copper loss in the closed core unit will be less since less wire is needed, and for the same reason its iron loss is lower since the volume of iron is less altho the flux densities are the same. The closed core unit therefore is more efficient. A considerable saving in space in favor of the closed core type also results. This saving, as we have just noted, is effected in both core and coils. High leakage may be obtained

Digitized by Google

in the closed core type by careful disposition of the windings without resort to magnetic shunts, or other devices. It is apparent for these reasons that the closed core transformer is the more economical type both electrically and mechanically.

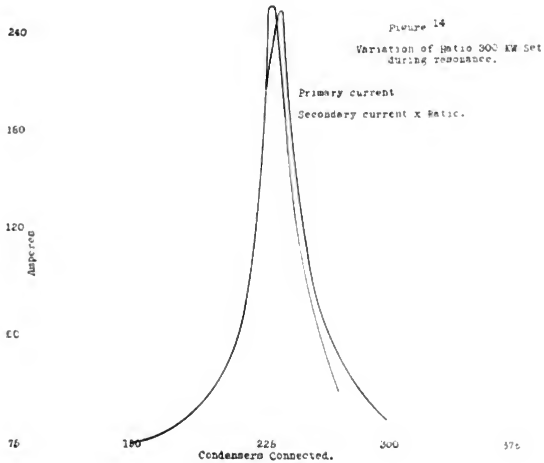


FIGURE 14

SUMMARY: For determining the resonance characteristics of the audio frequency circuits of a radio transmitter, either the primary ampere method or the secondary voltage method may be used. These methods are described. The method of calculation of the total circuit reactance is given, and the important bearing of this quantity on the resonance effects is discussed. Percentage reactance of any portion of the circuit is defined. The extent of detuning the transformer circuit from the generator frequency in quenched spark work, namely about 15 per cent., is given and explained. The transformer circuit of the Marconi trans-Atlantic station at New Brunswick, N. J., is described. Curves giving the results of measurements by the above methods are shown. The advantages of low resistance in primary and secondary of transformers for quenched spark work, and the superiority of the closed core transformer are considered.

Digitized by Google

Alfred S. Kuhn: As a result of my experience with radio transformers, it seems to be that the diagram given by the author in which the relation between primary current and secondary capacity is shown would be more instructive if it were drawn as indicated in Figure A. In Figure A, the heavy lines show the primary current variation with change in secondary capacity; and the dotted lines the secondary voltage variation. The graph shows that at A, with zero capacity, the current is simply the transformer magnetising current. From A to B, the current lags, from B to C it leads, and from D to E it again lags behind the condenser current. R is the point of resonance.

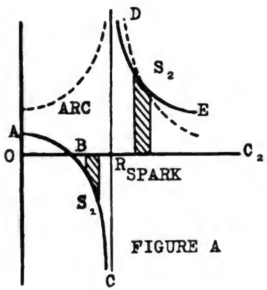


FIGURE A

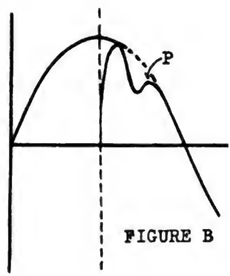


FIGURE B

In general, there are three possible regions of operation:

1. In the shaded region, S_1,

2. At R (tho operation at R causes a resonance rise resulting in what one might term a "smashing point." Such operation would therefore be very unstable and dangerous. Operation at R might be obtained by using a limiting resistance, but this would be uneconomical), and

3. In the shaded region, S_2.

By operating at S_1 a high power factor and antenna radiation are obtainable. The condenser discharge produces, however, an arc rather than a spark across the gap, as indicated by a hissing sound. The arc no doubt causes greater heating than the usual spark. Therefore operation at a natural circuit frequency greater than the impressed frequency is undesirable. Operation at R is very unstable. Therefore, to obtain the best operation, it is desirable to operate in the "spark" region, S_2;

Digitized by Google

that is, at a natural circuit frequency less than the impressed frequency. In order to reach this "spark" region, the inductance may of course be increased as well as the capacity. In some recent radio work with transformers, the closed core type have been used by me, and it was found unnecessary to use external reactances in either the primary or secondary of the transformer. High efficiencies were therefore obtained. Results obtained by the use of such equipment warrant my objection to the author's statement that in the case of quenched gap sets, "the choice generally lies between a clear note with diminished efficiency and a 'medium' note with higher efficiency." In my experience improving the note does not at all impair the efficiency but rather augments it.

As to the curve in Figure B, which was drawn by Mr. Simon and apparently verified by Mr. Hallborg's oscillograms showing the current thru the quenched gap circuit, the reasons for a rise at P are not clear to me unless there is a reaction from the open or radiating circuit back to the closed or oscillating circuit. This latter condition would indicate poor quenching. With a perfect note and complete quenching, however, this rise should not occur.

Julian Barth: The necessity for working radio power transformers above the resonance frequency might be explained on the basis of armature reaction. The current will lead, be in phase with, or lag behind the e. m. f. depending on whether the transformer is worked below, at, or above this resonance point. There is thus caused "building up," no effect, or dropping off of the generated voltage as the load increases; because leading currents cause the armature reaction to aid the generated e. m. f. while lagging currents cause the opposite effect. Of course, a building up of e. m. f. will tend to cause more than one discharge at the peak of the wave, while a dropping of the e. m. f. will tend to prevent it. It is obvious that for a clear note, the condition is one discharge occurring regularly for each peak; hence from the standpoint of clearness of tone, working well above resonance is an advantage. However, the explanation just given should be taken with a grain of salt. In the course of an intricate mathematical analysis of the subject, several other explanations were found as well. These explanations stand the test of practice, and the analysis referred to gives conditions which enable working the transformer directly on the resonance point. I hope in the future to explain this more fully.

Digitized by Google

The transferring of the primary external reactances into the secondary circuit by multiplying by the square of the ratio of secondary turns to primary turns, as given by Mr. Hallborg, is not a completely accurate procedure. We shall consider the circuits shown in Figure 1. We shall also take

$L_2 = L_5 + L_6$,
$L_1 = L_3 + L_4$,
k = over-all coupling coefficient of the circuits, and
k_1 = coupling coefficient of transformation.

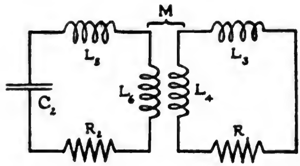


FIGURE 1

We have then:

$$L_1 \frac{d\,i_1}{d\,t} + R_1 i_1 + M \frac{d\,i_2}{d\,t} = 0 \tag{1}$$

$$L_2 \frac{d\,i_2}{d\,t} + R_2 i_2 + M \frac{d\,i_1}{d\,t} + \frac{1}{C}\int i_2\,d\,t = 0 \tag{1'}$$

which are the equations of the potentials if the circuits are permitted to oscillate freely.

Differentiate each equation twice:

$$\left\{\begin{aligned} &L_1 \frac{d^2 i_1}{d\,t^2} + R_1 \frac{d\,i_1}{d\,t} + M \frac{d^2 i_2}{d\,t^2} = 0 && (2)\\ &L_2 \frac{d^2 i_2}{d\,t^2} + R_2 \frac{d\,i_2}{d\,t} + M \frac{d^2 i_1}{d\,t^2} + \frac{1}{C} i_2 = 0 && (2')\end{aligned}\right.$$

$$\left\{\begin{aligned} &L_1 \frac{d^3 i_1}{d\,t^3} + R_1 \frac{d^2 i_1}{d\,t^2} + M \frac{d^3 i_2}{d\,t^3} = 0 && (3)\\ &L_2 \frac{d^3 i_2}{d\,t^3} + R_2 \frac{d^2 i_2}{d\,t^2} + M \frac{d^3 i_1}{d\,t^3} + \frac{1}{C}\frac{d\,i_1}{d\,t} = 0 && (3')\end{aligned}\right.$$

To separate the variables, we perform the following algebraic additions:

1. [Equation (3′) × (− M) + Equation (3) × (L_2) + Equation (2) × (R_2) + Equation (1) × $\frac{1}{C}$]

Digitized by Google

2. [Equation (3′) × (L_1) + Equation (3) × ($-M$) + Equation (2′) × (R_1)]
Thus we obtain:

$$\frac{d^3 i_1}{d t^3}(L_1 L_2 - M^2) + \frac{d^2 i_1}{d t^2}(L_2 R_1 + L_1 R_2) + \frac{d i_1}{d t}\left(R_1 R_2 + \frac{L_1}{C_2}\right) + \frac{R_1}{C_2} i_1 = 0 \tag{4}$$

$$\frac{d^3 i_2}{d t^3}(L_1 L_2 - M^2) + \frac{d^2 i_2}{d t^2}(L_2 R_1 + L_1 R_2) + \frac{d i_2}{d t}\left(R_1 R_2 + \frac{L_1}{C_2}\right) + \frac{R_1}{C_2} i_2 = 0 \tag{4′}$$

The equations are identical in i_1 and i_2, and hence the currents obtained by solving them must have the same period. We need therefore solve only one of them, and we may omit the subscript number of i.

Mr. Hallborg's curves showing the effect of resistance on the position of the resonance point prove that even far beyond the limit of working conditions resistance plays no part in determining the period of the circuit. My own observations substantiate this. Hence, in determining the period of the circuit, we can neglect all resistance terms in equation (4), leaving:

$$\frac{d^3 i}{dt^3}(L_1 L_2 - M^2) + \frac{d i}{d t}\frac{L_1}{C_2} = 0$$

Dividing thru by $L_1 L_2$, and remembering that

$$\frac{M^2}{L_1 L_2} = k,$$

$$\frac{d^3 i}{dt^3}(1 - k^2) + \frac{d i}{d t}\frac{1}{L_2 C_2} = 0 \tag{5}$$

This is a well-known differential equation form, and has a solution of the type

$$i = A \sin(pt + \theta) \tag{6}$$

where $$p = \frac{2\pi}{T},$$

and T is the period of the circuit. From equation (6), we have

$$\frac{d^3 i}{d t^3} = -p^2 \frac{d i}{d t} \tag{7}$$

Digitized by Google

Substituting in (5), and dividing by $\frac{di}{dt}$

$$-p^2(1-k^2)+\frac{1}{L_2 C_2}=0$$

$$p^2=\frac{1}{L_2 C_2 (1-k^2)}$$

and since $p=\frac{2\pi}{T}$,

$$T=2\pi\sqrt{L_2 C_2 (1-k^2)} \tag{A}$$

This agrees with the results obtained by other methods by Seibt, Blondel, and others. Now

$$k=\frac{M}{\sqrt{L_1 L_2}}$$

$$k_1=\frac{M}{\sqrt{L_4 L_6}}$$

$$\therefore \quad k=k_1\sqrt{\frac{L_4 L_6}{L_1 L_2}}$$

Substituting in (A), we obtain

$$T=2\pi\sqrt{L_2 C_2\left(1-\frac{k_1^2 L_4 L_6}{L_1 L_2}\right)}$$

$$=2\pi\sqrt{L_2 C_2 \frac{L_1 L_2-k_1^2 L_4 L_6}{L_1 L_2}}$$

but

$$L_1=L_4+L_3$$
$$L_2=L_6+L_5$$

$$\therefore \quad T=2\pi\sqrt{C_2\frac{L_5(L_4+L_3)+L_6[L_4(1-k_1^2)+L_3]}{L_1}}$$

If we call $(1-k_3^2)$ the leakage coefficient of the transformer, and L_4 the primary reactance, we have

$$L_4(1-k_3^2)=L_8$$

where L_8 is the leakage reactance of the transformer measured on the primary side.

$$\therefore \quad T=2\pi\sqrt{C_2\left[L_5+\frac{L_6}{L_1}\left(L_8+L_3\right)\right]} \tag{B}$$

In closed core transformers, $L_6=\rho^2 L_4$ where ρ is the ratio of turns.

$$\therefore \quad T=2\pi\sqrt{C_2\left[L_5+\rho^2\frac{L_4}{L_1}\left(L_8+L_3\right)\right]}$$

Digitized by Google

Now $\frac{L_4}{L_1}$ is of the nature of a coupling coefficient, and may be represented by k_2^2, where k_2 is defined as the coupling coefficient of the circuit considered as having no leakage in the transformer nor any external secondary inductance.

$$\therefore \quad T = 2\pi\sqrt{C_2\left[L_5 + \rho^2 k_2^2 (L_8 + L_3)\right]} \qquad (C)$$

Equation (A) gives the period of the power circuits in a spark radio outfit, for any kind of transformer. Equation (B) does the same, but shows more clearly the effects of external and leakage inductances. Equation (C) gives the period when a closed core transformer is used, and shows the effects of external and leakage inductances.

Equation (C) also shows Mr. Hallborg's method of transferring $L_8 + L_5$ into the secondary circuit by multiplying by ρ^2 not to be completely accurate, since the factor k_2^2 should also be used. However, in the usual practical cases, k_2^2 is greater than 0.9 and even as high as 0.97; and since T is a square root function of $L_8 + L_5$, it is seen that the error in calculating T is not very great when k_2^2 is neglected.

Another point of much interest is the doubtful value of power factor readings unless properly taken. For this purpose, let us consider the circuit shown in Figure 2.

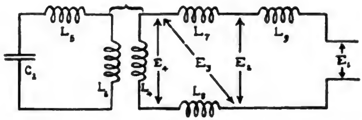


FIGURE 2

Here L_5 is any secondary choke coil, L_9 the generator inductance, L_7 the primary choke coil, and L_8 the leakage reactance of the transformer considered as a coil in series with the primary. For a given value of $L_3 + L_8$, where $L_3 = L_7 + L_9$, the circuits are identical no matter how the individual values of L_8, L_7, and L_9 are varied, as seen from equation (B). In the figure E_1 is the generated e. m. f., E_3 is the voltage at a transformer having leakage, E_2 is the terminal voltage of the machine, and E_4 is the actual voltage maintaining the transformer load and reactances. All these e. m. fs. are different, and give rise to different power factors when used. The usual method of measuring power factor is at the terminals of the machine. But

Digitized by Google

the clever designer will so juggle L_8, L_7, and L_9 that L_9 will have a value which will give minimum e. m. f. reading at the generator terminals. The only power factor that means anything is that calculated from the generated e. m. f. This can be measured by getting a reading of the machine open circuit voltage when its field is adjusted for load conditions, provided the machine has no armature reaction. Otherwise the voltage generated under load conditions cannot be measured at all. I have seen a power factor measured at the transformer of 85 per cent., while the power factor measured back of the choke coils (that is, at the machine), was 40 per cent. If the choke coils had been introduced into the machine, the power factor measured at the machine terminals would have been 85 per cent.

Alfred N. Goldsmith: The conception of "entire circuit resonance" is well illustrated in this paper. It is very desirable that the radio engineer should regard the complex audio or low frequency circuit (consisting of the alternator, choke coils, primary of the transformer, secondary of the transformer, and capacity load of the secondary) as an equivalent simple circuit. It is this equivalent circuit which is to be tuned to resonance; or rather, as Mr. Hallborg has explained, to a frequency somewhat off the alternator frequency. The constants of this equivalent circuit are obtained, as shown, by transferring all capacities, inductances, and resistances from the primary to the secondary circuit or vica versa. The method of representing such complex circuits sometimes used by telephone engineers is also applicable. In this case it would consist, in brief, in joining the primary and secondary circuits thru a single inductance equal to the mutual inductance between the primary and secondary.

The entire treatment of the resonance problem by Mr. Hallborg has been dependent on the assumption, not always the case, that all currents in the circuits described are in phase. As Mr. John Stone Stone shows in one of his earlier papers on "Maximum Current in the Secondary of Coupled Circuits," the condition for maximum secondary current is also the condition for unity power factor in the primary. The importance of working near the resonance setting, so far as economy of copper in the alternator-transformer primary circuit is concerned, is therefore evident.

In measuring the secondary potential difference, a spark gap method has been used thruout. An ordinary Braun electro-

Digitized by Google

static voltmeter can be satisfactorily employed for the same purpose, and possibly with greater ease of manipulation, safety, and accuracy. Because of its intrinsically small capacity, it gives an accurate R. M. S. value of the secondary voltage at such moderate frequencies as are employed. Its readings are also more nearly independent of the wave form than is the case for a spark gap.

The effect of a resonance setting on sparking at the relay key contacts is also of interest. Will Mr. Hallborg outline his experience in this regard?

Henry E. Hallborg: The explanation given by Mr. Simon of the necessity for working above the resonance point, and the theoretical curve he has drawn to demonstrate the resulting circuit conditions are noteworthy in connection with the oscillograph records made by us on quenched gap and rotary synchronous gap sets during the spark discharge. For both types, the primary current and voltage waves show a sudden dip and a slight subsequent rise.

As regards Mr. Hill's suggestion that the field current in testing by the secondary voltage method should be gradually raised instead of suddenly closing the field switch, this suggestion is quite feasible. The method would be most suitable when the resonance rise is not abrupt, or in other words, when the tuning is broad. With high inductance values in the transformer, as is usual in small units, it is better to work with both the field switch and field rheostat.

In connection with Dr. Goldsmith's question regarding the comparative amount of arcing at key or relay contacts when operating near resonance or over it, I have found, in general, that there is less arcing when working above resonance; altho it is difficult to draw general conclusions since the results are largely dependent on local conditions. I recall an attempt to shunt a reactance across the relay key of the 100 kilowatt 500 cycle synchronous rotary gap set at Brant Rock, breaking about 400 amperes. It was accidentally of a value just sufficient to tune the generator-transformer circuit. A most violent arcing resulted each time the contact was broken accompanied by a noise almost as deafening as that of the spark itself. On replacing the reactance by a non-inductive water rheostat, excellent results were obtained. When the fixed and movable relay contacts had become burned into a good fit, satisfactory operation was obtained without a relay shunt of any kind. In

Digitized by Google

general, the higher the generator frequency, the simpler the problem of operating a relay; since the current passes thru the zero value more frequently and materially assists in quenching the arcing.

The mathematical treatment of this problem given by Mr. Barth is largely covered by Dr. Seibt's work in 1904. Dr. Seibt derived various transformer relations for both loose and close couplings using the coupling coefficient of various combinations. One of the most important of the relations found is that used in the paper. This particular coupling coefficient is of importance only with open core transformers. I quite agree with Mr. Barth that for this type of transformer the value of the transformation ratio given in my paper is only approximate. With a closed core transformer, on the other hand, the value of k is unity, or very nearly so; even when the percentage reactance of the transformer itself varies between wide limits. For this latter case, therefore, the relation depending on the transformation ratio are quite exact. Readings made recently by the writer in conjunction with the engineers of the American Transformer Company checked these relations with remarkable closeness. They are surely accurate enough for practical purposes.

The transformer mentioned by Mr. Hill has previously been considered in the discussion on Mr. Kolster's paper on "The Effect of Distributed Capacity of Coils Used in Radio Telegraphic Circuits" (PROCEEDINGS OF THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, Volume 1, Part 2, April, 1913, page 31). I had occasion to carry on a series of experimental tests on this transformer when connected to the radio frequency circuit operating at 1,500 meters and 3,750 meters. When the transformer was operated at 3,750 meters (80,000 cycles), no internal trouble was experienced even when the secondary windings were unprotected. However, operating at 1,500 meters (200,000 cycles) with the secondary unprotected, a certain coil within the transformer was always immediately punctured. The secondary coils of this transformer were wound with copper strip, spirally, and in two parallel pancakes per unit. A winding of high distributed capacity resulted. Puncture was undoubtedly due to resonance at the 200,000 cycle setting. The voltage rise must have been enormous. An air core reactance of about 5 per cent. inserted in series with the secondary, and between it and the radio frequency circuit, prevented further breakdown by detuning the resonating circuit previously formed. But transformer coils can be designed to withstand these radio conditions without the

Digitized by Google

use of series choke coils by so winding them that the voltage between layers is a minimum and using comparatively few turns per layer. The distributed capacity is then of practically negligible magnitude.

Digitized by Google

DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION OF GUY-SUPPORTED TOWERS FOR RADIO TELEGRAPHY*

By

Roy A. Weagant

The purpose of this paper is to develop methods of determining the stresses in the guy-supported type of radio telegraph tower. These methods and their applications are illustrated in a complete design of a 625-foot (190 meters) structure of cylindrical form. Since the function of a radio telegraph tower is to support an aerial of chosen type and size at a desired height above the earth's surface, the determination of the stresses in, and due to, this aerial forms a necessary part of the whole problem. It may be stated as a general proposition in the design of a structure of this kind that we must start by making a number of assumptions; on the basis of which a set of calculations is carried thru. Guided by the results of the first set of assumptions, we continue the process until a satisfactory design is obtained.

DETERMINATION OF STRESSES IN THE TOWER STRUCTURE AND GUYS

Assume that the tower is to be H feet high and that it is supported with guys arranged in sets of four at each guy point in vertical planes 90 degrees apart. Assume also that the tower has an external diameter of D feet and an internal diameter of d feet, and that the distance between the points of attachment is about 33 times D. Let the distance from the center of the tower be H_2. From Figure 1 the distances between the anchorages and the points of attachment of the guys may be calculated. Let the guys be constructed of an elastic material and let d_1 be the diameter. The various stresses in the structure are obviously due to two separate forces, viz: gravity and wind pressure. Assume that the wind acts in the direction indicated by the arrow in Figure 1, and that its maximum velocity produces a pressure of P pounds per square foot on a flat surface perpendicular to the direction in which it acts, or P/2 per square

* A paper presented before The Institute of Radio Engineers, New York, January 6, 1915.

Digitized by Google

foot projected area if acting on a cylindrical body. With respect to the wind pressure, treat the tower as a series of beams of length h, supported at the ends and having a uniformly distributed load, but neglecting the effect of continuity. With respect to all vertical stresses, treat the tower as a series of

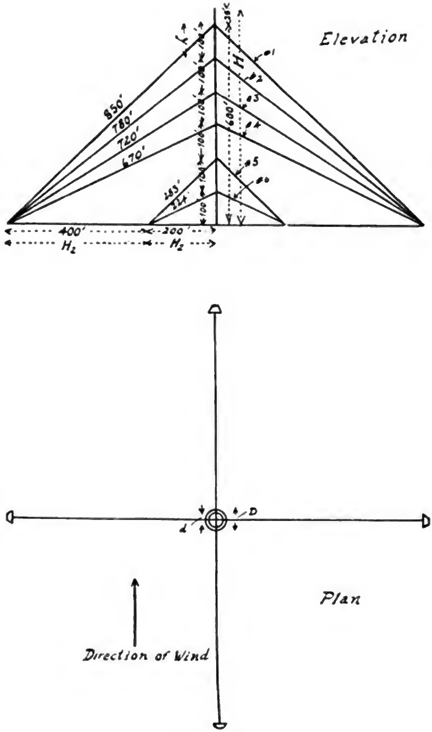


FIGURE 1

columns of length h and consider the points of attachment of the guys as being equivalent to pin bearings. Obviously the vertical stresses acting on the tower are composed of those due to the weight of the tower itself, and those due to the vertical

Digitized by Google

component of the tensions in the guys. We must, therefore, determine these latter as accurately as possible. Let us, therefore, consider the condition of affairs when the tower is erected, but when no wind pressure is acting. We see that the tower must be vertical, that the guys on opposite sides must be drawn up with equal tightness, and that they must be drawn up with sufficient tightness so that the tower and the guys will not move unduly when the wind pressure acts. Next suppose that the wind pressure is acting. Obviously readjustments in the stresses

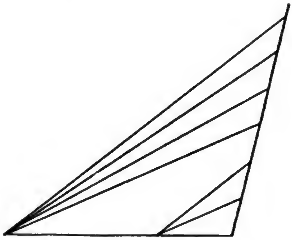


FIGURE 2

in the guys take place. The windward sets have to sustain the full effect of the wind pressure. Therefore, on account of this added load they must stretch, and the tower will incline to leeward. It is also apparent that, to avoid weakening the tower, it must maintain a straight line as shown in Figure 2. If it does not, we have the condition shown in exaggerated form in Figure 3. In order that the conditions of Figure 2 may be

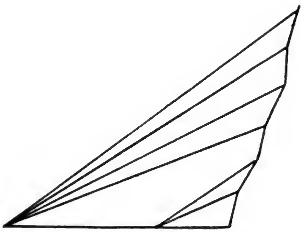


FIGURE 3

Digitized by Google

realized, it is necessary that each windward guy span must increase an amount proportionate to the movement of its point of attachment, which condition can only be realized when each set of guys is stressed initially to a definite amount. When a guy is stretched between two points, it forms the curve known as the catenary, and the tensile stress produced in it is given by the following equation:

$$T = \frac{Y^2 W}{8x} + \frac{x}{6} \qquad (1)$$

Where T = tension in pounds
Y = length of span in feet
x = sag or deflection at center of span in feet
W = load per foot length, uniformly distributed, and acting perpendicular to Y.

Since x is generally small, we may assume that the curve is a parabola and omit the second term in this equation. When the guy is inclined at an angle to the horizontal, the component of its weight perpendicular to the line of span must be used in this equation. If w equals the actual weight per foot length of guy, then $W = w \cos b$; where b = inclination of guy to horizontal. Again if w_1 = total wind pressure per foot of guy, then W (for wind pressure) equals $w_1 \sin b$, when the vertical plane containing the guy is parallel to the direction of the wind. For the windward guys, weight and wind loads are added. For leeward guys, their difference is used. For those guys whose vertical planes are perpendicular to the direction of the wind, the loads are added, bearing in mind that they are acting at right angles to each other. We note that after the wind acts, the value of Y in the above equation is different for the windward and lee guys, and that the value W for all guys is changed. The length of span of the guys whose vertical planes are perpendicular to the direction of the wind is not changed, but it is apparent that due to the increase of the load W, these guys must stretch, and that this stretch appears as an increased value of the sag x. Similarly, the value of x for the windward and leeward guys changes, tending to become greater on account of the increased values of W and Y and smaller on account of the increased value of t for the windward guy; and tending to become smaller on account of the decreased values of W and Y, and greater on account of the decrease in value of T, for the leeward guys. We must, therefore, obtain a relation between these quantities which will take account of these changing conditions, and will

Digitized by Google

enable us to determine the necessary initial guy tension to keep the tower straight after the application of the wind load. We must also find a method of determining the final stress in a guy which has been set up at a definite initial tension, and which has subsequently undergone a change of load. The method is as follows: Assume that the wind is acting, that the tower has inclined to leeward, and remains in a straight line, and that the base rests on a ball and socket joint.

Let l = total distance along windward guy from anchorage to tower;

l_1 = length of guy if stress were removed (unstretched length of guy)

Then $l - l_1$ = stretch of guy

and $(l - l_1)\,k$ = tension in guy, where k is a constant, depending on the material and dimensions of the guy.

$$k = \frac{E\Delta}{l_1}$$

where E = coefficient of elasticity.

Δ = sectional area of guy.

All dimensions should be in inches, since values of E as given in the usual tables are based on this unit. Assuming now that the total horizontal pressure which the windward guy has to withstand is known, and therefore the windward guy tension T, we may determine the initial tension. Since l_1 must be the same in both the initial and the above conditions, we proceed as follows:

FOR INITIAL CONDITIONS

$$\frac{(l_2 - l_1)\,E\Delta}{l_1} = T_1 = \text{initial tension.}$$

l_2 = length along guy in initial condition,

l_1 = unstretched length of guy.

Also $$T_1 = \frac{Y_1^2\,W_1}{8\,x_1},$$

where Y_1 = initial span length in feet,

W_1 = initial load per foot length,

x_1 = initial sag in feet.

And $$L_2 = Y_1 + \frac{8\,x_1^2}{3\,Y_1}, \quad \text{therefore}$$

$$\frac{Y_1^2\,W_1}{8\,x_1} = \left(Y_1 + \frac{8\,x_1^2}{3\,Y_1} - l_1\right) k,$$

Digitized by Google

whence $$x_1^3 + \frac{3}{8} x_1 (Y_1^2 - l_1 Y_1) = \frac{3 Y_1^3 W_1 l_1}{64 E \Delta}. \tag{2}$$

This last equation is a cubic in x, which is easily soluble by trial, or by the use of hyperbolic functions. Solution of this equation gives the value of the initial sag of the guy, and substitution of this value in Equation 1 gives the value of the initial tension (at the bottom of the guy). It is to be noted that the value of l_1 is the same for all guys in a particular set, and, therefore, we may determine the tension in the leeward guy by substituting in this equation the proper values of Y and W. Similarly, by substituting the proper value of W, the tensions in the perpendicular guys* may be determined. The application of these methods is made clear in the example given. Returning then to the tower structure, we can proceed to determine in detail various stresses acting upon it, and we will begin with the top section.

HORIZONTAL FORCES

$D \times h_1 \times P/2 = Q$ = total pressure due to wind on top section of tower.

$1 \times d_1 \times P/2 = Q_1$ = horizontal pressure due to wind on two perpendicular guys.

Q_2 = horizontal stress due to antenna, parallel to direction of wind.

l = total length of perpendicular guys.

VERTICAL FORCES

W = total weight above center of top section of tower, including weight of tower, top set of guys, and the antenna.

V_1 = vertical component of windward guy tension.

V_2 = vertical component of leeward guy tension.

V_3 = vertical component of two perpendicular guy tensions.

GUY TENSIONS

$$T_1 = \left(\frac{Q}{2} + Q_1 + Q_2\right) \frac{1}{\cos b} + T_2 = \text{tension in windward guy.}$$

T_2 = tension of leeward guy.

T_3 = tension of perpendicular guys.

These are all determined from Equations 1 and 2, and their vertical components are T sin b. (Strictly speaking, the direc-

* The term "perpendicular guys" is used to designate those guys which lie in vertical planes perpendicular to the direction of the wind.

Digitized by Google

tion of the guy tension at the point of attachment of the guy is a tangent to the curve at this point, but the above assumption is sufficiently accurate for practical purposes.) It will be noted from the above that to determine T_1, we must know T_2, but we cannot attempt to determine T_2 without a knowledge of T_0 (initial tension). This makes it necessary to assume a value for T_2 (which in actual practice is always small), and after determining T_0 to calculate the value of T_2 from Equation 2, repeating this process until the assumed and calculated values substantially agree.

Having determined the horizontal and vertical forces acting on the top section, we assume a thickness of the wall of the tower and determine the stresses produced per unit of area. Let V = total vertical force; A = cross section of area of the metal in the tower. Then V/A = unit stress due to vertical loads. (This is assuming that the vertical force acts thru the center of gravity of the tower section. If a guy is attached to the edge of the tower, the load is eccentric, and the unit stress is

$$\frac{V}{A} + \frac{V\,d\,C}{I}$$

where d = distance from point of application of load to center of gravity of section.)

The wind pressure produces a bending moment of maximum value

$$M = \frac{1}{8} W\,h_1 \text{ (at center of section),}$$

where W = total wind pressure.
The maximum stress in this section is

$$S = \frac{M\,C}{I}$$

Where C = distance of the fiber most remote from the neutral axis, and equals in this case $D/2$, and

$$I = \text{moment of inertia} = \frac{\pi}{64}\left(D^4 - d^4\right) \text{ for a hollow cylinder.}$$

This stress is a compression on the windward side of the tower, and is tensile on the leeward side. Therefore, the total maximum stress produced at the middle section is:

$$\frac{V}{A} + S.$$

If the ultimate strength of the material to be used (usually steel), divided by the factor of safety (say, four to five), agrees sub-

Digitized by Google

stantially with the value obtained above, the assumption of thickness of the tower wall at this point is correct. Otherwise, a new value must be chosen and the process repeated. The value used for the ultimate strength of the material must be corrected by an amount depending upon the relation of length to diameter of the portion of the tower between guy points. Let U = ultimate compressive strength per square inch of material. Then

$$U_1 = \frac{U}{1 + \frac{(12\,h_1)^2}{1{,}800\,r^2}} = \text{corrected value of the ultimate strength of}$$

the material,

where r = radius of gyration of cylinder = $\sqrt{\frac{I}{A}}$ in inches, and

h_1 = height of column in feet.

The necessary sectional area of a guy for a given load is found most simply by reference to the table of working strength supplied by the makers. Shearing forces have been neglected as they are of importance only in such details as rivets, flanges, etc. By continuing this process, the stresses in all parts of the tower will be found. Also the necessity of revising some of our preliminary assumptions will be made evident. Various arrangements of design may be made, and it is only after considerable work that the most satisfactory one can be chosen. For instance, we may decrease the diameter of the tower if we increase the number of sets of guys used, the choice between these being determined by the relative cost and the facility of erection.

ANTENNA

Two types will be considered, viz., the flat top and the umbrella; the former being supported by two or more towers, the latter usually by a single tower. In the flat top type, the maximum tension is developed when the direction of the wind is perpendicular to the length of the antenna. The most commonly used conductor for antenna construction is composed of seven strands of No. 20 or 22 silicon-bronze wire,* whose safe working load is about 150 pounds. Therefore, for any antenna whatsoever, the maximum permissible tension is n times a hundred and fifty, where n equals the number of wires. The problem, then, in constructing the antenna is to insure that this maximum permissible stress is not exceeded, and this may be

* Diameter of No. 20 wire = 0.032 inch = 0.081 cm.
Diameter of No. 22 wire = 0.025 inch = 0.064 cm.

Digitized by Google

accomplished in one of two ways: first, by allowing one end of the wire to pass over a pulley, and attaching thereto a weight. Providing the pulley does not stick, this arrangement will give a constant tension under all conditions, but is generally used only for large aerials at land stations. Secondly, we may determine by use of Equation (2) an initial tension such that the occurrence of maximum load conditions will not cause the production of a stress in excess of the permissible value.

As regards the umbrella antenna, the method of determination of the stresses in this type of aerial is the same as for the determination of the guy stresses.

No account has yet been taken of the effect of sleet. This adds to the total weights and increases the surface exposed to wind pressure. If, in making our calculations, we assume simultaneously maximum sleet and maximum wind velocity, almost any structure within practicable limits will fail. Fortunately these conditions seldom occur simultaneously, and the most practicable method of dealing with the sleet is to provide means for its easy removal. All stresses have been determined so far on the assumption of a steady wind pressure. Actually, however, this quantity varies continually and thru a wide range, and we do not know the exact way in which this variation takes place. We can, however, set a maximum limit by assuming that a change takes place instantly from zero to its maximum value. The resultant stress in any part of the structure effected is exactly twice that of the same load applied steadily.

EFFECTS OF TEMPERATURE VARIATION

This factor is of rather negligible consequence, since the material in the guys and tower is generally the same, namely, steel; and because the value of l_1 of the guys undergoes variations of temperature which are proportional to the change in length of the tower. In the case of an aerial, rigidly fastened at both ends, temperature effects may be very important, and this effect is calculable. The value of l_1 is corrected for the temperature change, and the resultant value substituted in Equation (2).

FOUNDATIONS

Two general types will be considered, viz., the insulated and the uninsulated. The former is shown in Figure 4, which is the type of construction employed in the tower erected at Brant Rock. In this sketch a and b form a ball and socket joint, the purpose of which is to permit the tower to move without undue

Digitized by Google

stresses at the base. The casting of the socket is flanged out to distribute the load to a ferro-concrete block d. Under block

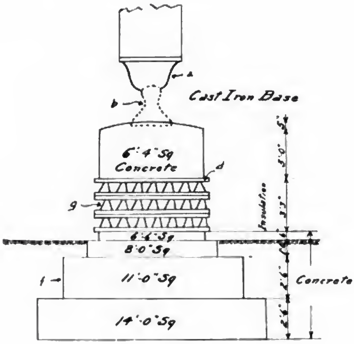


FIGURE 4

d is a set of porcelain "flower-pot" insulators, which rest on a slab of ferro-concrete, under which is a second set of insulators,

FIGURE 5

Digitized by Google

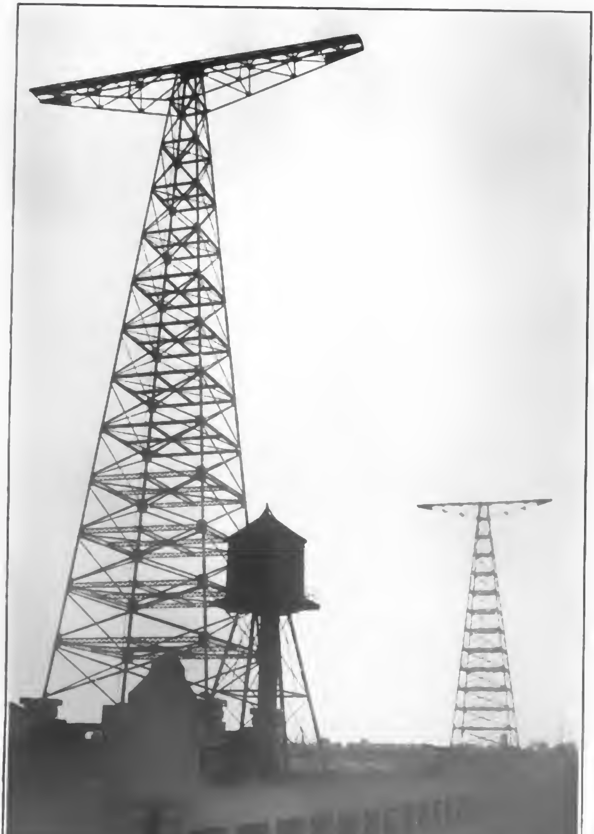


Figure 6

Digitized by Google

resting on the foundation f. The insulators g are the most interesting feature of this construction. They are about nine inches high, seven inches outside diameter at the base, and three inches in diameter at the top, by about three-quarters of an inch thick, and each has an ultimate strength of about 50,000 pounds compression. There is also an uninsulated type in which the base of the tower is fastened rigidly to its concrete foundation. In both cases the principal stress is a vertical one, altho there is in addition a small horizontal stress equal to one-half the wind load on the lowest tower section. Figure 5 shows the base of one of the supports of the insulated rigid towers at Bush Terminal. An idea of the strength of the "flower-pot" insulators can be had from Figure 6, which shows the entire towers.

ANCHORAGES

Figure 7 shows a common form of guy anchorage made of ferro-concrete. The weight of this must equal the vertical components of the guy tensions times the factor of safety, say

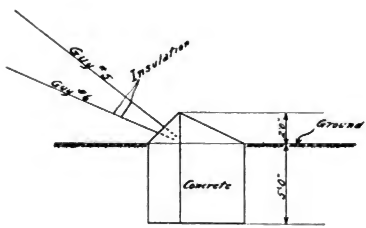


FIGURE 7

two to three. It must also have a vertical face on the side facing the tower of sufficient area to distribute the horizontal components of the guy tensions over a sufficient area of the soil in which it is buried. This area will vary with the location chosen for the erection of a tower, and the nature of the soil encountered. Embedded in these foundations are the anchor rods of the guys, which must be attached to suitable distributing plates embedded in the concrete. Their upper ends usually terminate in turn buckles to permit of tightening the guy.

To illustrate the above methods of calculation, the design of a 625-foot cylindrical tower is given in detail. Figure 1 shows

Digitized by Google

in plan and elevation the principal dimensions of the structure, and the attached tables give the complete data. The base of the tower is assumed to be a ball and socket joint, and the antenna of the umbrella type.

STRESSES IN TOP SET OF GUYS

Total horizontal pressure supported by top guy equals pressure on section projecting above top guy plus one-half the pressure on section between first and second guys, plus pressure on perpendicular guys, plus force in direction of wind due to wind pressure on antenna. Reaction of guy for equilibrium equals $14{,}800 \text{ lbs.} = (1{,}875 + 3{,}750 + 1{,}520 + 3{,}355) \times \frac{850}{600}$, the figure 3,355 being assumed.

Assume the tension of the lee guy to be 500 pounds; then the total tension of the windward guy equals 15,300 pounds.

Then $$x = \frac{(851.41)^2 \times 2.378}{8 \times 15{,}300} = 14.1 \text{ ft.} = \text{sag.}$$

$$l = 851.41 + \frac{8 \times (14.1)^2}{3 \times 851.41} = 852.035 = \text{length along curve of guy.}$$

$$l_1 = \frac{852.035}{\dfrac{15{,}300}{15 \times 10^6 \times 4} + 1} = 849.892 \text{ feet} = \text{unstretched length of guy.}$$

Then for the initial conditions we have

$$Y - l_1 = 0.169, \text{ and}$$

$$x^3 + 7{,}800\,x = 7{,}800{,}000. \quad \text{Therefore}$$

$$x = 185 \text{ inches} = 15.4 \text{ feet} = \text{initial sag.}$$

$$T_o = \frac{(850)^2 \times 1.113}{8 \times 15.4} = 6{,}700 \text{ lbs.} = \text{initial tension.}$$

Similarly, for the lee guy,

$$Y - l_1 = 0.125, \text{ and}$$

$$x^3 + 59{,}000\,x = 1{,}070{,}000. \quad \text{Therefore}$$

$$x = 255 \text{ inches} = 21.2 \text{ feet.}$$

$$T_2 = \frac{(748.59)^2 \times 15.2}{8 \times 21.2} = 500 \text{ lbs.} = \text{tension of the lee guy.}$$

If the value of T_2 as calculated above does not check with the value assumed, it is necessary to repeat these calculations until an agreement is obtained.

Digitized by Google

STRESS IN PERPENDICULAR GUYS

The conditions for these guys differ from the initial condition in that the load per foot is greater, since it is

$$\sqrt{(\text{wind force})^2 + (\text{weight})^2}.$$

$$x^3 + 7{,}800\,x = \frac{7{,}800{,}000 \times 2.11}{1.13} = 14{,}600{,}000.$$

$$x = 19.5 \text{ feet, and } T_3 = 9{,}850 \text{ lbs.}$$

We next determine the stresses at the section of the tower midway between the first and second guys. Assume that the thickness at this point is one-quarter inch, the vertical components of the guy tensions will then be as follows:

$$\text{Windward} = \frac{15{,}300 \times 600}{850} = 10{,}500 \text{ lbs.}$$

$$\text{Lee} = \frac{500 \times 600}{850} = 353 \text{ lbs.}$$

$$\text{Perpendicular} = \frac{2 \times 9{,}850 \times 600}{850} = 13{,}900 \text{ lbs.}$$

Total = 24,753 lbs.

Weight of tower above this point = 14,750 lbs.

Weight of guys above this point = 5,360 lbs.

Weight of antenna = 2,000 lbs. (assumed)

Total vertical load = 46,863 lbs.

Cross sectional area of metal = 9 square inches.

Compression per square inch due to vertical load = 5,200 lbs.

$$\text{Ultimate strength of column} = \frac{60{,}000}{1 + \dfrac{(1{,}200)^2}{18{,}000 \times 625}} = 45{,}500 \text{ lbs.}$$

In the determination of the vertical stress due to guy tensions, it is assumed that their vertical components act thru the center of gravity of the tower section. If attached to the edge of the tower, then:

Total vertical component due to windward guy = 10,500 lbs.

Total vertical component due to leeward guy = 353 lbs.

The resultant acts 1.18 inches from the edge of the tower where the windward guy is attached, and unit stress due to this eccentricity of load is:

$$\frac{10{,}853}{9} + \frac{10{,}853 \times 16.82 \times 18}{11{,}000} = 1{,}510 \text{ lbs.}$$

Digitized by Google

Since the vertical components of the perpendicular guy tensions are equal, they act thru the center of gravity of the tower when the guy is attached to the edge of the tower, and therefore the total increase of the unit stress is only 300 lbs.

STRESSES DUE TO BENDING MOMENTS IN SECTION OF TOWER BETWEEN FIRST AND SECOND SET OF GUYS

Bending moment $= \frac{1}{8} \times 7{,}500 \times 100 \times 12 = 1{,}125{,}000$ lb.—inches.

Stress due to bending moment =

$$\frac{1{,}125{,}000 \times 18}{5{,}400} = 3{,}700 \text{ lbs. per square inch.}$$

Therefore,

Total compression $= 5{,}200 + 3{,}700 = 8{,}900$ lbs. per square inch.

$$\text{Factor of safety} = \frac{45{,}500}{8{,}900} = 5.12$$

For that section of the tower above the top guys:

Wind load = 1,850 lbs.

Bending moment due to wind load =

$$\frac{1}{2} \times 1{,}850 \times 25 \times 12 = 277{,}000 \text{ lb.-inches}$$

Load parallel to wind due to wind on antenna = 3,350 lbs. Bending moment due to antenna load =

$$3{,}350 \times 25 \times 12 \times 1{,}010{,}000 \text{ lb.-inches.}$$

$$S = \frac{1{,}287{,}000 \times 18}{11{,}000} = 2{,}110 \text{ lbs. per square inch.}$$

$$\text{Factor of safety} = \frac{45{,}500}{2{,}110} = 21.6.$$

This factor of safety is unnecessarily large, but good engineering practice does not permit the use of metal of less thickness, and decreasing the diameter of the cylinder does not cause sufficient saving to make it worth while. Data for the remaining guys and tower sections are given in the tables.

GENERAL COMMENTS

The value of E used in the above calculations is $15\ (10)^6$ in inch units, which is one half that for solid steel. This is based on tests of plow steel ropes with wire centers which show the elongation under test to be twice that of solid metal of equal

Digitized by Google

actual cross sectional area. The radius of the outer guy anchorages might well be reduced to 450 feet. Inspection of the data will show that guys of the same diameter could be used and a considerable saving in cost effected. If the guys be broken into sections with insulators, the weight and wind pressure on these must be considered as tho uniformly distributed. The effect of rigidly fastening the base of the tower to a concrete base is of interest, and can be determined as follows.

Assume that all points of attachment of the guys to the tower remain in a straight line after the wind acts, but that that portion of the tower between the lowest guy point and the foundation bends when the whole structure moves to leeward. This portion of the tower will become a parabola, and

$$S = 8\,d\,E\,C$$

where d = horizontal movement of the point of attachment of the bottom set of guys. In the example given:

$$S = \frac{8 \times 0.298 \times 12 \times 18 \times 15 \times 10^6}{2 \times (100)^2 \times 144} = 2{,}660 \text{ lbs. per sq. in.}$$

This is a rather large stress which, however, could be reduced by allowing a smaller movement of the tower. A reaction at the point of attachment of the lowest windward guy results from fixing the base, which reaction must be subtracted from the total horizontal force held in equilibrium by this guy. In the example given the reaction =

$$P = \frac{3\,d\,E\,I}{h_1^3} = \frac{3 \times 0.298 \times 12 \times 15 \times 10^6 \times 2 \times 10^4}{(100)^3 \times 1728} = 1{,}880 \text{ lbs.}$$

If two towers support a flat-top aerial, which does not use the weight and pulley arrangement for insuring constant antenna tension, then the wind pressure acting on it produces at the towers a horizontal force perpendicular to the direction of the wind; and the perpendicular guys do not then have equal stresses since the towers deflect in the direction of this force. If this force is large, it is necessary to determine the initial tensions for the perpendicular guys.

TEMPERATURE EFFECTS

Assume guy number 1 to be stressed initially to 6,700 lbs. at a temperature of 70° Fahrenheit (21° C), and that at some subsequent time a temperature of 0° Fahrenheit (− 18° C.) obtains. Then L_1 becomes less, and may be called L_1'. Then

$$L_1' = L_1\,(1 - e\,t) = L_1 - e\,t\,L_1$$

Digitized by Google

where e = temperature coefficient of expansion of the material used, and t = temperature change. In the case under consideration,

$$e\,t\,L_1 = 0.000{,}0065 \times 70 \times 859{,}429 = 0.387 \text{ feet, and}$$

$$L_1' = 849.842 \text{ feet.}$$

Similarly, for the tower, H becomes H_1, and

$$H_1 = 600 - 0.000{,}0065 \times 70 \times 600 = 599.725 \text{ feet,}$$

and the span Y is reduced by 0.25 feet. Then, for this condition

$$Y - L_1 = 0.308,$$

and the initial tension becomes 7,100 lbs., an increase of only 400 lbs. for a 70 degree change in temperature. The tension of the windward guy is essentially independent of the temperature, except in so far as the tension of the lee guy is affected by it.

NECESSARY ACCURACY OF CALCULATIONS

The slide rule may be used for the determination of most of the quantities except L_1. Since the second term of the equation involving L_1 contains the factor $(Y - L_1)$, L_1 must be determined arithmetically to about three decimal places.

SUMMARY: Proceeding on the assumption that a guyed tower inclined bodily by the pressure of the wind should have the points of guy attachment remain in a straight line, methods are given for calculating the following quantities: guy tensions (for windward, leeward and perpendicular guys), horizontal and vertical forces acting on the top section of the tower, stresses in the middle section, stresses in the bottom section due to bending, design of flat-top and umbrella antennas, change in stresses due to temperature variation, and dimensions of foundations and anchorages.

These methods are fully illustrated by the complete calculation of a 625-foot (190 meters) high hollow cylindrical guyed steel tower. Tables of all guy weights, tensions, and sags are given, together with the quantities which determine them.

Digitized by Google

GUY DATA

Material of Guys: Plow steel, galvanized with wire center, seven strands, nineteen wires to the strand

No.	Length	Total Weight	Diameter	Weight per ft.	Weight per ft. ⊥ to Line of Span	Wind pressure per ft. ⊥ to Line of Span		
						Wind-ward	Lee	⊥
1	850	5360	1 in.	1.58	1.113	1.265	1.265	1.79
2	780	3750	⅞ "	1.20	.923	.970	.970	1.51
3	720	3450	⅞ "	1.20	1.000	.840	.840	1.51
4	670	2360	¾ "	.88	.787	.600	.600	1.34
5	283	990	¾ "	.88	.620	.945	.945	1.34
6	224	540	⅝ "	.60	.535	.525	.525	1.12

No.	Total load per ft. ⊥ to Line of Span			Guy Tensions				Guy Sags			
	Wind-ward	Lee	⊥	Wind-ward	Lee	⊥	Init.	Wind-ward	Lee	⊥	Init.
1	2.378	.152	2.11	15300	500	9850	6700	14.6	21.2	19.5	15.4
2	1.893	.047	1.775	11690	470	7750	4770	13.1	7.65	18.7	14.8
3	1.840	.160	1.810	10822	572	6950	4700	11.8	17.9	17.2	14
4	1.387	.187	1.555	10386	1356	5000	5850	7.6	7.85	15.6	7.66
5	1.565	.325	1.475	9400	700	5000	4000	1.62	4.5	3.16	1.54
6	1.060	.010	1.731	6130	279	3420	2770	1.14	2.16	2.13	1.21

Digitized by Google

TOWER DATA

Height = 625 feet. Weight = 143,890 lbs. External Diameter = 3 feet

Movement of top under maximum wind pressure = 2 feet

Section	Thickness of Wall	Section Area	I	Wind Pressure	M	Stress Due to M
1	1/4 in.	9 sq. in.	5,400	7,500 lbs.	$1.12\,(10)^6$	3,700 lbs.
2	5/16 "	11.3 " "	6,800	7,500 "	$1.12\,(10)^6$	2,950 "
3	11/32 "	12.4 " "	6,900	7,500 "	$1.12\,(10)^6$	2,900 "
4	3/8 "	13.6 " "	7,850	6,300 "	$0.94\,(10)^6$	2,150 "
5	13/32 "	14.6 " "	8,800	5,400 "	$0.81\,(10)^6$	1,640 "
6	1/2 "	18 " "	9,800	4,500 "	$0.61\,(10)^6$	1,220 "

Section	Total Compression Per Sq. In.	Ultimate Strength of Column	Factor of Safety	Wind Pressure Per Sq. Ft. of Projected Area
1	8,275	45,500 lbs.	5.4	25
2	10,030	45,000 "	4.5	25
3	11,350	41,500 "	3.65	25
4	11,706	43,500 "	3.75	21
5	12,540	45,000 "	3.60	16
6	11,420	41,000 "	3.57	15

The tower is built of sections eight feet long, which are joined by steel castings. Weight of castings, bolts, rivets, etc., approximately 1,000 lbs. for each section.

Digitized by Google

DISCUSSION

Henry E. Hallborg: I have calculated in round numbers the stresses that occur in one of the masts of the trans-Atlantic station at Belmar or New Brunswick, N. J. when a 75-mile per hour (120 kilometers per hour) breeze is blowing at right angles to the center line of the directive antenna. These masts are of steel, 425 feet (130 meters) in total height: and of a mean diameter of 3 feet (0.91 meter). Each mast is supported by 32 stays. These stays are anchored to concrete blocks, at a distance from the mast of approximately one-half its height.

All the figures given are based on mean values, and the average angle between the guys and the mast is taken as 45 degrees. The actual tension in the guys under normal conditions was known by dynanometer tests to be 4 tons (18,000 kilograms) per stay on the average; and the total weight of the steel masts 60 tons (265,000 kilograms). The figures are as follows.

HORIZONTAL WIND PRESSURES:

At 75 miles (120 km.) per hour, the pressure is 30 lbs. per square foot (0.061 kg. per sq. cm., or 610 kg. per sq. m.).

Average length of guys = 350 feet (103 m.).

Average diameter of guys = 0.07 foot (1.78 mm.).

Effective number of guys = 16.

Total area of exposed guys = 350 x 16 x 0.07 = 392 square feet (36.3 sq. m.).

Total force on guys = (392 x 30) ÷ 2,000 = 5.9 tons (26,000 kg.).

Height of mast = 425 feet (130 m.).

Average diameter of mast = 3 feet (0.91 m.).

Total area of mast exposed = 425 x 3 = 1,275 square feet (118 sq. m.).

Total force on mast = (1,275 x 30) ÷ 2,000 = 19.0 tons (84,000 kg.).

Total length of aerial = 5,000 feet (1,520 m.).

Length of aerial per windward mast = 830 feet (253 m.).

Number of wires = 32. Diameter of wires = 0.02 feet (0.61 cm.).

Total exposed wire area per mast = 830 x 32 x 0.02 = 530 square feet (49.1 sq. m.).

Force on wires = (530 x 30) ÷ 2,000 = 8.0 tons (35,300 kg.).

Therefore *Total Horizontal Force* = 5.9 + 19.0 + 8.0 = 32.9 tons (145,000 kg.). Resolving the horizontal force into guy tensions, and then into mast compressions (taking 45 degrees as the angle at which the forces are applied to produce the resulting mast compression, we have for this last:

Digitized by Google

Mast compression $= 0.7 \times 0.7 \times 32.9 = 16.1$ tons (71,000 kg.).

The normal mast compression due merely to its weight and the guy tensions is found as follows.

Weight of mast $= 60$ tons (265,000 kg.).

Average tension in the guys $= 4$ tons (18,000 kg.).

Aggregate guy tension $= 32 \times 4 = 128$ tons (562,000 kg.).

Resulting compression in the mast $= 128 \times 0.7 = 89.6$ tons (395,000 kg.).

Therefore the normal compressing force at the foot of the mast $= 60 + 89.6 = 149.6$ tons (660,000 kg.).

Hence the increase of compression in the mast due to a 75-mile (120 km.) per hour wind is $16.1 \div 149.6$ or 10.8 per cent.

If, under conditions similar to the above, the diameters of the guys and aerial wires are doubled by the accumulation of sleet, the total horizontal pressures will be increased to the following values.

Force on the guys $= 11.8$ tons (52,000 kg.).

Force on the aerial wires $= 16.0$ tons (70,000 kg.).

Force on the masts (as before) $= 19.0$ tons (84,000 kg.).

Therefore, total horizontal force $= 19.0 + 16.0 + 11.8 = 46.8$ tons (207,000 kg.). The resulting compression in the mast as previously indicated now becomes $0.7 \times 0.7 \times 46.8 = 22.9$ tons (101,000 kg.).

Hence the increase of mast compression due to the 75-mile (120 km.) per hour breeze and 1 diameter of sleet on aerial and guys is $22.9 \div 149.6 = 15.3$ per cent.

One of the effects noted at the trans-Atlantic station at New Brunswick, N. J. when operating at 12,000 meters (the fundamental of the antenna being 8,000 meters), was the setting up of interference with commercial stations at wave lengths of 600 and 1,200 meters. The cause of this interference has not yet been definitely traced; but an attempt is being made to account for it. Since any free insulated wire, if set into electrical vibration, has a wave length of radiation of about 4 times its length in meters (or 1.31 times its length in feet), it follows that the lengths of steel cables which when vibrating electrically would radiate waves of 600 and 1,200 meters must be 150 meters (480 feet) and 300 meters (960 feet), respectively. These lengths correspond quite well to the height of the steel masts with short guy lengths attached, and to certain lengths of steel supporting wires used at New Brunswick. It remains to be considered how radiation from these members can be set up.

Digitized by Google

If the main antenna were excited by an arc, it would be plausible to ascribe the effects observed to the presence of overtones in the arc current, which might excite the guys and lead to re-radiation. In the case of excitation by a rotary synchronous gap, it is conceivable that the reasons are similar, since lower harmonics than those reported have been previously noted.

Lester L. Israel: Two possible explanations exist for the presence of short waves in the radiation of high powered long wave stations.

In one, it is assumed that slight sparking or brushing occurs at one or more of the insulators in the guy wires or along the length of the antenna itself. The resulting sudden change of potential is equivalent to impulse excitation of the near-by guy wire or section of the antenna. The guy wire would then oscillate at its natural frequency, or the antenna would oscillate in some harmonic. For example, if the natural wave length of the antenna were 12,000 meters, the exciting spark frequency would be 50,000; so that if sparking occurred at the insulation at the top of a grounded 100 meter guy wire, there would be 50,000 trains of 400 meter waves per second. The wave trains would be damped. I should like to ask Mr. Cohen if any decrement measurements of the harmonic oscillations have been made at Washington.

The second explanation applies to the Tuckerton station. It is thought that the harmonic oscillations observed may be due to the presence of the Poulsen arc in the antenna circuit. It is well known that the voltage characteristic of the arc is rich in harmonics. Under certain conditions, the energy output in any harmonic may be half that of the fundamental. These conditions might easily be approached in a complicated antenna, mast, and guy wire system. Harmonic oscillations produced in this way would be undamped.

Henry E. Hallborg: Mr. Israel's suggestion in regard to sparking in the guy wires does not appear to me to be the probable solution in view of the fact that all sparking had been eliminated as far as could be determined before the interference was reported. It is also questionable if sparking at the guys would not be picked up in the receiver as is static, since a spark occurs only when sufficient time has elapsed for the insulated section to accumulate a charge. The result would be an irregular sequence of spark discharges for the various stays. If sparking in the stays

Digitized by Google

is responsible for this short wave disturbance, and if the spark frequency at the stay is a function of the insulated length, it would be a simple matter to check up the phenomenon by paralleling the stays with suitable condensers and determining the alteration in the emitted short waves.

Louis Cohen: The subject under discussion is of considerable interest to radio engineers. In connection with the cubic equations at which Mr. Weagant has arrived in the calculation of the sag in the guy wires, it is evident that it is not a very simple matter to obtain the values of the roots of this equation. If a number of computations must be made, the labor involved must be considerable. There are a number of graphical methods available for the calculation of the sag in transmission lines, which are discussed in books dealing with the subject, and the same methods can be applied to the problem under discussion. It is preferable, and certainly simpler to use a graphical method in place of the analytical method since the results can be obtained more quickly and with less labor.

The question raised by Mr. Stone regarding the oscillation periods of the guy wires is certainly one which merits consideration and investigation. The same question was brought up at a recent meeting of the Washington Section of the Institute of Radio Engineers during the discussion of a paper by Mr. George H. Clark. At that meeting, Mr. Clark presented his results of an important investigation of an arc system, and he has shown that the oscillations excited in an antenna circuit contain harmonics of a very high order. The explanation was offered that possibly free oscillations were produced in the guy wires by the first impulse of the waves, which were afterward re-radiated with a frequency corresponding to the natural period of the guy wires. Of course, in setting up free oscillations in a complicated electrical system such as that of a loaded antenna, we may expect that the oscillations will also be of a complex character, but we should also expect the lower harmonics to be of greater intensity than the higher ones, which was not the case in the experiments cited above. The theory of re-radiation from the guy wires was therefore offered as a possible explanation.

George S. Davis: While Mr. Weagant's paper deals primarily with the design of a particular type of steel mast, the subjects of field construction and the maintenance of such masts are of

Digitized by Google

equal importance, and it would be very interesting to hear from him again on this subject.

My own experience in the field on this particular type of mast has been limited to two stations, the Tropical Radio Telegraph Company's 50 kilowatt station at New Orleans, Louisiana, and the United Fruit Company's 50 kilowatt station at Santa Marta, Colombia. At the former we erected 295 feet (89 meters, 29 full sections), in 30 working hours, and averaged about 36 working hours on each of the 4 masts. This speed was in a large measure made possible by the very ingenious method of erection devised by the designing engineers which briefly is as follows:

A wooden mast 45 feet (13.7 meters) in length, about 8″ x 8″ (20.3 x 20.3 centimeters) at the butt, tapering to 5″ (12.7 centimeters) diameter (round) at the top, and rigged for carrying an erection cage and hoisting gear, is placed on the concrete mast pier, and the first two steel sections bolted in place around it. The erection cage (in 2 sections) is then bolted together and suspended by means of chain hoists from steel out-riggers from the top of the mast. A steel cable is made fast to the flange of the top steel section and passed down thru a sheave in the heel of the wooden mast, and then up and out over the opposite side of the steel section to a winch on the ground. The mast is then hoisted 10 feet (2.55 meters), (1 steel section) and rested on an iron fid* passing thru the steel section and thru the heel of the mast. The erecting cage is then lowered to a point just below the flange of the top steel section, and the next steel section hoisted and bolted in place. The cage is again raised by means of chain hoists and the next section bolted in place and then the entire mast is raised 20 feet (5.1 meters) (2 sections), and the next steel section hoisted, and so on.

When the steel work is finished, and the guys in place, the erection cage is unbolted and sent down, and the mast rested on the diafram plate in the next to the top section of the mast. In erection, four men were used aloft and four on the ground to handle the winches and hoist the steel.

The proper maintenance of the masts and rigging is quite important, especially in the Tropics, and this type of mast has its disadvantages in that there is no way to paint the inside after it is in place, and the problem of renewing the wooden masts, which will eventually be necessary owing to the action of the

* Crosspiece supporting a topmast.

Digitized by Google

elements, or to damage by lightning, is a rather difficult one, and worthy of considerable attention.

As compared with the self-supporting type of tower, the maintenance costs of the tubular steel masts are much greater. In the former there are no guys to be renewed or to be tarred down and taken up, and the only maintenance cost is the cost of painting (which is also an expense in the maintenance of the tubular steel masts). Personally I favor the self-supporting steel tower over any other type, for the reason that it can be made to, and does, bear stresses equally as great as those of the tubular steel type, the cost of maintenance is considerably less, the initial cost is very little, if any, greater than the tubular steel type, and it can be very easily taken down and moved to another point if it is desirable to do so. There is also the cost of ground for guying purposes to be considered in the case of the tubular steel masts, which is not the case with the self-supporting tower. I recall one instance where $10,000 was paid for the ground necessary for guying the steel masts.

In our practice, we have been using self-supporting steel towers at our principal stations in the Tropics for upwards of ten years. Some of these towers have been taken down and transported to distant points and re-erected. Within the last year, the towers of the old New Orleans station, which had been up for seven years, were taken down and sent to Swan Island, and two other towers on Swan Island moved to a different location. A careful examination of these towers showed they were in just as good condition as the day they were first erected.

In the Tropics these towers are gone over once in every two or three years and painted, at a cost of approximately $200.00 per tower, depending upon their location which in turn determines the cost of labor. The paint used is "karbonkote," which withstands the tropical climate exceedingly well. This painting, as well as the scraping, is taken care of by ordinary day laborers, but in the case of the tubular steel masts it is necessary to have two or three expert riggers to take care of the guys and also to furnish a transit and dynamometer, all of which are not required in the case of the self-supporting towers.

Alfred N. Goldsmith: It is well known, in connection with the design of the wire guys in aeroplanes, that when in motion thru the air the guys are kept in a state of continual vibration. As a result of this, elastic fatigue of a marked sort appears; and guys which originally had a strength far in excess of the requirements speedily become dangerously weak and must be

Digitized by Google

replaced. In the case of guys in radio work, it may well be that a similar effect exists. It would be interesting to test the effect on the strength of a stretched guy cable of keeping it in continual and fairly violent vibration over considerable periods of time. A number of previously unexplained guy failures may thus be accounted for.

Digitized by Google

WOODEN LATTICE MASTS*

By

Cyril F. Elwell

This paper is not intended to cover all the various types of masts used in past and present radio installations, but rather to give details of the design and erection of one type; developed by the author from the original design advanced by Professor C. B. Wing of Stanford University; and many examples of which have been erected.

In the present state of the radio art some form of antenna supporter is a necessity, and a large proportion of the cost of an installation is in most cases incurred thereby. It is also a fact that the results obtained vary greatly with increased height of antenna. This has caused some comparatively high structures to be erected in the past few years. There have been relatively few failures of these supporting structures, but those which have occurred have taught their lessons.

There are, broadly considered, two main types of antenna support; viz.: self-supporting and guyed structures. These may be of steel or wood. To meet radio requirements, wooden structures are more suitable, but are not always permissible for climatic reasons. Self-supporting structures are more expensive than guyed ones, but in some cases this expense may be more than offset by the saving in the cost of the land required. Wooden structures designed along the lines which will presently be outlined are cheaper than equally strong steel structures. In steel towers the stresses in some cases call for smaller steel members than would be consistent with long life, hence more material must be used than is required. The erection of steel structures is a more costly undertaking than the erection of wooden ones constructed along the lines to be described.

Since large radio stations are rather uncertain as to length of tenure for many reasons, it is the author's opinion that wooden masts, being cheaper and more easily taken down, are the most suitable. If the radio installation proves after a number of

* Delivered before The Institute of Radio Engineers, New York, February 3, 1915.

Digitized by Google

years to be quite correctly located from all points of view, then the question of the renewing or the replacing of the wooden structures can be taken up. There is also the possibility that the radio installation of the future will be without the high structures now thought to be a necessity.

Having decided on the height and number of masts for a given installation the first step is to determine the load which the antenna in a high wind, and perhaps covered with ice, will develop. This will in most cases be in the form of an almost horizontal pull on the mast in one or more directions. With large spacing of masts, and the elimination of sag in the messengers, these loads can be quite high. All recent structures erected by the author have been designed for a horizontal pull at the top of 30,000 pounds (14,000 kg.). If under some conditions this is too great, a small saving can be made by reducing the size of the top set of guys which are to resist this pull; but a reduction in the cross section of the timber would hardly be warranted.

The next step is to decide on the number of guys to be used for the height of the mast selected. The fewer the guys, the more expensive the structure; and if too few guys are used, the failure of one of them will cause dangerous stresses to be developed in the others, and possibly cause their failure. This is borne out by the failure of the 400-foot (122-meter) tower at Macrihanish, of the 600-foot (184-meter) tower at Nauen, and of the 492-foot (150-meter) tower at Ballybunion. The last mentioned tower failed during construction by the parting of one of the lower set of guys before the upper, and only other set of guys, could be stretched. It was a steel tube tower, with three supporting columns on a 20-foot (6.6-meter) triangle, and should have had at least four sets of guys. Too few guys make for long spans between guy points, with correspondingly high stresses due to beam action and long column action. Long spans call for heavier guys, and the difficulty of effectively breaking heavy guys into the well insulated sections demanded by radio engineers is much greater with guys over 1 inch (2.5 cm.) in diameter. It is therefore a sound policy to keep all guys less than 1 inch in diameter.

We come now to the question of anchorages. It can very readily be shown that the most economical point at which to guy any mast is such that the guy makes an angle of 45 degrees with the point guyed. There are two causes in radio work which diminish the economy of this choice. One is the necessity of breaking up the guys into well insulated sections, and the other

Digitized by Google

is the area of land required. The saving in steel rope, on a tower guyed out to a point equal to its height, as compared with one guyed out to a point say two-thirds of its height, may easily be absorbed by the cost of the extra number of insulators and of the extra area of land required. For high structures, it is not economy to attach all guys to the same anchorage, as the lower guys become too flat and too long.

Having decided the height, the horizontal load, the number of guy points, and the position of anchorages, the assumed wind load must be decided. All the towers erected by the author have been designed on the assumption of a wind load of 40 pounds per square foot (200 kg. per square meter) of exposed surface; which is high and on the side of safety. Each section of the masts shown in the accompanying illustrations is a 6-foot (2-meter) square; and it is considered, that with wind from a certain angle, 30 of the 36 square feet would be effective as wind-opposing surface, so that a linear load of 200 pounds per foot (300 kg. per meter) of mast is used in computing guy stresses. The guy stresses can be readily calculated; and to them a substantial addition to allow for initial stress is made. A reduction of the actual angle is also made to compensate for the sag of the guy.

Having computed the vertical components of the wind loads, the load at the center of each span can be obtained by adding the dead weight of the mast above to the stresses due to the beam and long column actions. Having these figures, it is an easy matter to arrive at the size of the column necessary, when the strength of the material and the factor of safety to be used have been decided on.

Simplicity should be kept in mind at all times. For example, the tapering down of successive columns to meet the reducing stresses does not pay for the milling, sorting, handling, etc. In all the 300-foot (92-meter) masts erected, the columns are the same size thruout the height. In the 440-foot (144-meter) masts, two, and in some cases three sizes were used; e. g., one size to 258 feet (85 meters), and another size to the top. The same statement applies to brace frames, which, if graded to meet the varying stresses between the guy points and the centers of the spans, would lead to a confusing number of sizes.

The design of the foundation for the mast is a simple matter, and some reinforcing should be put in to take the bending action of the load imposed by the mast in a heavy wind. Sufficient area

Digitized by Google

Figure 1

Digitized by Google

to take care of the total load, and not to impose too great a load per square foot on the soil at the site must be allowed for.

The anchorages are of concrete, with ample tension rods of steel completely incased in concrete. The wire rope guys are brought around cast iron sheaves placed on a large pin. This is a great help in stretching the guys. Turnbuckles are not used, and are not considered necessary with steel center wire ropes in which the stretch is minimized.

The method of constructing the masts may prove of interest. The first columns are respectively 8, 14 and 20 feet (2.6, 4.6, and 6.6 meters) long respectively. They are placed in position by hand, and a set of brace frames put in. This constitutes 6 feet (2 meters) of the completed mast. A light hoisting derrick is temporarily attached to one of the holes in the 20-foot (6.6-meter) column, which will afterwards take a steel tie rod, and an 18-foot (5.9-meter) column is hoisted and placed on the top of the shortest column. A set of brace frames and tie rods is inserted. The last erected column has now become the longest; and the hoisting pole is moved to it and another 18-foot column hoisted and placed upon the shortest column. This in turn is used for the erection of the next column. All columns are made up of 18-foot sticks except the bottom and top of the tower. A wooden platform in two sections is used by the men to work upon, and is passed up as each 6 feet (2 meters) of tower is completed. Two men can comfortably work aloft, and with three to five men on the ground, they can easily erect from 36 to 54 feet of tower per day. The erecting of such a tower is shown in Figure 1.

A few examples of towers erected according to designs above outlined are shown. Figure 2 shows the first of this type erected in San Francisco in 1909. They are of the four-column type, 300 feet (92 meters) high, and guyed in four directions. After a number of this type were erected, a three-post design was adopted as shown in Figure 3. Figure 4 shows a 440-foot (144-meter) example, as erected at San Francisco and Honolulu, where 606-foot (200-meter) examples have also been erected. More recent examples are three 440-foot masts for the British Admiralty at Portsmouth, England, and one 492-foot (150-meter) mast at Ballybunion, Ireland. This last is shown in Figure 5.

SUMMARY: For radio work, the use of wooden guyed structures is advocated on the grounds that they are inexpensive and suited to the doubtful permanency of some radio stations. The horizontal pull of the antenna at the top of the masts is assumed to be about 14,000 kg. (30,000 lbs.); thus taking account of wind pressure, ice covering of the antenna wires, and the tension due to elimination of wire sag. The antenna should be guyed at a

Digitized by Google

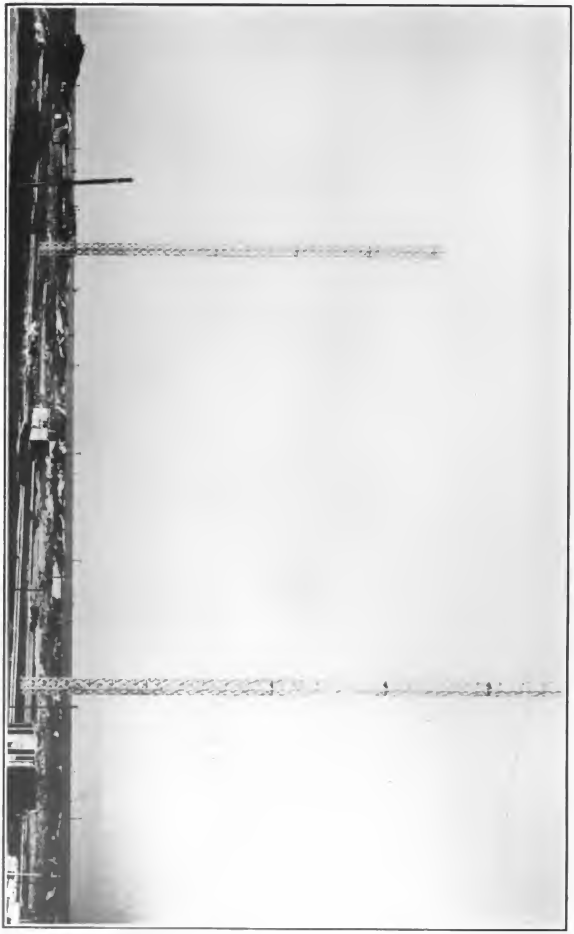


Figure 2

Digitized by Google

FIGURE 3

Digitized by Google

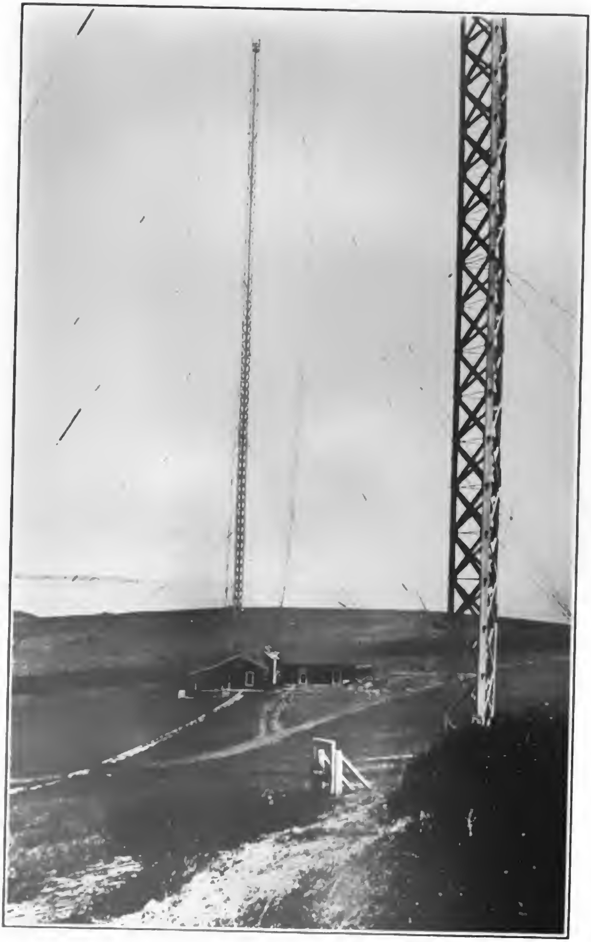


Figure 4

Digitized by Google

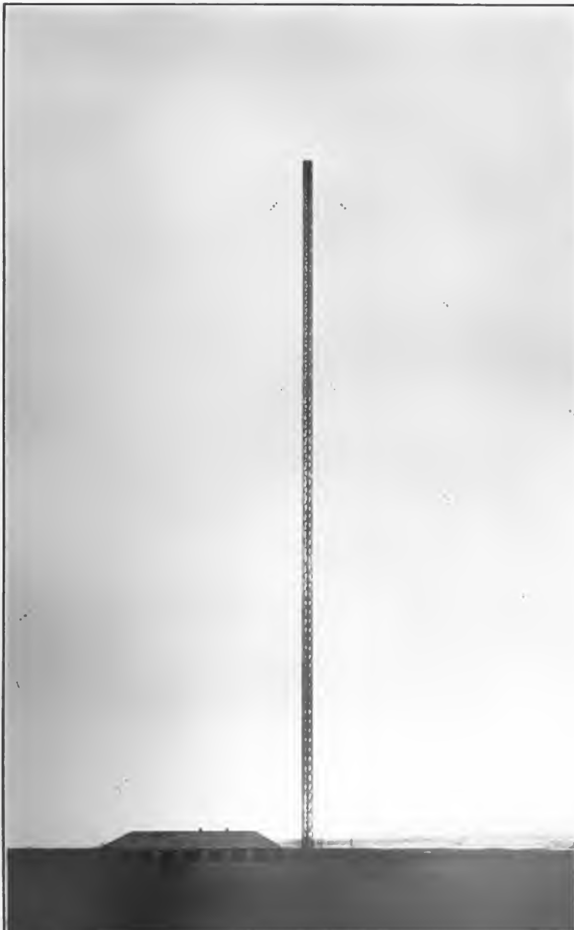


FIGURE 5

Digitized by Google

number of points to avoid long spans with high stresses due to beam and column action. The use of many light guys is advisable because of the difficulty of breaking up heavy guys by insulators. The position of the anchorages is determined by considerations of guy economy and of value of surrounding land. In calculating wind stresses, an assumed wind load on the masts of 200 kg. per sq. meter (40 lbs. per square foot) is used; and about 0.8 to 0.9 of the mast surface is regarded as effective in opposing the wind. The load at the center of each span is equal to the dead weight of the masts above added to the stresses due to beam and long column action. This load enables calculating the cross section of the masts. For masts up to about 100 meters (300 feet) high it is recommended to use only one size of timber to avoid complication. Above that height, a second lighter timber may be used. The construction of the anchorages is described and the method of erecting the masts is considered. Several examples of this type of mast are then shown.

Digitized by Google

DISCUSSION

George S. Davis: My discussion on the tubular steel masts described by Mr. Weagant, with the possible exception of the initial cost of material will apply with equal force to the wooden lattice type of mast which is so ably described by Mr. Elwell. The wooden lattice masts may possibly have certain advantages in certain localities, but within the last six or seven months we have had an example of what will occur to this type of mast when it has been in use for any length of time. I refer to the accident at the United States Naval Radio Station at Colon, Panama, of a few months ago, in which two men were killed while engaged in dismantling one of the wooden masts installed about 1904. The aerial equipment of this station originally consisted of three wooden lattice masts, one of which I believe blew down during a high wind a year or two after it was erected. The station has since been using only two masts, and judging from the description of the accident both had been considered unsafe for some time. The height of these masts, as near as I can remember, was 250 feet (80 meters). Of course these masts were subjected to the unusual climatic conditions of the Tropics, and possibly to the ravages of insects; and for these reasons the use of wooden lattice masts in hot countries appears to be undesirable. I recall also that the old United Fruit Company's station at New Orleans was originally equipped with a wooden lattice mast 200 feet (60 meters) in height, and that when the self-supporting towers were substituted and the wooden mast thrown down, it was found that the wood in a number of places was rotting badly; and it is safe to say that it would not have withstood the elements, or the antenna strain much longer.

The point that Mr. Elwell makes in regard to using wooden lattice masts temporarily, or until such a time as the station site is definitely decided upon, has been brought up at different times but it does not seem to have received any very great consideration, probably owing to the fact that once a station is erected it has only in a very few instances been found desirable to move it. It is safe to say that if such stations had been equipped with self-supporting steel towers they could have been just as readily taken down and re-erected on a new site at less waste perhaps than would occur in taking down and re-erecting a wooden lattice mast.

Alfred N. Goldsmith: There are a number of portable and semi-portable types of masts in use. In one of these portable

Digitized by Google

masts, a steel tape is used which, with a number of circular or square flanges surrounding it, can be raised by means of a windlass to a considerable height and then guyed in place. It can be used either as a support for the observer in military work or as a support for an antenna in connection with radio communication. Such masts can be raised to a height of from 75 to 100 feet. (See Jahrbuch für drahtlose Telegraphie, etc., Vol. 3, 1910, page 521.) Among other types of masts which can be rapidly assembled is the Rendahl mast, much used in Germany, and a number of the other similar types of masts which have been employed in this country and elsewhere.

Digitized by Google

LONG RANGE RECEPTION WITH COMBINED CRYSTAL DETECTOR AND AUDION AMPLIFIER*

By

Haraden Pratt

In the early part of the present year, an antenna was erected at the University of California to receive the time signals from Arlington, which station was then engaged in the Paris-Arlington longitude difference tests. The writer was thus enabled to conduct some interesting experiments in long distance reception during February, March, and April.

On the western coast of the United States, the radio conditions appear to be unusually favorable during the winter months. This is particularly the case in the San Francisco Bay region, where the almost complete absence of thunder storms and, in fact, atmospherics of any strength during the time mentioned makes the reception of signals from very distant stations nearly continuously possible.

The first antenna used in these experiments consisted of a wire 750 feet (230 meters) long supported at one end on a 300-foot (92-meter) steel tower, and by an 80-foot (24.5-meter) stack at the end nearer the receiving apparatus. The results obtained were so encouraging that two extra wires, spaced about 3 feet (92 cm.) apart were subsequently added. The strength of the signals was practically doubled by their presence. The fundamental or natural wave length of the antenna system was about 1,170 meters.

The receiving apparatus differed from the usual type only in that a galena-audion amplifying combination was used. The latter arrangement was based on the following principles.

It is at present understood that the audion detector possesses two distinct and separable properties in connection with currents of radio frequency. Firstly: because of the unilateral conductivity of the region around the heated filament, oscillating currents in passing across any portion of this region suffer a

* Delivered before The Institute of Radio Engineers, New York, December 2, 1914.

Digitized by Google

partial rectification. Thus one current impulse per wave train is produced, and an ordinary polarized telephone receiver can be affected by the transformed energy. Secondly: in the audion, the potential gradient across the rarefied gas, from the filament outward, is not linear. And the total potential difference across this space is brought to a critical value such that any further increase in it will cause a large current to flow. We have thus an amplifier and rectifier combined. The amplifying quality differs considerably in different bulbs, the shape of the E-I curve being an individual characteristic of the bulb.

A very good galena crystal and an audion bulb of fair sensitiveness were available in these experiments. When the two were used in combination, the audibility of received signals was enormously increased. It is interesting to note that there are many possible combinations of these detectors, and that a large number were tried before a successful one was found.

Five changeable features exist which affect the sensitiveness of the combination. They are:

1. Polarity of the filament battery,
2. Polarity of the secondary ("B") battery,
3. Interchanging of the galena detector terminals,
4. Interchanging of the grid and plate, and
5. Interchanging of the terminals of the secondary of the receiving transformer.

Each of these features was found to affect the strength of the signals received in the telephone. There was, indeed, one good combination out of 120 possibilities. The proper arrangement under conditions 1, 2, and 4 could be quickly found, however, because of the extreme effects produced when the adjustment was incorrect. The reason for including condition 5 is that the capacity between the primary and the secondary of the receiving transformer and the capacity of the audion apparatus to ground were different for the two modes of connection.

The results obtained with this combination of galena and audion were very satisfactory, previously inaudible signals becoming perfectly readable. To determine the amount of the amplification numerically, and to show the constancy of adjustment, a number of measurement of the audibility of signals were taken. The galena detector was used as the basis of comparison in these measurements, not only because of its steadiness and ease of adjustment, but also because it is representative of the best ordinarily used rectifying detectors. The shunted

Digitized by Google

telephone method of measuring audibility was employed. Constancy of the galena detector adjustment was controlled from day to day by noting the audibility of a buzzer signal kept constant in intensity thruout the experiments.

The values tabulated below give the mean of more than 200 independent values taken over a period of 30 days. The stations ranged in distance from close at hand to over 5,000 miles (8,000 km.) away. They lay in all directions from the receiving station, their wave lengths were between 600 and 3,200 meters, and their spark frequencies between 100 and 1,000 per second.

In the columns headed "1," are given the audibility using galena alone, in columns "2" the audibility using galena and the audion. Columns "3" give the ratio of these audibilities, that is, the amplification ratio.

1 Audibility with Galena	2 Audibility with Combination	3 Ratio	1 Audibility with Galena	2 Audibility with Combination	3 Ratio
507.0	3541.0	7.0	5.0	60.0	12.0
3.5	36.4	10.3	18.3	273.0	15.1
4.5	51.6	11.4	26.2	254.0	9.7
2.7	30.5	11.3	6.0	51.8	8.6
1.5	18.7	12.5	90.5	895.0	9.9
9.8	118.6	12.0	13.0	102.0	7.8
4.5	60.0	13.2	26.0	355.0	13.6
8.0	72.0	9.0	13.0	119.0	9.1
28.0	253.0	9.0	51.0	505.0	9.9

Average Amplification = 10.6

The average value of the amplification is, therefore, about 10. In order to note the effect of changing the "B" battery potential across the audion when using the adjusting telephone shunt, another pair of telephones was kept in series with the measuring pair and shunt. By listening in this extra pair of receivers, it was found that adjusting the shunt for audibility measurements did not disturb the signals. No single set of observations on one signal was averaged for more than one half hour's readings.

In carrying on these experiments it was noticed that audion bulbs which served excellently as detectors when used alone were not necessarily of value when used in combination with the galena as an amplifier. To determine the proper characteristics of an audion bulb for use in connection with the galena, some further experiments were tried.

Digitized by Google

It was noted first that, with certain values of the "B" battery potential of the audion, the clicks in the telephone while adjusting the galena crystal became weak, and the ease of manipulation was much increased. On the other hand, at other values of the "B" battery voltage, the clicks were loud and the crystal adjustment could be made only with considerable trouble.

A microvoltmeter was placed across the galena crystal, and it was found that for a certain value of the "B" battery voltage of the audion, no potential difference existed across the crystal. It was with this adjustment that the crystal could be adjusted and used most easily. Using one of the crystals, the relation between the "B" battery voltage and the potential across the crystal was determined. A curve showing this relation is shown in Figure 2. (Figure 1 shows the normal arrangement of the circuits.) It is interesting to note that for zero potential across

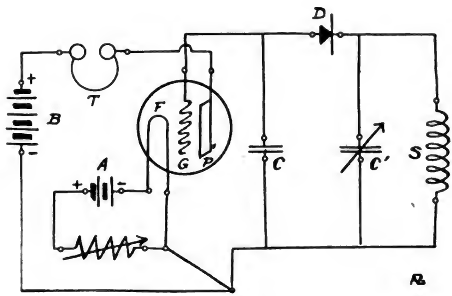


Figure 1

the crystal, the "B" battery voltage for the particular audion used was nearly the critical value for that particular bulb. The point of zero potential across the crystal could be brought to coincidence with the critical "B" battery value of the voltage by slightly varying the filament (or "A" battery) voltage.

With poor audion bulbs, unsuited for use as amplifiers in conjunction with galena crystals, these conditions were not found to exist. The "B" battery potential could be varied, but the crystal potential never fell to a very low value. When the "B" battery potential was increased, the crystal potential difference diminished, but the blue light would appear in the bulb showing that the critical potential value had been passed, and saturation

Digitized by Google

reached. No variation in the value of filament current could alter this condition.

It appears that unless the "B" battery potential can be brought to a critical value and at the same time the crystal potential difference is zero, satisfactory operation of this device cannot be secured.

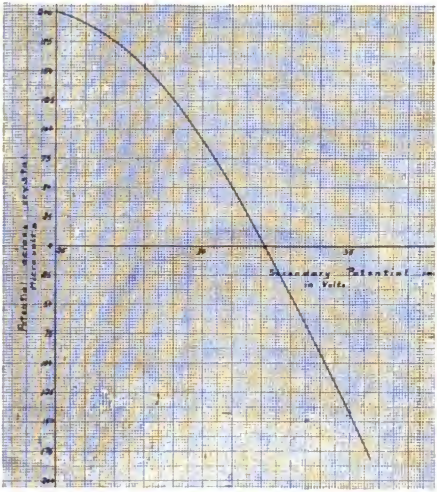


FIGURE 2

During the month of February, 1914, using the amplifier described, signals were received from Sayville (Long Island, New York), Arlington (Virginia), Key West (Florida), Colon (Panama), stations in Alaska, and others including a station in eastern Siberia. One night, signals were heard from two Telefunken stations, one in the Marshall Islands, and the other on Yap Island in the Caroline group. The distances of these stations from San Francisco are respectively 5,100 miles (8,200 km.) and 6,100 miles (9,800 km.). These signals were heard every night for three months thereafter with a nearly steady audibility of 25. The strength of signals varied but slightly from night to night. Nevertheless these stations experienced great difficulty in working with each other, altho they were but 2,100 miles (3,400 km.) apart. The more distant station of the two could

Digitized by Google

with difficulty be heard using either the audion or galena alone, but with the combination, signals were always readable up to the month of May, when the summer atmospherics began to interfere. Local signals caused no interference as the wave length of these stations was above 3,000 meters.

SUMMARY: If an audion bulb is used as an ordinary receiver, across the "stopping" condenser in series with a galena detector, an amplification of signals of about ten times is attained. The audion bulb used, to be effective for this purpose, must have certain definite voltage-current characteristics, which are described. The circuit diagram is given. Working with an antenna of an approximate fundamental wave length of 1,200 meters, a number of observations on stations up to 8,000 km. away were made.

Digitized by Google

DISCUSSION

Lee De Forest: Unfortunately, I find myself this evening in the unpleasant position of being explicitly directed by my patent attorneys not to give out any information as to my own recent work with the audion, so far as such information relates to any practical application.

In answer to a question, I wish to say that in 1905 and 1906 I investigated the effect of a magnetic field on the audion, and found that with certain bulbs a magnetic field, carefully disposed, could so localize and "focus" the cathodic discharge (probably on edges or corners of the "wings") as to increase considerably the sensitiveness of those bulbs as detectors. By this means, a diminution in filament current could be effected without loss in original sensitiveness. However, the same degree of sensitiveness could generally be attained without the magnet, by a different adjustment of the "B" battery voltage and the filament current.

Alfred N. Goldsmith: I believe that those who have worked with the extremely sensitive receivers of the audion amplifier type will agree that the sensitiveness of the detector, at least for work in the summer months, cannot be profitably increased because atmospheric disturbances already produce sounds many times louder than the desired signal. Until we learn to overcome the problem of static, any further increase in detector sensitiveness is of no practical advantage. And some idea of the difficulty of the problem of eliminating static may be gathered from an analogy in the field of mechanics. Required a tuning fork, which shall respond loudly to a note of a given pitch, but shall not respond to a sound of the same pitch simultaneously accompanied by vibrations of other pitch in phase with it, and which shall not respond, or but feebly, to a hammer blow!

J. H. Morecroft: It seems to me highly regrettable that a member, called upon to discuss the electrical actions taking place in such a device as the audion, a device not new, but well known to all radio men, should feel that his speaking in such a way is subject to the dictates of a patent attorney. Surely the art of radio telegraphy is not going to progress very rapidly if all the men working in this field are so restricted in dealing with the information which their work yields.

I hope that in future writings on radio work Mr. Armstrong will be given the credit due to him for the conscientious and

Digitized by Google

careful work he has done on the audion, which work was carried out to a large extent in the radio laboratory of Columbia University. Until taking up the audion with him and applying the oscillograph to explain its action, I knew but little about it. In fact it is impossible to find in the literature a careful study of the operation of this wonderful device. But, thanks to the oscillograph, its actions are now clear and the reasons for the different behavior of the bulbs under different conditions is known.

The study of the audion leads one into advanced questions in modern physics and is extremely interesting. Altho we could not exactly simulate actual conditions of radio work (as we had to use frequencies of the order of 100 cycles) it must be remembered that, with proper discretion, the laws deduced for low frequency phenomena, are directly applicable to high frequency phenomena. The study of the audion is being continued in our laboratory and I hope will yield results interesting to the members of the Institute.

I think the results given in Dr. Austin's paper are extremely interesting, as they, too, give us some exact information on a very hazy subject. If the Editor of the PROCEEDINGS can continue his good fortune in getting papers of this class, we may soon regard the PROCEEDINGS as our most valuable reference on radio subjects.

Alfred N. Goldsmith: In Mr. Tesla's lectures, delivered before the Institution of Electrical Engineers in London in 1904, and published as "Experiments with Alternate Currents of High Potential and High Frequency," he describes on page 43 *et seq.* the phenomenon of the "rotating brush." This glowing electron stream was extraordinarily sensitive to electrostatic forces; so much so that the approach of the observer at a distance of several meters would deflect it noticeably. Its sensitiveness to magnetic forces is shown by its rotation under the influence of the earth's magnetic field. I should like to ask Dr. de Forest if he has ever noticed any at all similar effect with the audion.

Lee De Forest: I have frequently observed a somewhat similar phenomena in bulbs where the "B voltage" is made sufficiently high to produce the "globular" blue aura around the edge or the back face of the wing of an audion. Then, by adroit manipulation of filament current, this aura can be brought to a state of unstable equilibrium where the approach of the hand to the bulb, or the reception on the grid of strong radio signals,

Digitized by Google

will produce a flickering or dancing of this glow. The phenomenon is a beautiful one, but I have never found a sensitiveness approaching that described by Mr. Tesla.

I believe that Professor Morecroft's confidence in the correctness of his dictum that electrical laws and phenomena must necessarily hold for high frequencies exactly as for low frequencies is not sufficient to warrant him in passing a 60 cycle, 20,000 volt current thru his body as readily as he would one of 100,000 cycles and like voltage!

But unless he is thus ready to admit of no exception to his rule he should not be so certain that oscillograms of audio phenomena at 100 cycles describe what takes place at 100,000 cycles.

I, myself, am by no means so sure that Mr. Armstrong's very interesting exposition really tells us all that transpires, whether the audion is used as a detector or amplifier, especially when we remember that there are many varieties of bulbs.

E. F. W. Alexanderson: In connection with the discussion of the mercury valve as a detector, I should like to call attention to an observation which I have made that a mercury rectifier shows considerable sluggishness at radio frequencies; and tho it is possible to use a mercury rectifier for doubling 100,000 into 200,000 cycles, the action is much less efficient than it is at ordinary frequencies. The sluggishness would probably exist in any vacuum detector containing mercury or an ionized gas. The usefulness of such a valve detector will therefore largely depend upon the extent to which it would respond to high frequencies. This is what I had in mind in my question to Mr. Armstrong as to the method for making the oscillograph measurements, but from his answer I gather that he used a vacuum valve which is not sluggish.

Roy A. Weagant: Mr. Pratt's paper is of considerable interest giving, as it does, quantitative measurements of the amplifying power of the audion when used in receiving actual radio signals. I note that Mr. Pratt depends upon the shunted telephone method of measurement, and while he has taken precautions to prevent the shunted resistances disturbing the adjustments in the wing circuit, I think there is always a liability to error in this method, and it would seem preferable to make use of a sensitive galvanometer for this work. Of course, this instrument could not be connected directly in the wing circuit, because of the direct current flowing therein, but could be

Digitized by Google

coupled to it by a suitable transformer. I am particularly interested in the explanation of the actions taking place within the audion as described by Mr. Armstrong in his discussion; as this is the first time to my knowledge that these phenomena have been properly investigated and analyzed; previous explanations have been made to the effect that imposing either positive or negative potential upon the grid, resulted in the decrease of current flow thru the wing circuit. This explanation may seem valid to experimenters who have made the test, because, unless certain, not specially evident precautions are taken this result will be obtained. I hope that Mr. Armstrong will, at some future time, fully explain these points. That this former explanation of the audion phenomena is invalid, was pointed out by me during the discussion of Dr. de Forest's paper on the "Audion Amplifier" when I stated that on the basis of this explanation the audion would be a frequency changer; that is, that the action of electromotive forces upon the grid circuit would give rise to a current in the wing circuit, having a frequency twice their own. The action described by Mr. Armstrong may be termed the pure electron phenomenon and is the result of the bombardment of the molecules of rarified gas by the negative electrons in their passage from the hot filament to the cold plate. This action gives visible evidence of its existence in the so-called "blue arc" which appears when the voltage of the wing circuit is raised above a certain critical value, and is accompanied by a very greatly increased flow of current thru the wing circuit. Ordinarily when the audion is in this condition, its sensitiveness is of very low order, but by the employment of valves of special characteristics and the use of suitable circuits, von Lieben and Reisz have been able to render the valve very sensitive when in this condition, and to secure thereby a greater degree of amplification than is possible by the usual arrangement. This is due to the fact that the volt-ampere characteristic of a vacuum valve detector is very steep just at the point where the ionization begins to appear. With the audion as usually constructed this curve is so excessively steep that it is impossible to take advantage of this property, stable adjustments being impossible to secure.

Lester L. Israel: In Mr. Pratt's measurements, audibilities were determined by the shunted telephone method. I believe that great caution must be observed in using this method with the audion. Dr. de Forest has recently pointed out to me that

Digitized by Google

if this method is used as is customary with crystal detectors, the efficiency of the audion is varied. I have found that for audibilities greater than four, serious inaccuracies appear with most bulbs, due to the variation of plate potential. Bulbs sometimes flash over when using the shunt resistance.

Mr. Pratt has attempted to meet this objection by placing a high resistance in series with the telephone making the variable potential drop across the telephones negligible. This certainly keeps the audion efficiency at a nearly constant value but now the theory of the shunt method no longer applies in the same manner as with crystal detectors.

With crystal detectors the generated E. M. F. varies so that the energy output is constant when the absorbing resistance is varied.

Thus with a shunt resistance $R_s = \frac{R_t}{4}$, we have

$$\text{telephone energy} = (R_t)\,(i_t)^2$$
$$\text{shunt energy} = \left(\frac{R_t}{4}\right)(4\,i_t^2)$$
$$\text{total energy} = 5\,R_t\,i_t^2$$

and the audibility is properly taken as

$$\frac{R_s + R_t}{R_s} = 5.$$

With a galvanometer in series with the detector, the current increases only as the square root of the audibility so that the energy measured on a galvanometer ($R_g\,i_g^2$) is proportional to the audibility $\frac{R_s + R_t}{R_s}$.

When using Mr. Pratt's method, it must be remembered that the value $\frac{R_s + R_t}{R_s}$ gives only the ratio of current thru the series resistance R to the audible telephone current.

The actual energy output of the audion is

$$R\,i^2 \text{ or } R\left(\frac{R_s + R_t}{R_s}\right)^2 i_t,$$

so that audibilities should be taken as proportional to the square of the audibility meter reading, when R_t is negligible in comparison with R. In order to make comparisons with crystal detectors, the audibility of audion signals should be taken as

$$\frac{R}{R_t}\left(\frac{R_s + R_t}{R_s}\right)^2$$

since this value gives the ratio of total energy output to $R_t\,i_t^2$.

Digitized by Google

THE THEORY OF HETERODYNE RECEIVERS

(A DISCUSSION ON "THE HETERODYNE RECEIVING SYSTEM"[1] BY JOHN L. HOGAN, JR.)

By

BENJAMIN LIEBOWITZ

Certain misconceptions seem to be current regarding the mode of amplification in receivers of the heterodyne type, in which a local radio frequency current is made to produce beats in conjunction with the received current. It is usual to assume, for example, that the maximum energy present in the antenna due to both currents is proportional to $(i_1 + i_2)^2$, and the minimum to $(i_1 - i_2)^2$, giving an energy fluctuation of $4i_1 i_2$; whereas the energy due to the received current alone would be proportional to i^2_1; from which it is deduced that the ratio of amplification is $2\frac{i_2}{i_1}$. The incorrectness of this view will appear from the following discussion.

Suppose the received and local currents to be simple harmonic, the first expressed by

$$i_1 = A \sin pt,$$

and the second by

$$i_2 = B \sin qt.$$

Let L denote the effective inductance of the antenna, and W the instantaneous value of the energy present in L. Then

$$W = \frac{1}{2} L (i_1 + i_2)^2 = \frac{1}{2} L (A \sin pt + B \sin qt)^2$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} LA^2 \cdot \sin^2 pt + \frac{1}{2} LB^2 \cdot \sin^2 qt + ABL \cdot \sin pt \cdot \sin qt$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} L [A^2 \sin^2 pt + B^2 \sin^2 qt + AB \cos (p - q) t - AB \cos (p + q) t].$$

The instantaneous value of the energy has, therefore, four com-

[1] A paper printed in THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, 1913, Volume 1, Part 3, page 75, *et seq.*

Digitized by Google

ponents, which for convenience may be denoted by W_1, W_2, W_3, and W_4. In dealing with energy, however, it is necessary to consider not the instantaneous values, but the average values. Thus, it would be incorrect to assume that W_3 represents the energy available for producing signals because it fluctuates with audible frequency, without regard to its average value; for, if that were the case, the received current acting alone would have no energy available for producing signals. (It must be borne in mind that the energy present in the antenna is under consideration, without regard to the manner in which that energy is utilized.) It is, therefore, only the average value of W which is of importance, and to find this average value we have merely to find the average values of the four components and add them. The period of W_1 is $\frac{\pi}{p}$, and if we integrate W_1 from any instant, t, to an instant one period later, i. e., to $t + \frac{\pi}{p}$, and then divide by the period, we get:

Average of

$$W_1 = \frac{p}{\pi} \cdot \frac{L A^2}{2} \int_t^{t+\frac{\pi}{p}} \sin^2 pt \cdot dt = \frac{p}{\pi} \cdot \frac{L A^2}{4} \int_t^{t+\frac{\pi}{p}} (1 - \cos 2\,pt)\, dt$$

$$= \frac{p}{\pi} \cdot \frac{L A^2}{4} \left(t - \frac{1}{2\,p} \sin 2\,pt \right)_t^{t+\frac{\pi}{p}}$$

$$= \frac{L A^2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}\, L \frac{A^2}{2} = \frac{1}{2}\, L\, I_1^2,$$

where I_1 is the effective value of i_1.

Similarly, it can be shown that

$$\text{Average of } W_2 = \frac{L B^2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}\, L \frac{B^2}{2} = \frac{1}{2}\, L\, I_2^2,$$

where I_2 is the effective value of i_2. Turning now to W_3, the period is $\frac{2\pi}{(p-q)}$ and if W_3 is integrated from any instant, t, to $t + \frac{2\pi}{(p-q)}$, and the result divided by $\frac{2\pi}{(p-q)}$, we get:

$$\text{Average of } W_3 = \frac{p-q}{2\pi} \cdot \frac{A\,B\,L}{2} \int_t^{t+\frac{2\pi}{p-q}} \cos (p-q)\, t \cdot dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi} \cdot \frac{A\,B\,L}{2} \Big[\sin (p-q)\, t \Big]_t^{t+\frac{2\pi}{p-q}} = 0.$$

Similarly, Average of $W_4 = O$.
Hence the average value of the energy present in the antenna is given by

$$\text{Average value of } W = \frac{1}{2} L (I_1^2 + I_2^2).$$

In other words, when currents of different frequencies are present in a circuit, the average value of the energy present is equal to the sum of the average values of the energy due to each current separately. In fact, the law of conservation of energy demands this; and furthermore, it is a well-known theorem in electrical theory, that if a number of currents of different frequencies and of effective values $I_1, I_2, I_3 \cdot \cdot \cdot$ are present in a resistance R, then the average rate of heat development is equal to

$$R (I_1^2 + I_2^2 + I_3^2 + \cdot \cdot \cdot \cdot).$$

It is clear, therefore, that receivers of the heterodyne type do not amplify by increasing the energy component of the received currents in the antenna. Before considering the true mode of amplification in such receivers, it is necessary to distinguish between two types of amplification, namely: (1), by infusing new energy into the received oscillations, and (2), by increasing the efficiency of the receiving apparatus. As an example of amplification by the infusion of new energy into the incoming oscillations, consider receivers which employ an electron stream acted on by the currents to be amplified. In such receivers the resulting variations in the electron current can be made many times greater than the amplitude of the original current, so that here we have actually reproduced the original currents, but with greater energy. As an example of the other type of amplification, consider the ordinary telephone receiver. That the presence of the permanent magnet produces an enormous increase in the amplitude of the vibrations of the diaphragm is too well known to require mention, but it cannot be said that the permanent magnet puts new energy into the system. This is clearly amplification by increasing the efficiency of the receiving apparatus; the energy in the sound can never exceed the energy in the received current.

The theory of ordinary telephone receivers, as usually presented, is worthy of further scrutiny in this connection. The force of attraction between a magnet and a piece of iron is directly proportional to the square of the flux. If this flux has a constant

Digitized by Google

component ϕ_1, and a variable component $\phi_2 \sin pt$, the force at any instant is proportional to

$$(\phi_1 + \phi_2 \sin pt)^2 = \phi_1^2 + 2\,\phi_1\,\phi_2 \sin pt + \phi_2^2 \sin^2 pt.$$

ϕ_1 is usually very large compared with ϕ_2; hence, neglecting the last term, the variable force is proportional to

$$\phi_2\,\phi_1 \sin pt,$$

and since ϕ_2 is proportional to A, the amplitude of the received current, the variable force is proportional to

$$A\,\phi_1 \sin pt.$$

Hence, the larger the permanent flux the larger the useful force.

This theory is correct, however, only so long as the motion of the diaphragm is very small; i. e., only so long as the efficiency of the receiver is very low. The telephone receiver is, after all, a synchronous motor, and the excursions of the diaphragm produce a back e. m. f. in the coils, just as in any other motor. This back e. m. f. is ordinarily negligible, because the efficiency of the telephone receiver is ordinarily very low. For higher efficiencies, however, this back e. m. f. would attain values of the same order of magnitude as the resistance reaction and inductance reaction, and the effect of this would be to diminish the incoming current. Hence, the useful force cannot be indefinitely increased by increasing the permanent flux; the best that can be attained is an increase in the efficiency. This phenomenon is analogous to the events in an ordinary motor; as the motor speeds up the back e. m. f. becomes increasingly important, and, at full speed, is the largest reaction in the circuit if the motor is efficient.

The theory of the electrostatic telephone receiver in which a constant difference of potential is maintained between the plates is entirely analogous. If V_2 represents the constant e. m. f. and $V_1 \sin pt$ a superimposed variable e. m. f., then, since the force between the plates varies as the square of the e. m. f., the force at any instant is proportional to

$$(V_2 + V_1 \sin pt)^2 = V_2^2 + 2\,V_1\,V_2 \sin pt + V_1^2 \sin^2 pt.$$

Again neglecting the last term, the variable component of the resulting force is proportional to

$$V_1\,V_2 \sin pt.$$

This could be indefinitely increased by increasing V_2 indefinitely; but here again a back e. m. f. is produced as soon as the device

Digitized by Google

becomes appreciably efficient, and this back e. m. f. results in a decrease of V_1 when V_2 is increased. In this receiver, the battery which maintains the constant voltage does not supply any useful energy. It acts in a manner entirely analogous to the permanent magnet in the ordinary telephone receiver. The acoustic energy of such a device can never exceed the energy in the received currents.

Turning now to receivers of the heterodyne type, consider, for example, the form shown in Figure 11 of Mr. Hogan's paper, "The Heterodyne Receiving System." (See these PROCEEDINGS, July, 1913.) No attempt will be made to give a rigorous theory of the problem presented by these circuits, but an approximation of the facts sufficiently close for practical purposes will be presented.

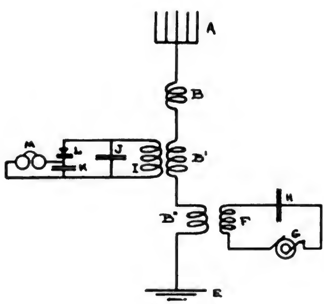


FIGURE 11
(OF ORIGINAL PAPER)

In the circuit IJ of Figure 11 of Mr. Hogan's paper, suppose that the two currents,

$$i_1 = A \sin pt \text{ and } i_2 = B \sin qt$$

are flowing. The voltage across the condenser J will be

$$v = \frac{1}{C}\int (i_1 + i_2) d\,t = a \cdot \cos pt + b \cdot \cos qt$$

where $a = -\frac{A}{p\,c}$, $b = -\frac{B}{q\,c}$, and C is the capacity of condenser J. It can be shown, in a manner entirely similar to the previous cases, that the average value of the energy present

Digitized by Google

in this condenser is proportional to $(a^2 + b^2)$ and not to $(a + b)^2$. Suppose now that a is much smaller than b, as is the case in practice; then, denoting the difference in the amplitudes by h $(h = b - a)$, we may write v in the form

$$v = a(\cos pt + \cos qt) + h \cos qt$$
$$= 2a \cos\left(\frac{p - q}{2}\right) t \cdot \cos\left(\frac{p + q}{2}\right) t + h \cos qt.$$

The voltage across the condenser J can, therefore, be resolved into two components,

$$v_1 = 2a \cos\left(\frac{p - q}{2}\right) t \cdot \cos\left(\frac{p + q}{2}\right) t \text{ and } v_2 = (b - a) \cos qt.$$

The first may be called the "beat" component, the second the "sustained" component. The graph of v_1 is of the form shown by Mr. Hogan (loc. cit.) in Figure 4, curve C; the graph of v_2 is a simple sine curve. The effects of these components in the rectifying detector circuit KLM will now be separately considered.

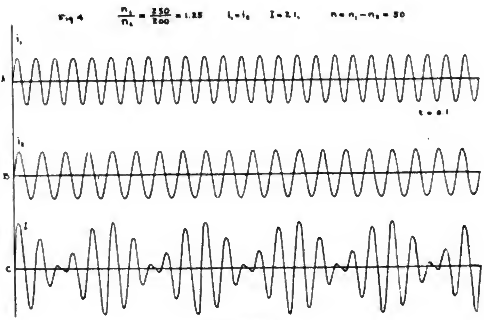


FIGURE 4
(OF ORIGINAL PAPER)

Owing to the rectifying and integrating action of the detector circuit, the rapidly varying voltages v_1 and v_2 give rise to constant or slowly varying unidirectional currents through the telephone receivers M. More specifically, the "beat" voltage component v_1 tends to produce a current in the detector circuit of the form shown in Figure 6, curve C of Mr. Hogan's paper, with the negative loops omitted, however. But owing

Digitized by Google

to the high resistance of the detector and the large inductance of the telephone receivers, this series of unidirectional current loops is smoothed out into the form shown by Mr. Hogan's curve E of Figure 6. The maximum value of these smoothed

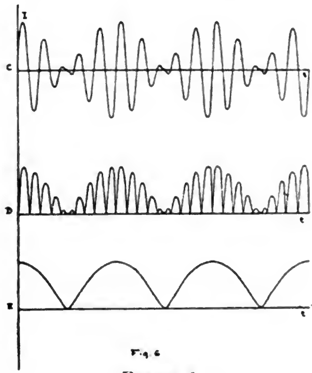


FIGURE 6
(OF ORIGINAL PAPER)

loops will obviously be proportional to the maximum amplitude of the "beat" component, i. e., to 2a, and since the minimum value is zero, the *amplitude* of the variable component of the telephone current will be directly proportional to a, which in turn is proportional to A, the amplitude of the received current. We see, therefore, that the amplitude of the variable telephone current is directly proportional to the amplitude of the received current.

Consider now the sustained voltage component (b − a) cos qt. It will obviously give rise to a practically constant, unidirectional current thru the telephone receivers. This might result in two improvements (1), a slight increase in the sensitiveness of the telephones resulting from a possible increase in the permanent flux, and (2) an increase in the detector sensitiveness resulting from working on a better part of its characteristic. Whether or not these improvements exist is immaterial from our present point of view, because if they do exist, the same results could be obtained by suitably placing a battery in the detector circuit. In any case it is clear that these last two improvements would be amplification by increase in

Digitized by Google

efficiency, and not by infusion of new energy. Barring, therefore, possible improvements which could be obtained by the use of a battery, we see that no matter how large the amplitude of the local current may be, only that part is useful whose amplitude is equal to the amplitude of the received currents.

It will now be seen that the maximum true amplification, i. e., amplification by infusion of new energy, which the heterodyne receiving system can produce is four. To prove this, suppose that the local current is absent, that the same system of circuits is employed, and that a "chopper" in series with the telephones is used to break up the sustained received oscillations into trains of audible frequency. The maximum value of the voltage across condenser J will now be equal to $-\frac{A}{p\,c}$, assuming the current in I J to be expressible by $A \sin pt$, as before. The resulting pulsating current thru the telephone receivers will, therefore, vary between O and a maximum value proportional to $\frac{A}{p\,c}$, i. e., proportional to A. Hence the amplitude of the telephone current will be proportional to $\frac{A}{2}$. But we have seen that when the local current is present, the amplitude of the telephone current is proportional to A, the factor of proportionality being the same in both cases; and since the acoustic energy is proportional to the square of the telephone current, it follows that the useful energy is four times as great when the local current is present as it is when the local current is not present. At the very most, therefore, the maximum true amplification which the heterodyne receiving system can produce is four. Any additional amplification which has been observed must be regarded as due to an improvement in the efficiency of the receiving system, and not to any particular virtue of the heterodyne principle. Such additional amplification is obtained, for example, by making the beat frequency equal to the natural frequency of the telephone receivers.

The form of the heterodyne receiver which we have been discussing, i. e., the form shown in Figure 11, is the most efficient of all those described in Mr. Hogan's paper. The other forms shown offer considerable mathematical difficulties when the energy relations are analysed, altho the principal forces acting may be readily found. Thus, for example, in Figure 10, suppose

Digitized by Google

that the voltage v across the electrostatic telephone receiver D is expressible by

$$v = a \cos pt + b \cos qt,$$

the first term being due to the incoming, the second to the local oscillations. Since the force between the plates of the receiver

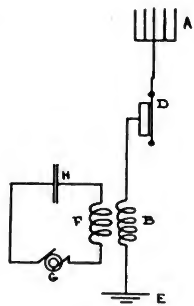


FIGURE 10
(OF ORIGINAL PAPER)

is proportional to $(v)^2$, we have, denoting the force by F and a proportionality factor by K,

$$\begin{aligned} F &= K\,(a \cos pt + b \cos qt)^2 \\ &= K\,(a^2 \cos^2 pt + b^2 \cos^2 qt + 2\,ab \cos pt \cos qt) \\ &= K\,[a^2 \cos^2 pt + b^2 \cos^2 qt + ab \cos (p - q)\,t + ab \cos (p + q)t]. \end{aligned}$$

The force, therefore, has four components, only the third of which is useful in producing acoustic energy. Hence the useful force is given by

$$f = K\,a\,b \cos (p - q)\,t.$$

This shows that the greater the amplitude of the local oscillations, the greater is the useful force; but here again we should have back e. m. f.'s produced which, as soon as the device became efficient, would limit any further increase in the force due to a further increase in the local amplitude, by reducing the incoming amplitude proportionately. It is clear that the local oscillations perform the same function in this system that the permanent magnet does in the ordinary telephone receiver and

Digitized by Google

that the constant impressed voltage does in the electrostatic telephone receiver. It is possible, however, that the local oscillations may give, besides, a limited amount of true amplification, as they do in the form discussed above. An investigation to determine whether or not this is the case would be difficult; the value, moreover, of such an investigation would be doubtful, since this form is not the most efficient and since it has been just shown that the maximum true amplification obtainable in the most efficient form of the heterodyne receiver is four.

SUMMARY: The necessity of viewing the energy relations in the heterodyne receiver from the standpoint of average, not of instantaneous values, is pointed out; and the average energy present due to two currents of different frequencies is studied.

A distinction is made between two general types of amplification; (1) by infusion of new energy into the received currents, and (2) by increase of efficiency of the receiving apparatus. Only the first may be regarded as true amplification. As examples typical of the second, the theory of the electromagnetic and of the electrostatic telephone receivers is sketched. Finally, it is shown that the maximum true heterodyne amplification is four.

Digitized by Google

Louis Cohen: At the beginning of the article, we have a mathematical demonstration to show that receivers operating on the heterodyne principle do not amplify the energy of the received current. The result is summarised in the following statement: "It is clear, therefore, that receivers of the heterodyne type do not amplify the energy component of the received current in the antenna." Further on in the article, Mr. Liebowitz shows with equal mathematical skill that the heterodyne does produce an amplification of four times. To quote again: "It will now be seen that the maximum amplification, i. e., amplification by the infusion of new energy, which the heterodyne receiver can produce is four."

It is interesting to note that he arrives at these contradictory conclusions by using the same fundamental equations, but applying different trigonometrical transformations in either case. A little reflection should have convinced Mr. Liebowitz that a theory which may lead to different conclusions, depending solely on juggling with trigonometry, must be fundamentally wrong. The fact also that all the experimental evidences obtained by various observers contradict his theory, does not seem to concern him. Apparently he prefers to ignore entirely experimental facts.

In support of his argument, Mr. Liebowitz shows that the average value of the energy in the circuit is $\frac{1}{2} L (I_1^2 + I_2^2)$, where I_1 and I_2 are the amplitudes of the two currents, and not $\frac{1}{2} L (I_1 + I_2)^2$, as has been maintained by others. This is perfectly true, but it does not prove anything. The error he makes is in averaging the energy of each component separately for a different period as if the other component were entirely absent. This, however, is not the true condition. If we have two currents, A sin pt and B sin qt acting on the same circuit, and put $q = p + \beta$, the resultant current in the circuit at any instant of time is,

$$\begin{aligned} I &= A \sin pt + B \sin (p + \beta) t \\ &= A \sin pt + B \sin pt \cos \beta t + B \cos pt \sin \beta t \\ &= (A + B \cos \beta t) \sin pt + B \sin \beta t \cos pt \\ &= \sqrt{A^2 + B^2 + 2 A B \cos \beta t} \sin (pt + \phi). \end{aligned}$$

Digitized by Google

The amplitude of the resultant current is variable, of frequency $\frac{\beta}{2\pi}$ equal to the difference of the frequencies of the two currents. The average value of the square of the current for a period $\frac{2\pi}{\beta}$ is $(A^2 + B^2)$, but the variation in amplitude is proportional to 2 A B, and hence the amplification is proportional to $\frac{2A}{B}$; that is, the ratio of the local current to the received current.

In the discussion of the electrostatic telephone receiver, Mr. Liebowitz arrives at an equation somewhat similar to the one given above, which leads to the conclusion that the amplification must be proportional to the amplitude of the local current, but he is not willing to admit this, and he introduces the idea of the back e. m. f. of the telephone. What he may mean by the back e. m. f. of the infinitesimal displacement of the condenser plate is a little hard to see. The fact is that in the many experiments I have carried on using the electrostatic telephone, the sensitiveness continually increased as the local current was increased. We have obtained amplifications of a thousand times and more, and our only limitation was the arc noise of the local exciting circuit. In the case of the crystal detector greater difficulties were experienced, the irregularity of the arc current was a more disturbing factor, but under favorable conditions amplifications of twenty to fifty times were obtained.

Benjamin Liebowitz: Mr. Cohen's criticisms of the theory I have proposed are, with one possible exception, wholly without basis, as I shall show. It is true that integrating different energy components over different periods is not an entirely rigorous process, but since the result obtained is well known to be correct, and since the rigorous proof is somewhat more complicated than that given, a sacrifice of rigor for simplicity is quite justifiable. However, in order to remove all possible ground for argument, I shall now prove by a perfectly rigorous method that the average energy W_m due to two currents of different frequencies present in a circuit is

$$W_m = \frac{1}{2} L (I_1^2 + I_1^2).$$

If the two currents are given by A sin pt and B sin qt, the instantaneous value of the energy is

$$W = \frac{1}{2} L (A \sin pt + B \sin qt)^2.$$

Digitized by Google

By applying the same transformations as are used in the article we get:

$$W = \frac{1}{4} L \left\{ A^2 + B^2 - A^2 \cos 2\,pt - B^2 \cos 2\,qt \right.$$
$$\left. + 2\,A\,B \cos (p - q)\,t - 2\,A\,B \cos (p + q)\,t \right\}.$$

Integrate this between the limits t_1 and t_2, and then divide by $(t_2 - t_1)$. Remembering that

$$\text{Average of } W = \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} W\,dt = W_m, \text{ we get}$$

$$(1)\left\{\begin{aligned} W_m &= \frac{1}{4} L \left(A^2 + B^2 - \frac{L}{t_2 - t_1} \left\{ \frac{A^2}{8\,p} \sin 2\,p\,(t_2 - t_1) \right.\right. \\ &\quad + \frac{B}{8q} \sin 2\,q\,(t_2 - t_1) - \frac{A\,B}{2\,(p - q)} \sin (p - q)\,(t_2 - t_1) \\ &\quad \left. + \frac{A\,B}{2\,(p + q)} \sin (p + q)\,(t_2 - t_1) \right\}. \end{aligned}\right.$$

If the time interval be so chosen that $2\,p\,(t_2 - t_1)$, $2\,q\,(t_2 - t_1)$, $(p - q)\,(t_2 - t_1)$, and $(p + q)\,(t_2 - t_1)$ are all integral multiples of π, then the bracketed term will vanish. But the time interval may always be so chosen. For, let k and l be two integers such that

$$(2) \qquad \left\{\begin{aligned} (p - q)\,(t_2 - t_1) &= k\,\pi \\ (p + q)\,(t_2 - t_1) &= l\,\pi. \end{aligned}\right.$$

Then, by addition and subtraction:

$$2\,p\,(t_2 - t_1) = (l + k)\,\pi$$
$$2\,q\,(t_2 - t_1) = (l - k)\,\pi.$$

Hence, if equations (2) are satisfied, $2\,p\,(t_2 - t_1)$ and $2\,q\,(t_2 - t_1)$ will also be integral multiples of π. But equations (2) can be satisfied if the integers k and l fulfill the condition

$$(3) \qquad \frac{p - q}{p + q} = \frac{k}{l}.$$

When $(p - q)$ and $(p + q)$ are commensurable numbers, condition (3) is obviously fulfilled. But even when $(p - q)$ and $(p + q)$ are not commensurable, the required integers can be found to an approximation as close as desired, for it is known that any fraction can be expressed as the ratio of two integers to any required degree of approximation. It follows that the time interval $(t_2 - t_1)$ can always be so chosen as to make the arguments of all the sines in equation (1) integral multiples of π,

Digitized by Google

and hence so as to make the bracketed term vanish. There remains therefore

$$W_m = \frac{1}{4} L (A^2 + B^2) = \frac{1}{2} L I_1^2 + \frac{1}{2} L I_2^2,$$

if effective values I_1, I_2 are used instead of amplitudes A, B. Hence it is established with perfect rigor that the average value of the energy due to two currents present in a circuit is equal to the sum of the average values due to each current separately. The only possible ground for criticism of the theory is thereby removed.

Turning now to the other points raised, Mr. Cohen tries first to overthrow the validity of the theory by quoting two sentences from different parts of the article and declaring them to be contradictory; a little more careful consideration of the context shows, however, that there is no contradiction whatever. The first statement quoted by Mr. Cohen means that merely mixing two currents of different frequencies and different amplitudes in a circuit does *not* increase the energy component of the weaker one, since the average energy present is equal to the sum of the individual average energies. The theories of Mr. Cohen and of Mr. Hogan on the other hand, assert that by merely mixing a weak current with a strong one of different frequency, an amplification proportional to the ratio of the amplitudes is produced. The first of my statements quoted by Mr. Cohen flatly denies the existence of *such* amplification, but it does not deny that amplification in other ways; i. e., by properly utilizing the effect of the two currents in other circuits, is possible. In fact, immediately following this statement in the article will be found the sentence beginning, "Before considering *the true mode of amplification in such receivers*, it is necessary . . ." etc. The first quoted statement therefore does not say that *all* amplification is impossible, but only that such amplification as is called for by the older theories is impossible. Later on, I show that a limited true amplification may indeed exist. It is clear, therefore, that there is no contradiction whatever in the two statements quoted, and that Mr. Cohen's first criticism of the theory is therefore wholly without foundation.

Mr. Cohen's next objection is to the method I employed in proving that $W_m = \frac{1}{2} L (I_1^2 + I_2^2)$, altho he accepts the results. I have already removed this ground for criticism, but granting a lack of rigor in the first proof, the result is correct, as Mr. Cohen admits, and a faulty derivation thereof would not

Digitized by Google

affect the validity of the body of the theory. Mr. Cohen cannot escape from the consequences of this result, therefore, by merely calling attention to a lack of rigor in the particular derivation employed.

As an additional reason for disregarding the aforesaid result, Mr. Cohen asserts that nothing is proved thereby. But something is most decidedly and very obviously proved thereby; viz., that in seeking for the amplification produced by heterodyne receivers we must look not for the energy of or the amplitudes of all the currents existing in the circuits, but for the energy of or the amplitude of the particular current which produces the signal. Thus, it is very definitely proved that in the best form of the heterodyne receiver (Figure 11 of Mr. Hogan's paper), for example, the only criterion for the amplification is the amplitude of the audible frequency current in the telephone receivers.

This conclusion has escaped Mr. Cohen, for he persists in attempting to deduce the amplification of the heterodyne by considering all the currents, instead of the useful current alone. Leaving this point aside, however, the proof which he offers that the amplification is proportional to the ratio of the amplitudes is easily shown to be fallacious. Mr. Cohen throws the expression for the sum of the two currents into the form:

$$I = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2 + 2\,A\,B \cos \beta t} \sin (p\,t + \phi).$$

where the angle ϕ is given by

$$\phi = \tan^{-1} \frac{B \sin \beta t}{A + B \cos \beta t}.$$

This expression for I is in the form of a single current of variable amplitude and variable phase. Mr. Cohen infers from this, presumably because the term 2 A B occurs under the radical, that there exists an amplitude variation proportional to 2 A B. Now, it is perfectly obvious that the maximum value which the radical can have is

$$\sqrt{A^2 + B^2 + 2\,A\,B} = A + B,$$

which value it takes when $\beta t = 2\,n\,\pi$, where n is any positive integer; also that the minimum value which the radical can have is

$$\sqrt{A^2 + B^2 - 2\,A\,B} = A - B,$$

which value it takes when $\beta t = (2\,n + 1)\,\pi$, where again n is any positive integer. The variation in amplitude is therefore

$$A + B - (A - B) = 2\,B,$$

Digitized by Google

and is not 2 A B. That the amplitude variation is 2 B follows directly from physical considerations, moreover, and from graphical construction; and no amount of mathematical transformation can change the physical facts. Mr. Cohen's proof that there exists an amplitude variation proportional to 2 A B, and hence that the amplification produced is proportional to $\frac{2\,A}{B}$ is therefore fallacious.

In the article, I have shown how the amplitude of the useful current in the telephone receivers may be arrived at by breaking up the currents into a "beat" component and a "sustained" component. By this process I have shown that the use of the local current makes it possible to double the amplitude of the audio frequency telephone current, and hence that the maximum true amplification is four. Additional amplification due to increase of efficiency does indeed exist, but that is not *true* amplification. Mr. Cohen ignores this part of the paper entirely. Unless he can show, however, that the reasoning employed here is fallacious, the conclusion that the maximum amplification of the best heterodyne receiver is four would still stand, even if all of Mr. Cohen's other criticisms were justifiable.

The rigorous theory of the electromagnetic or electrostatic telephone receiver is difficult, because it involves differential equations with variable coefficients, and such equations must be solved by complicated mathematical processes. I have not carried the theory farther than to show that *so long as the efficiency is very small*, the useful force acting on the diafram is proportional to the permanent magnetic flux in the electromagnetic telephone receiver, to the constant impressed force in the ordinary electrostatic receiver, and to the amplitude of the local current in the electrostatic form of the heterodyne receiver. In the first two of these receivers, no one will question that the constant force or the constant flux can not put additional energy into the system, and that therefore the amplification produced is due entirely to increased efficiency. From the closeness of the analogy between these two receivers and the electrostatic form of the heterodyne, and from the fact that the sensitiveness of the latter is, at best, no better than that of an ordinary detector (See Mr. Hogan's paper, page 86), it is clear that the amplification produced by the electrostatic form of the heterodyne must be due also to increased efficiency; if any true amplification exists, it is negligibly small. The fact is very significant that an amplification of 1,000 times can be produced

Digitized by Google

by the electrostatic form of the heterodyne (according to Mr. Cohen), without increasing the sensitiveness of the arrangement beyond that of the ordinary detector (according to Mr. Hogan).

It is hardly worth while going further into the discussion of this form of heterodyne receiver, because of its admittedly low efficiency; but in reply to Mr. Cohen's remark concerning the e. m. f. due to the "infinitesimal motion of the condenser plate," I wish to remind him that in any device for converting electrical into mechanical energy, the energy w so converted is given by

$$w = \int e\, i\, dt,$$

where e is the counter e. m. f. due to mechanical motion. If this motion is infinitesimal, then the counter e. m. f. due to it is also infinitesimal, the electrical energy converted into mechanical energy is also infinitesimal, and the efficiency is likewise infinitesimal. And even after the converted energy has been multiplied 1,000 fold, it is still infinitesimal!

Mr. Cohen states that my theory is contradicted by the experimental facts, and cites amplifications of 1,000 times in the case of the electrostatic form, and of 20 to 50 times in the best form of the heterodyne. He gives no estimate, however, as to the extent to which the amplifications are due to increase of efficiency, and to true amplification. An approximate estimate may be made, however, with very little difficulty. In the electrostatic form, there is no evidence that the amplification is due to anything other than increased efficiency. Take away the permanent magnet of an ordinary telephone receiver, for example, and measure the volume of sound produced by a given e. m. f.; replace the permanent magnet and measure the sound again; I dare say that an amplification of several thousand times will be observed, but it will be due entirely to increased efficiency. The state of affairs in the electrostatic form of the heterodyne I have shown to be almost exactly similar. As regards the amplifications of 20 to 50 times observed in the most efficient form of the heterodyne, it should be borne in mind that adjusting the beat frequency to the natural frequency of the telephone diafram may easily produce an amplification of 6 to 10 times, and that adjusting the amplitude of the local current so as to work the crystal on the best part of its characteristic may produce an additional amplification of 2 or 3 times. These latter amplifications are due entirely to increased efficiency,

Digitized by Google

so that an observed amplification of 50 times can readily arise from an apparent amplification of 25 times, say, and a true amplification of 2 times. There is therefore no experimental evidence that a *true* amplification greater than 4 times has ever been produced by a heterodyne receiver.

Louis Cohen: In his reply to my criticism, Mr. Liebowitz has gone to some trouble to work out a more elaborate proof to show that the average energy W_m due to two currents of different frequencies present in a circuit is

$$W_m = \frac{1}{2} L (I_1^2 + I_2^2).$$

I can not see that this throws any further light on the subject; there was no argument about this point. I have stated in my first remarks, in discussing the paper, that this is perfectly true; but I maintained that it did not prove anything and gave my reasons for it. He evidently missed that point of my argument.

He further goes on to show that the expression I gave for the instantaneous value of the current

$$I = \sqrt{A^2 + B^2 + 2 A B \cos \beta t}$$

leads to the conclusion that the variation in an amplitude is 2B and not 2AB. He makes the error in implicitly assuming that the effect on the detector is proportional to the first power, which is of course incorrect. The effect on the detector is proportional to the square of the current, hence it follows from the expression I gave, that the maximum value of the effect on the detector is $(A^2 + B^2 + 2 A B)$, and the minimum value is $(A^2 + B^2 - 2 A B)$, and the difference is $4 A B$. The variation is therefore proportional to AB as I have stated before.

Finally, Mr. Liebowitz argues that the amplification may be due to an increase in sensitiveness of the telephone by adjusting the beat frequency to the natural frequency of the telephone diafram. To show that this argument is not valid, it is only necessary to call attention to the fact that the same amplification is obtained whatever the beat frequency within the range of audibility.

Benjamin Liebowitz: In his first criticism of my paper, Mr. Cohen, while admitting that $W_m = \frac{1}{2} L (I_1^2 + I_2^2)$, goes on to say that "The error he makes is in averaging the energy of

Digitized by Google

each component separately. . . . " In other words, Mr. Cohen took the view that altho the result was correct, a lack of rigor in proving it invalidated the rest of the argument. Rather than dwell on the illogical nature of this view, I met the criticism by giving a rigorous proof.

Apparently Mr. Cohen still believes that this result proves nothing. I have already emphasized that something *is* proved thereby; namely, that the amplitude of the audible frequency current in the telephone receivers is the *only* criterion for amplification. This fact would seem to be beyond question, but Mr. Cohen refuses to admit it. Instead, he speaks of "the effect on the detector," as tho "the effect on the detector" were in some way connected with the operator's auditory nerve and thereby directly involved in the reception of signals. It is the conversion of electrical energy associated with the audible frequency telephone current into mechanical energy in the receiver, and not "the effect on the detector" which produces the signal. Mr. Cohen's discussion of "the effect on the detector" is meaningless.

It might be pointed out, furthermore, that the two versions of his theory presented by Mr. Cohen are contradictory; in the first version it is the first power of the amplitude, in the second it is the square of the amplitude, whose variation is determinative of the amplification. But further discussion on this point is unnecessary.

In concluding his remarks, Mr. Cohen states that "the same amplification is obtained whatever the beat frequency within the range of audibility." Doubtless he is referring here to the case where the received note is far from musical, so that a change in the beat frequency produces very little change in the pitch. If he refers to the case where the received note is musical, how can Mr. Cohen reconcile his remark with the well-known fact that the efficiency of the telephone receiver is very much greater at the frequency of mechanical resonance than at frequencies differing widely therefrom. And furthermore, if the received note is far from musical, does Mr. Cohen include the circumstance as one of the *favorable* ones under which amplifications of 20 to 50 times are obtained? Rather than discuss this point further, I shall conclude by quoting from Dr. Austin's paper on "Quantitative Experiments in Radio-Telegraphic Transmission" ("Bulletin of Bureau of Standards,"

Digitized by Google

April 1, 1914, page 84): "*The reports indicate that the heterodyne is somewhat more sensitive than the slipping contact, but that the difference is not very great.*" (The italics are mine.)

(The discussion on this paper is left open till the date of publication of the September issue of the PROCEEDINGS. Members desiring to contribute thereto are invited to do so.—EDITOR.)

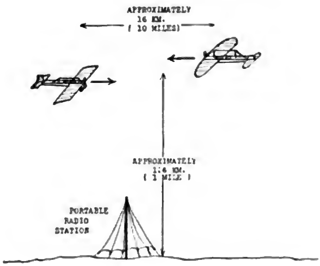
Digitized by Google

RADIO COMMUNICATION WITH AEROPLANES

(The following is a portion of a communication to the Editor by Mr. Robert A. Fliess. It is of interest in that it outlines one of the important problems of communication with aeroplanes.)

The complete solution of the problem of directing an aeroplane by radio transmission will have arrived only when the pilot or observer on the aeroplane is enabled to maintain constant intercommunication with the headquarters radio station, even when at great heights and at considerable distances from that station.

So far it has been found difficult to send radio messages with any degree of certainty more than approximately 50 kilometers (30 miles); while the reception of messages by the observer or pilot has been limited to even shorter distances.



The accompanying diagram shows a problem suggested by Colonel Mortimer Delano for solution by the Institute membership. It points out a definite line of experiments. Briefly, the problem may be stated thus: An aeroplane is to be enabled to signal to another one, while both are in full flight; and it also is to be in communication with a headquarters radio station. The limitation of the problem is that the antenna is not to be dropped from the aeroplane, tho aerials may be carried on the planes.

Digitized by Google

VOLUME 3 SEPTEMBER, 1915 NUMBER 3

PROCEEDINGS

of

The Institute of Radio Engineers

(INCORPORATED)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

MATTERS RELATING TO
THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS

TECHNICAL PAPERS AND DISCUSSIONS

EDITED BY
ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, Ph.D.

PUBLISHED QUARTERLY BY
THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, INC.
ONE HUNDRED AND ELEVEN BROADWAY
NEW YORK

THE TABLE OF CONTENTS FOLLOWS ON PAGE 209

Digitized by Google

GENERAL INFORMATION

The right to reprint limited portions or abstracts of the articles, discussions, or editorial notes in the Proceedings is granted on the express condition that specific reference shall be made to the source of such material. Diagrams and photographs in the Proceedings may not be reproduced without securing permission to do so from the Institute thru the Editor.

Those desiring to present original papers before the Institute of Radio Engineers are invited to submit their manuscript to the Editor.

Manuscripts and letters bearing on the Proceedings should be sent to Alfred N. Goldsmith, Editor of Publications, The College of the City of New York, New York.

Requests for additional copies of the Proceedings and communications dealing with Institute matters in general should be addressed to the Secretary, The Institute of Radio Engineers, 111 Broadway, New York.

The Proceedings of the Institute are published quarterly and contain the papers and the discussions thereon as presented at the meetings in New York, Washington, Boston or Seattle.

Payment of the annual dues by a member entitles him to one copy of each number of the Proceedings issued during the period of his membership. Members may purchase, when available, copies of the Proceedings issued prior to their election at 75 cents each.

Subscriptions to the Proceedings are received from non-members at the rate of $1.00 per copy or $4.00 per year. To foreign countries the rates are $1.25 per copy or $5.00 per year. A discount of 25 per cent. is allowed to libraries and booksellers. The English distributing agency is "The Electrician Printing and Publishing Company," Fleet Street, London, E. C.

Members presenting papers before the Institute are entitled to ten copies of the paper and of the discussion. Arrangements for the purchase of reprints of separate papers can be made thru the Editor.

It is understood that the statements and opinions given in the Proceedings are the views of the individual members to whom they are credited, and are not binding on the membership of the Institute as a whole.

Copyright, 1915, by
THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, inc.
One Hundred and Eleven Broadway
New York, N. Y.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS AND BOARD OF DIRECTION, 1915

(Terms expire January 5, 1916; except as otherwise noted.)

PRESIDENT

John Stone Stone

VICE-PRESIDENT

George W. Pierce

TREASURER

Warren F. Hubley

SECRETARY

David Sarnoff

EDITOR OF PUBLICATIONS

Alfred N. Goldsmith

MANAGERS

(Serving till January 2, 1918.)

Louis W. Austin

John Hays Hammond, Jr.

(Serving till January 3, 1917.)

Robert H. Marriott

Guy Hill

(Serving till January 5, 1916.)

George S. Davis

Roy A. Weagant

Emil J. Simon

John L. Hogan, Jr.

Lloyd Espenschied

ADVERTISING MANAGER

Louis G. Pacent

PAST-PRESIDENTS

SOCIETY OF WIRELESS TELEGRAPH ENGINEERS

John Stone Stone, 1907-8

Lee de Forest, 1909-10

Fritz Lowenstein, 1911-12

THE WIRELESS INSTITUTE

Robert H. Marriott, 1909-10-11-12

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS

Robert H. Marriott, 1912

Greenleaf W. Pickard, 1913

Louis W. Austin, 1914

Digitized by Google

STANDING COMMITTEES

1915

COMMITTEE ON STANDARDIZATION

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, *Chairman*, College of the City of New York,	New York
LOUIS W. AUSTIN	Washington, D. C.
LOUIS COHEN	Washington, D. C.
JAMES ERSKINE-MURRAY	London, England
JOHN L. HOGAN, Jr.	New York
GUY HILL	New York
LESTER ISRAEL, *Secretary*	New York
ARTHUR E. KENNELLY	Cambridge, Mass.
FREDERICK A. KOLSTER	Washington, D. C.
ROBERT H. MARRIOTT	Seattle, Wash.
GREENLEAF W. PICKARD	Boston, Mass.
GEORGE W. PIERCE	Cambridge, Mass.
EMIL J. SIMON	New York
CHARLES H. TAYLOR	New York
C. TISSOT	Paris, France
ROY A. WEAGANT	Aldene, N. J.
JONATHAN ZENNECK	Munich, Germany
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON PAPERS

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, *Chairman*, College of the City of New York,	New York
LOUIS W. AUSTIN	Washington, D. C.
JOHN L. HOGAN, Jr.	New York
ARTHUR E. KENNELLY	Cambridge, Mass.
ROBERT H. MARRIOTT	Seattle, Wash.
ROBERT B. WOOLVERTON	San Francisco, Cal.
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON PUBLICITY

JOHN L. HOGAN, JR., *Chairman*	New York
GEORGE S. DAVIS	New York
ROBERT H. MARRIOTT	Seattle, Wash.
DAVID SARNOFF	New York
EMIL J. SIMON	New York
ROBERT B. WOOLVERTON	San Francisco, Cal.
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

Digitized by Google

COMMITTEE ON FINANCE

Alfred N. Goldsmith, *Chairman*, College of the City of New York,	New York
Guy Hill	New York
John L. Hogan, Jr.	New York
Roy A. Weagant	Aldene, N. J.
John Stone Stone, *ex-officio*	New York

SPECIAL COMMITTEES

COMMITTEE ON SAN FRANCISCO REPRESENTATION

Robert B. Woolverton, *Chairman*	San Francisco, Cal.
John L. Hogan, Jr.	New York
Robert H. Marriott	Seattle, Wash.
David Sarnoff	New York
John Stone Stone, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON FORMATION OF SEATTLE SECTION

Robert H. Marriott, *Chairman*	Seattle, Wash.
Frederick G. Simpson	Seattle, Wash.
Roy A. Thompson	Seattle, Wash.
John Stone Stone, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENTS

John L. Hogan, Jr., *Chairman*	New York
Warren F. Hubley	Newark, N. J.
David Sarnoff	New York
John Stone Stone, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON 1915 FINANCIAL MATTERS

Warren F. Hubley, *Chairman*	Newark, N. J.
John L. Hogan, Jr.	New York
David Sarnoff	New York
John Stone Stone, *ex-officio*	New York

Digitized by Google

PROCEEDINGS OF THE BOSTON SECTION OF THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS

On the evening of Thursday, October 29th, 1914, Professor George W. Pierce, Vice-President of the Institute, read a paper on "Gaseous Detectors" at the Jefferson Physical Laboratory, Harvard University.

On Thursday, December 3rd, 1914, a paper entitled "Radio Frequency Changers" by Dr. Alfred N. Goldsmith was read at the Jefferson Physical Laboratory.

On Thursday, January 28th, 1915, a paper entitled "Seasonal Variation in the Strength of Radiotelegraphic Signals" by Dr. Louis W. Austin was read at the Jefferson Physical Laboratory. A second paper: "Wooden Lattice Masts" by Mr. Cyril F. Elwell, was also read. Professor George W. Pierce gave an experimental demonstration of electric radiation at short wave lengths.

On Thursday, February 25th, 1915, Mr. Melville Eastham, Secretary of the Boston Section of the Institute, presented a paper on "Inductances and Oscillation Transformers," in the Cruft High Tension Laboratory, Harvard University.

On Thursday, March 25th, 1915, Mr. Fulton Cutting presented a paper dealing with "Data on Transformer Design in Radiotelegraphy"; and Professor Charles A. Culver read a paper entitled "Notes on Radio Transmission without Elevated Wires," in the Cruft High Tension Laboratory.

On Thursday, April 29th, 1915, Mr. C. Nusbaum presented a paper on "Eddy Current and Hysteresis Losses in Iron at High Frequencies" in the Cruft High Tension Laboratory. There was also read a paper by Mr. Edwin H. Armstrong entitled "Some Recent Developments in the Audion Receiver."

Digitized by Google

SOME RECENT DEVELOPMENTS IN THE AUDION RECEIVER[1]

By

Edwin H. Armstrong

THE AUDION AS DETECTOR AND AMPLIFIER

The fundamental operating characteristic of the audion is the relation between the wing current and the potential of the grid with respect to the filament—say the negative terminal of the filament. Such a characteristic is shown in Figure 1, and

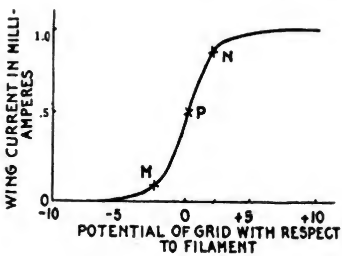


Figure 1

from it we see that a positive charge placed on the grid produces an increase in the wing current, and that a negative charge placed on the grid produces a decrease in the wing current. When the audion is used as an amplifier, and an alternating e. m. f. is impressed between the grid and the filament, the continuous current of the wing circuit will be varied in accordance

[1] Delivered before The Institute of Radio Engineers, New York, March 3, 1915, and before the Boston Section, April 29, 1915.

(The introductory material of this paper was originally submitted as a discussion by letter on Haraden Pratt's paper, "Long Range Reception with Combined Crystal Rectifier and Audion Amplifier." The first six figures have been kindly lent by the "Electrical World"; the remaining figures and text are herewith published for the first time.)

Digitized by Google

with the characteristic of Figure 1, producing on the continuous current a superimposed a. c. wave in phase with and of the same frequency as the impressed e. m. f. Diagrammatically this action is shown in Figure 2.

The action of the audion as a detector of radio frequency oscillations is very different from its action as a simple amplifier. Some form of connection must be used, such that the effect of a

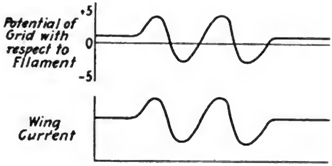


FIGURE 2

group of radio frequency oscillations in the grid circuit of the audion is translated into a single audio frequency variation of the current in the telephones. The usual method is to make use of the valve action between the hot and cold electrodes at low pressures, and the connection used to do this is shown in Figure 3. In this method of connection there are two distinct

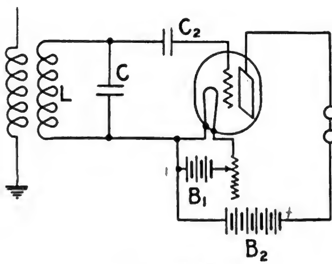


FIGURE 3

actions; one rectifying and the other amplifying. The closed oscillation circuit: LC, filament, grid, and condenser C_2, behaves exactly as a Fleming valve receiver, the incoming oscillations being rectified between the grid and filament and the rectified current being used to charge the condenser C_2 (the side connected to the grid being of course negative). The negatively

Digitized by Google

charged grid then exerts a relay action on the wing current, decreasing it; the wing current returning to its normal value as the charge in the grid condenser leaks off by way of the grid and the grid resumes its normal potential. If the audion is properly constructed, the relay action results in an amplification of the energy available for use in the telephones over that which would be available in a simple rectifier. Figure 4 indicates the features of the valve method of detection.

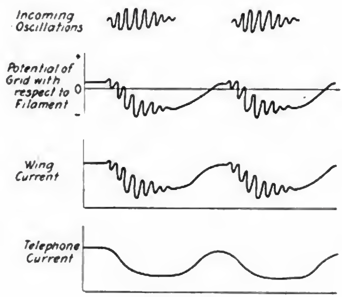


FIGURE 4

Working in conjunction with Professor Morecroft, I have recently secured oscillograms which confirm the explanations already advanced and these oscillograms and the means by which they were obtained are herewith shown in Figures 5, 6 and 7.

FIGURE 5

Digitized by Google

It will be seen, therefore, that using the audion as a detector of radio frequency oscillations, it has been shown that in addition to operating as a rectifier it simultaneously acts as a

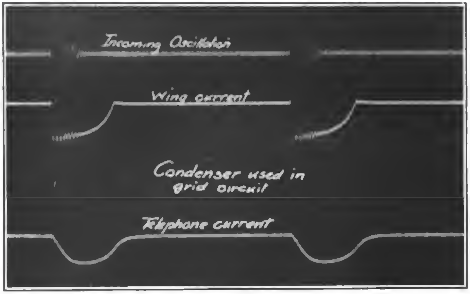


FIGURE 6

repeater of the radio frequencies; so that oscillations in the grid circuit set up oscillations of similar character in the wing circuit of the audion. In the ordinary detector system no use

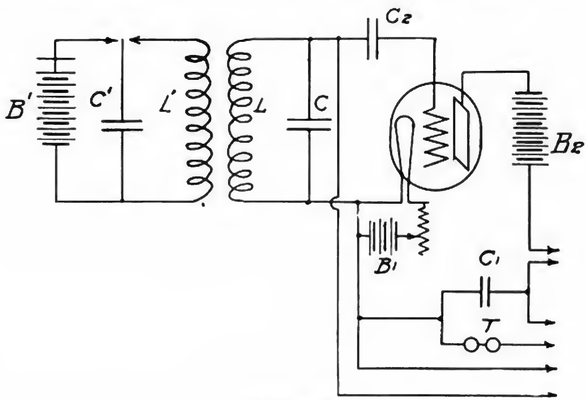


FIGURE 7

is made of the repeating action, and it is the purpose of the present paper to show that it may be turned to account to produce improvements in the reception of signals which com-

Digitized by Google

pletely overshadow any of the particular advantages of the audion when used as a simple detector. The ordinary detector circuit is illustrated by Figure 3 and the phenomena present therein may be summed up diagrammatically by the curves of Figure 4. It will be seen from these that the radio frequency oscillations present in the wing circuit of Figure 3 with the ordinary audion are necessarily small and also that they are of no value in producing a response in the telephones; but by providing means for increasing their amplitude and means for utilizing them to reinforce the oscillations of the grid circuit, it becomes possible to produce some very remarkable results.

REINFORCEMENT OF RADIO FREQUENCY OSCILLATIONS BY THE AUDION

There are two ways of reinforcing the oscillations of the grid circuit by means of those in the wing circuit. The simplest way perhaps is to couple the two circuits together in the manner shown in Figure 8. This is essentially the same as Figure 3, but

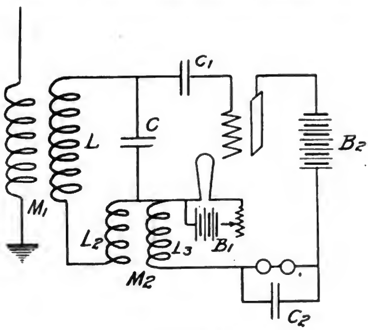


FIGURE 8

modified by the introduction of the inductively coupled coils L_2 and L_3 in the grid and wing circuits respectively and by the condenser C_2 which forms a path of low impedance across the telephones for the radio frequencies. In such a system, incoming signals set up oscillations in the grid circuit which repeat into the wing circuit producing variations in the continuous current, the energy of which is supplied by the battery B_2. By means of the coupling M_2, some of this energy of the wing oscillations is transferred back to the grid circuit, and the

Digitized by Google

amplitude of the grid oscillations thereby increased. The amplified grid oscillations then react on the wing circuit by means of the grid to produce larger variations in the wing current, thus still further reinforcing the oscillations of the system. Simultaneously with this procedure the regular detecting action goes on; the condenser C_1 is charged in the usual way, but accumulates a charge which is proportional, not to the original signal strength but to the final amplitude of the oscillations in the grid circuit. The result is an increased response in the telephone proportional to the energy amplification of the original oscillations in the grid circuit. It will be observed from the operating characteristic (the relation between grid potential and wing current), that the amplitude of the variation in the wing current is directly dependent on the variation of the grid potential. This indicates that the grid circuit should be made up of large inductance and small capacity to obtain the maximum voltage which it is possible to impress on the grid. For moderate wave lengths the tuning condenser C of the grid circuit may be omitted altogether and the capacity of the audion alone used to tune the circuit. For long wave lengths, the distributed capacity of the grid circuit inductance becomes so high with respect to the capacity of the audion that better results are obtained by the use of a tuning condenser to fix definitely the points of maximum potential difference across the grid and filament of the audion.

In the second method of reinforcing the oscillations of the grid circuit the wing circuit of the audion is tuned by means of an inductance introduced as shown by Figure 9. This differs

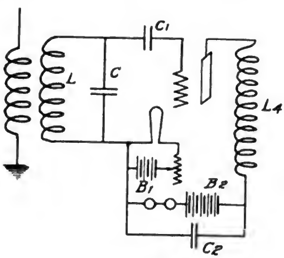


FIGURE 9

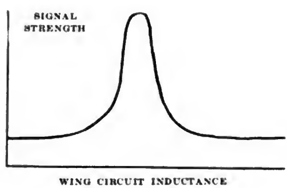


FIGURE 10

from the ordinary detector circuit of Figure 3 by the addition of the coil L_4 and the condenser C_2. The manner in which the

Digitized by Google

grid oscillations are amplified may best be understood by the following analysis. With no oscillations in the system, the potential difference between filament and wing will be approximately the voltage of the battery B_2, but when oscillations are set up in the grid circuit, causing radio frequency variations of the wing current, the potential of the wing with respect to the filament varies as the reactance voltage of the wing inductance alternately adds to and subtracts from the voltage of the battery. When a negative capacity charge is placed on the grid, the wing current will be reduced and the direction of the reactance voltage of the wing inductance will therefore be the same as the voltage of the battery B_2. The reactance voltage will therefore add to the battery voltage and the difference of potential between wing and filament and also between wing and grid will be increased. Similarly when a positive charge is placed on the grid the wing current is increased and the reactance voltage of the wing inductance opposes the battery voltage, producing a decrease in the potential difference between grid and wing. Hence, supposing a negative capacity charge is placed on the grid, the tendency of the corresponding increase in the potential of the wing with respect to the grid will be to draw more electrons out on the grid, thereby increasing the charge in the condenser formed by the wing and grid, the energy for supplying this charge being drawn from the wing inductance as the wing current decreases. The increased negative charge on the grid tends to produce a still further decrease in the wing current and a further discharge of energy from the wing inductance into the grid circuit. On the other hand, when a positive charge is placed on the grid, the potential difference between grid and wing is reduced and some of the energy stored in the capacity formed by them is given back to the wing inductance. During this part of the cycle, electrons are being drawn into the grid from the surrounding space to charge the grid condenser in accordance with the well known valve action, and this, in effect, is a conduction current, so that a withdrawal of energy from the circuit takes place. In spite of this withdrawal of energy, however, a well defined resonance phenomena between the audion capacity and the wing inductance is to be expected and in the reception of signals such is found to be the case. When the wing inductance is properly adjusted at the resonance frequency, energy from the wing circuit is transferred freely to the grid circuit and oscillations build up therein and are rectified in the usual way.

Digitized by Google

A curve showing the general relation between signal strength and value of wing inductance is shown in Figure 10, the circuits used being those of Figure 9. As the capacity of the audion is the main means of transferring energy from the wing to the grid circuit, best results are obtained when the condenser C is very small. On account of the very small capacity of the audion, the effectiveness of this method of tuning is more pronounced at the higher frequencies, but by the use of a shunt condenser across the inductance of the wing circuit very good amplification is secured on frequencies as low as 30,000 cycles (10,000 meters wave length). The best results, however, are obtained with some combination of coupling and wing circuit tuning, as il-

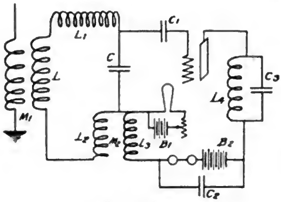


Figure 11

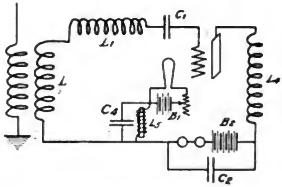


Figure 12

lustrated in Figure 11. Other methods of coupling may be employed between the grid and wing circuits, electrostatic and direct magnetic couplings being illustrated in Figures 12 and 13. The arrangement of Figure 13 operates in the same way as the system with the two coil coupling; but the electrostatic coupling

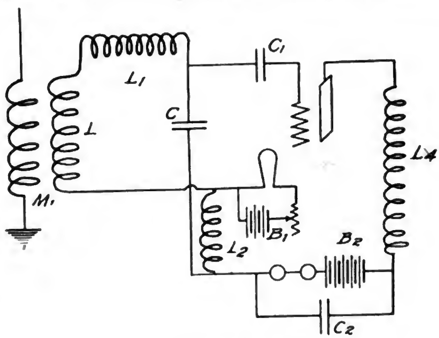


Figure 13

of Figure 12 works in an odd way. It is necessary, in this connection, to complete the wing circuit for the continuous current of the battery and this is done by shunting the coupling condenser C_4 by a coil of high inductance. The continuous current of the wing circuit flows thru this coil and C_4 provides a path of low impedance around this coil for the radio frequency oscillations of both grid and wing circuits. When a positive charge is placed on the grid, an increase in the wing current results, the alternating component of the wing current charging the condenser C_4 and the sum of the currents passing thru C_4 and L_4 equalling the current thru the audion. When a negative charge is placed on the grid the current thru the audion is reduced and the inductance L_5 discharged into the condenser shunted across it, charging it in the opposite way to that caused by the increase in the wing current. In both cases, C_4 then discharges thru the grid circuit reinforcing the oscillations therein.

AUDIO FREQUENCY AMPLIFICATION

It is possible to combine with any of these systems a system of audio frequency circuits which amplify the telephone current in exactly the same manner as the radio frequency oscillations are amplified, and such a system is shown in Figure 14. Here M_2

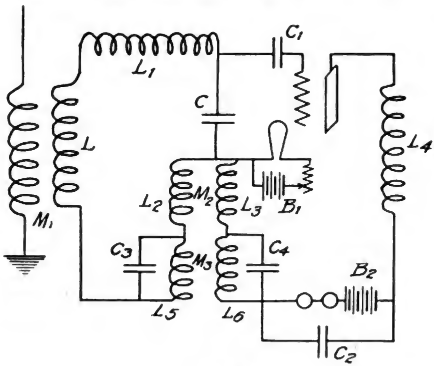


FIGURE 14

represents the coupling for the radio frequencies and the coils are of relatively small inductance. M_3 is the coupling for the audio frequencies, and the transformer is made up of coils having an inductance of the order of a henry or more. The condensers C_3 and

C_4 have the double purpose of tuning M_3 to the audio frequency, and of by-passing the radio frequencies. The total amplification of weak signals by this combination is about 100 times, with the ordinary audion bulb. On stronger signals, the amplification becomes smaller as the limit of the audion's response is reached.

THE AUDION AS A GENERATOR AND BEAT RECEIVER

Any repeater, which is also an energy amplifier, may be used to produce continuous oscillations by transferring part of the energy in the circuit containing the battery back to the controlling circuit to keep the latter continuously excited. By providing a close enough coupling between the grid and wing circuits, sufficient energy is supplied to the grid circuit to keep it in continuous oscillation, and as a consequence thereof oscillations of similar frequency exist in all parts of the system. The frequency of these oscillations is approximately that of the closed grid circuit if the tuning condenser of that circuit is large with respect to the capacity of the audion. If this capacity is small, then the wing circuit will exert a greater influence on the frequency of the system, and it will not approach that of the grid circuit so closely. When such a system of circuits is in oscillation, it has been found possible not only to receive continu-

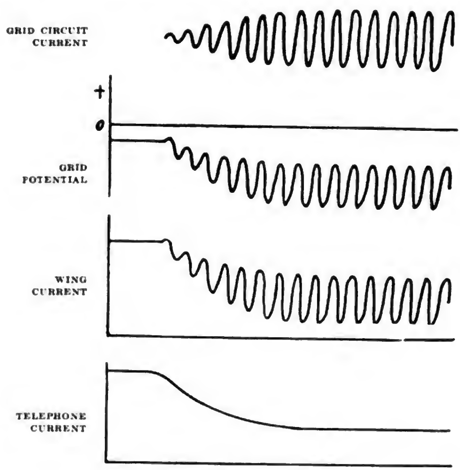


FIGURE 15

ous waves by means of the beat method but also very greatly to amplify them as well.

The phenomena involved may best be understood by reference to Figures 15 and 16, which show the relation between wing

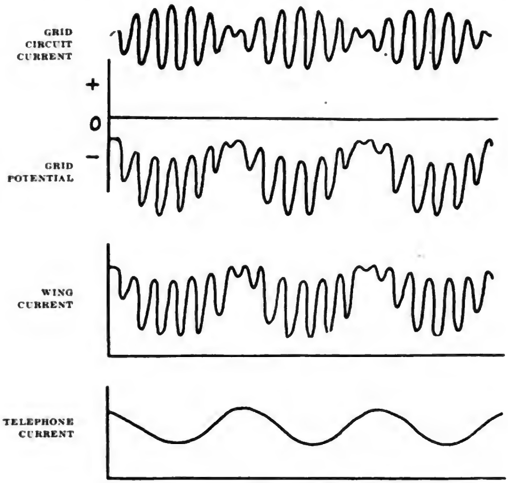


FIGURE 16

current and time at the beginning of oscillation. When the audion begins generating, the grid oscillations are continuously rectified to charge the grid condenser, and this charge continuously leaks off either by way of the grid or by means of a special high resistance placed in shunt with the condenser. As the negative charge builds up in the grid condenser, it decreases the average value of the continuous current component of the wing current and therefore limits the amplitude of the oscillations of the grid circuit until a point is finally reached where the rate at which electricity is supplied to the grid condenser is just equal to the rate at which it leaks off. Consider now the effect on the system of an incoming continuous wave having a frequency slightly different from the frequency of the local oscillations. The presence of the local oscillations will not in any way interfere with the amplifying powers of the system and the incoming oscillations will build up in exactly the same manner as for the

Digitized by Google

non-oscillating state but to a greater degree because of the closer grid and wing coupling. Simultaneously with the amplifying of the incoming wave, beats are produced between the local and the signalling currents, the effect being alternately to increase and decrease the amplitude of the oscillations in the system. From Figure 15 it will be apparent that when this steady state is reached an increase in the amplitude of the grid oscillations by any means whatever will increase the negative charge in the grid condenser, producing a decrease in the average value of the wing current and hence a decrease in the telephone current. On the other hand, a decrease in the amplitude of the oscillations will allow some of the negative charge in the grid condenser to leak off and thereby permit an increase in the telephone current. Hence, when incoming and local oscillations add up, the negative charge in the grid condenser is increased and a decrease in the telephone current results. When the two frequencies are opposed, some of the charge in the grid condenser leaks off and an increase in the telephone current occurs. The result is the production in the telephones of an alternating current having a frequency equal to the difference in the frequencies of the local and incoming oscillations and having the very important property of being almost simple harmonic. Figure 16 illustrates the characteristics of this method of reception. The complete phenomena may be summed up as follows. Incoming oscillations are simultaneously amplified and combined in the system to produce beats with a local oscillation continuously maintained by the audion. The radio frequency beats are then rectified by the audion to charge the grid and the grid condenser, and this charge varies the electron current to produce an amplifying action on the current in the telephones.

When the grid condenser is omitted, the beat phenomenon is slightly modified, and the audio frequency variation ot the telephone current is produced according to the asymmetric action outlined in a previous publication dealing with the operating features of the audion. The system is more sensitive with the grid condenser, but the same general result is obtained by either method of reception.

PECULIAR FEATURES OF OSCILLATION

Some very interesting features of operation accompany the production of oscillations in the system. Suppose the audion is not oscillating, and the grid and wing coupling is fairly weak. As this coupling is increased, the point at which oscillations

Digitized by Google

begin is indicated by a faint click in the telephones accompanied by a slight change in the character of the static. The oscillations produced are usually so high in frequency and constant in amplitude that they are entirely inaudible. As the coupling is still further increased, a rough note is heard in the telephones the pitch decreasing with increase of coupling. This note is produced by the breaking up of the oscillations into groups, and it occurs whenever electricity is supplied to the grid condenser at a greater rate than that at which it can leak off. The result is that the grid is periodically charged to a negative potential sufficient to cut off entirely the wing current, causing a stoppage of the local oscillations until the grid charge leaks off and the wing current re-establishes itself. The frequency of this interruption depends largely on the capacity of the grid condenser, the resistance of its leakage path, and the amplitude of the local oscillations; and it may be varied from several hundred down to one or less per second. This effect is sometimes troublesome in the reception of signals, especially with high vacuum tubes. It may be eliminated, however, by increasing the leak of the grid condenser by means of a high resistance shunt. The best coupling for receiving continuous waves lies somewhere between the point at which oscillations start and the point at which interruption begins, and can only be determined by trial. In this region, trouble is sometimes experienced by the appearance of a smooth musical note in the telephones. This occurs under certain critical conditions of coupling with the antenna when the grid circuit oscillates with two degrees of freedom. Two slightly different frequencies are therefore set up, producing beats which are rectified by the audion in the usual way. This effect is quite critical, and when it causes

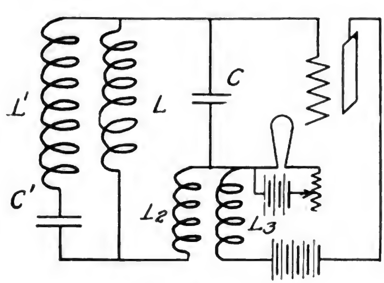


FIGURE 17

Digitized by Google

interference with signals, a slight readjustment of the circuits will usually make it disappear. It may, however, be made perfectly steady and reproduced at will by the system shown in Figure 17, where two grid circuits of different periods are provided. Two frequencies are therefore generated one having the frequency of the circuit LCL_2, and the other the frequency of the circuit $L'C'L_2C$. This arrangement may replace to advantage the ordinary buzzer for producing groups of oscillations. **The foregoing explanations refer to the audion only when it is used as an electron relay.* When there is an appreciable amount of gas, in the tube in the ionized state, disturbances of an entirely different character occur.**

AUDIO FREQUENCY TUNING

One of the very important advantages of the receiver when used for continuous waves is that the alternating current produced in the telephones is almost a pure sine wave. Only when the audio frequency is simple harmonic can selectivity be obtained by tuning the telephone circuit. A distorted wave such as that produced by spark signals possesses many harmonics and as each may be picked out by the tuned telephone circuit there is little chance of separating two spark signals by audio frequency tuning. With continuous waves, however, the pure wave produced by the beat method of reception makes it possible to obtain selectivity by the audio frequency tuning, resonance

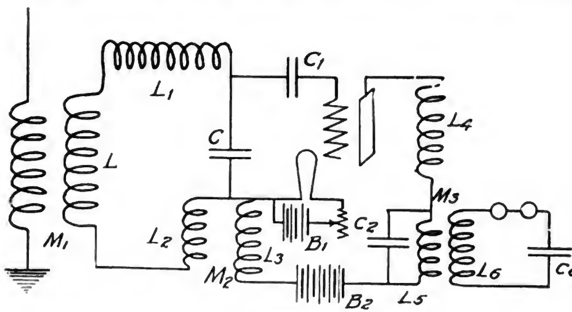


FIGURE 18

* "Electrical World," December 12, 1914; and also discussion in "London Electrician," between Reisz and de Forest on the difference between electron and gas relays. (February 6, 1914, page 726; March 13, 1914, page 956; June 12, 1914, page 402; July 3, 1914, page 538; and July 31, 1914, page 702.—EDITOR.)

Digitized by Google

being fully as sharp as in the radio frequency circuits. Two methods of audio frequency tuning are shown in Figures 18 and 19. In Figure 18, the telephone is inductively connected to the wing circuit of the audion by means of a transformer the secondary of which includes besides the telephone a tuning condenser.

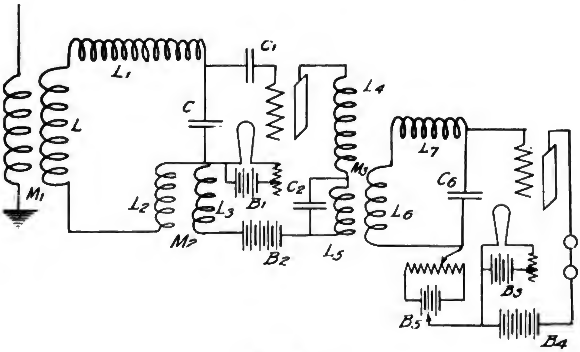


FIGURE 19

In this connection, the telephone, with a resistance of many thousand ohms, is placed directly in the tuned audio frequency circuit, and hence for good tuning the inductance of the coil L_6 must be made extremely large to secure the necessary ratio of the reactance of L_6 to the resistance of the circuit. This disadvantage is overcome in the system of Figure 19 by removing the telephones from the audio frequency circuit, and using the latter to operate a second audion. The telephones may then be placed in the wing circuit of this audion without adding appreciably to the damping of the circuit. The tuning of the circuit L_6C_6 may therefore be made very sharp with reasonable values of inductance simply by keeping the resistance low. In this case considerable amplification is obtained by the use of resonance in the transformer M_3 to increase the voltage impressed on the grid of the second audion. The great advantage of this kind of tuning is shown by the following example. Suppose the incoming signal has a frequency of 50,000 cycles, and the local frequency is 49,000 cycles. The differential frequency is 1,000, and the audio frequency circuit is tuned accordingly. An interfering wave 1 per cent. shorter than the signalling wave, or 49,500 cycles, will produce an audio frequency of 500 cycles per second,

Digitized by Google

which will not appear at all in the wing circuit of the second audion unless it is many times stronger than the 1,000 cycle signal. This combination of radio and audio frequency tuning is too selective for use at the present time even when the sending station is equipped with an alternator, as the slight changes in frequency of the radiated wave produce changes in the beat frequency of the receiver which carry it out of range for the sharply tuned audio frequency circuit. A disadvantage of this method of tuning is that atmospheric disturbances produce a musical note due to shock excitation of the audio frequency system. Very loose coupling with the wing circuit of the first audion is a partial remedy for this. There are times, however, when interference is more troublesome than static and in such cases the method may be used to great advantages. If desired, both radio and audio frequency tuning can be carried out in the same audion as indicated in Figure 14. This combination is apt to be somewhat troublesome to operate as a cumulative amplification is obtained in the audio frequency as well as in the radio frequency system.

CASCADE SYSTEMS

Where a greater amplification than can be obtained with one audion is required, cascade working of the radio frequency systems may be resorted to by coupling together two or more audion systems, each connected as already described, in the manner indicated in Figure 19. The incoming oscillations in the first audion system are amplified in the usual manner and

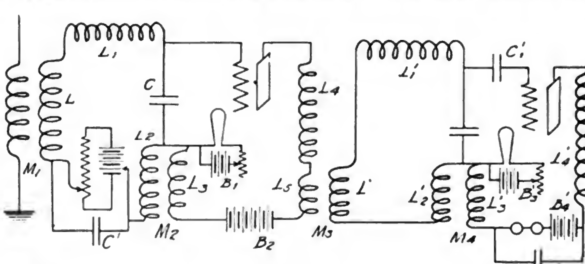


FIGURE 20

set up oscillations in the second system by means of the coupling M_3 (See Figure 20). The oscillations initially set up in the second system are again amplified, and then rectified in the second audion to produce audible response in the telephones.

Digitized by Google

For the reception of spark signals, considerable adjustment is required to get the best results without causing one or the other or both of the systems to generate oscillations. It will be found that after the first circuit is adjusted to the point of oscillation and the second is coupled with it, the strength of signal in the first system will be reduced owing to the withdrawal of energy from it by the second system. The signals may then be again brought up in strength by increasing the coupling between the grid and wing circuits of the first audion until the appearance of the local oscillations indicates that the limit of amplification has been reached. By careful adjustment about a thousand times amplification and very sharp tuning can be obtained with two steps.

For continuous wave reception, there are several methods of operating cascade systems. It is possible to have either system generate oscillations, the other system acting simply as an amplifier or both systems may be made to generate in synchronism. It will generally be found that when both systems produce oscillations, beats will be produced, so that a continuous note is heard in the telephones; but by adjusting the frequency of one of the systems the pitch of this note will be reduced as the two systems approach synchronism, until finally at one or two hundred beats per second the two systems pull into step in much the same way as two alternators. The ability of the two systems to keep in step depends mainly on the value of the coupling between them, and the closer this is the better the two hold together. There is still another way of working this combination, and that is asynchronously. In this case beats are continuously produced in the system so that a continuous note is heard in the telephone, but the circuits may be so adjusted that the note is not loud enough to be troublesome or it may be tuned out of the telephone in the manner previously described. Incoming oscillations are combined in the system to produce beats with the beats already present so that a rather curious note is heard. Very good amplification is secured by this method though naturally the system is troublesome to operate.

It may be noted here that whenever a signal is too weak to read with one audion system and cascade operation becomes necessary, it is always better practice to use the cascade circuits for the radio frequencies, even if the regenerative circuits are not employed with each individual audion system. The frequency of the oscillations set up in the circuits by static are,

Digitized by Google

under normal conditions, the same as those of the incoming signal; and the static is therefore never amplified more than the signal. Usually it is amplified to a somewhat lesser extent, especially if regenerative circuits are employed. In the cascade systems used for audio frequencies, a different condition exists. It is ordinary practice to connect the different stages by means of transformers, and this leads to conditions which cause the system to produce greater amplifications of the higher frequencies. The rate of change of the wing current of the detecting audion produced by static corresponds to a very high frequency, and as such is invariably amplified to a greater extent than the signal.

There is a second method of receiving continuous oscillations which makes use of the generating feature of the audion, but does not employ the beat phenomena. The amplifying ratio of the audion depends more or less directly on the value of the wing current, and by varying this current periodically there will be a corresponding periodic change in the amplifying power of the audion. Hence an audion arranged to repeat a continuous wave under such conditions will produce in its wing circuit oscillations which vary periodically in amplitude, and which may therefore be received by a simple audion system. The first audion may be arranged to produce the necessary variation in its amplifying power in the manner indicated in Figure 21, which also

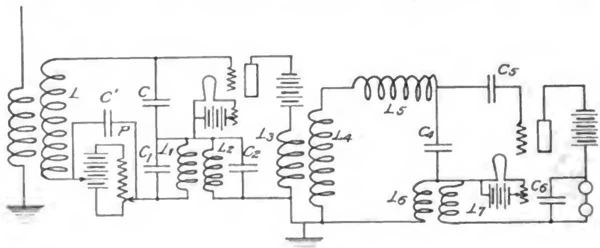


FIGURE 21

shows the complete circuits for carrying out this method of reception. Here $C_1L_1L_2C_2$ is an audio frequency system designed to produce audio frequency oscillations; and P is a potentiometer for adjusting the potential of the grid so that on the negative part of the oscillation in the wing circuit, the wing current is reduced practically to zero. The radio frequency

Digitized by Google

circuit $C'L\ C\ C_1$ is tuned to the oscillation frequency of the incoming wave. The radio frequency oscillations cannot be detected in the first audion system as the strong audio frequency current circulating in this system would produce a continuous note in the telephone receivers of such strength as to render inaudible all save very strong signals. By arranging to detect the oscillations in a second audion system coupled to the wing circuit of the first, interference of this sort is avoided; as the circuit $L_4\ C_4$ has a very high impedance for the audio frequency currents and the effect produced thru the magnetic coupling of L_3 and L_4 on the second system is negligible. The capacity current between these two coils thru the telephones to ground is, however, appreciable; and to avoid it it is advisable to ground their two adjacent ends as shown. The action of the system may be summed up as follows. The first audion system varies the amplitude of the incoming radio frequency oscillations at an audio frequency, and the second audion system amplifies and detects the radio frequency oscillations supplied to it by the first system. Diagrammatically, the phenomena occurring are as illustrated in Figure 22. The system gives about the same

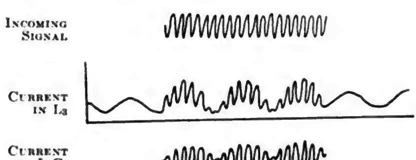


FIGURE 22

response as can be obtained with a single audion working with the beat method of reception. The advantages derived from the heterodyne method of amplification and the dependence of the audio frequency note in the receivers on the wave length are, of course, lacking; but for the reception of waves having a frequency higher than that at which beat reception is practicable, this method is of value.

EFFECTS OF ATMOSPHERIC DISTURBANCES

A very interesting feature of these receiving systems is their behavior under conditions of severe atmospheric disturbances, particularly when used for receiving continuous waves. Their success under such conditions is due to the fact that they com-

Digitized by Google

bine in addition to their inherent property of responding more readily to a sustained wave than to a strongly damped one, the characteristics of the two most effective static eliminators known; the balanced valve and the heterodyne receiver. The function of the balanced valve is a physiological one, as it simply provides a means to shield the ear from the loud crashes which temporarily impair its sensitiveness for the relatively weak signals. In effect, it puts a limit on the noise which can be produced in the telephone by a stray, regardless of its amplitude. Now the effect of the static on an audion is to build up a negative charge on the grid, reducing the wing current, and the limit of the response which can be produced in the telephones is reached when the wing current is reduced to zero. Under ordinary conditions, this limit is too great to do much good; but when the audion is generating it is possible, by proper adjustment of the amplitude of the local oscillations, to reduce the wing current to a point just above the lower bend in the operating characteristic so that the audion is rendered insensitive to a further increase in the negative charge on the grid. The strays which cause serious interference are of a much greater amplitude than the local frequency, so that no appreciable interaction between the two takes place, and the wing current is invariably decreased. Since the decrease in the wing current is not in proportion to the change in the grid potential, the response in the telephone and the effect on the ear of the operator are correspondingly reduced. Static of smaller amplitude than the local oscillations may interact with them to produce either an increase or a decrease in amplitude of the oscillations in the grid circuit and may therefore cause either a decrease or an increase in the wing current. The wing current can, of course, increase to a relatively large value, but as it is impossible for the wing current to increase faster than the charge in the grid condenser can leak off, the rate of increase is necessarily slow. The response in the telephones is therefore not so disturbing as would be caused by a decrease of similar value where the rate of change of current is usually large.

When the system is operated without an auxiliary leak around the grid condenser, a peculiar paralysis of the audion is frequently caused by heavy static, no sound of any kind being heard in the telephones for a considerable length of time. If the apparatus is not touched, the paralysis may last for many minutes, and then suddenly disappear and the former sensitiveness be restored. The effect is primarily caused by the

Digitized by Google

charging of the grid condenser to a sufficient potential to cut off entirely the flow of electrons to the wing, thereby decreasing the wing current to zero. Now the way in which the negative charge in the grid condenser leaks off is chiefly by means of the positive ions in the tube, which are drawn into contact with the grid when it becomes negatively charged. These positive ions are the result of ionization by impact, and when the voltage of the wing battery is properly adjusted, they can be produced only in the region between the grid and the wing, since the velocity attained by the electrons between the filament and grid is very low. When the grid is charged to a high negative potential it keeps all the electrons between the grid and filament, thereby barring them from the region between grid and wing. Hence the production of positive ions must cease and the usual means of removing the negative charge from the grid vanishes. The resistance of the leakage path of the grid condenser must then be almost infinite, as is shown by the very long time taken for the charge to leak from a condenser of approximately 0.0001 microfarads capacity. The effect is naturally the more pronounced the higher the vacuum, as the number of positive ions present is correspondingly reduced. A resistance of several hundred thousand ohms placed across the grid condenser gives a leak which is independent of the value of the wing current and which effectually prevents trouble of this kind. With the very high vacua now obtainable by the use of a molecular pump, there are practically no positive ions present so that the auxiliary leak is always necessary. Under these conditions, it not only prevents paralysis by the static but it also removes from the grid condenser the excess of negative electricity which accumulates in it, thereby increasing the sensitiveness of the audion and the sharpness of the signals in the telephones. The very high potentials to which the grid condenser may be charged by the static when it is not provided with an auxiliary leak are surprising. These potentials may be measured in a very simple and accurate way, here described. After a stray has cut off the wing current, if we continuously increase the capacity of the grid condenser the potential across it, and hence the potential of the grid, with respect to the filament, will be decreased inversely as the capacity. A point will finally be reached where the grid potential is sufficiently reduced to allow the wing current to flow. When this occurs it indicates that the potential of the grid condenser is slightly less than that shown by the operating characteristic as necessary to

Digitized by Google

reduce the wing current to zero. The potential to which the grid condenser was originally charged is equal to th's voltage times the ratio of the capacity of the condenser at which the wing current began to flow to the original capacity. Voltages of over a hundred are not uncommonly reached by the grid; and as one volt represents a very strong signal, the difficulties of the static problem are very forcibly presented.

The fact that static of large amplitude produces almost invariably a decrease in the wing current while a signal (with beat reception) produces alternately an increase and decrease in the wing current is a circumstance of which it should be possible to take advantage. The circuits can be arranged to rectify the wing current in such a way that only the increases in this current are available to produce a response in the telephones, but in carrying this method out, trouble is experienced from a shifting zero. A better way of making use of the difference in response is the following one. Suppose that we arrange two complete receiving systems oscillating in step with each other, but so related to the antenna that the beat currents in the two systems are 180 degrees apart. The result of this will be that at the instant when the incoming signal is producing an increase of current thru the telephones in one receiver, it will be producing a decrease of current thru the telephones of the other receiver; so that the two telephone currents are 180 degrees out of phase. Static of large amplitude does not interact with the local frequencies, and will produce simultaneously in each receiver a decrease in the telephone current. These two currents are therefore in phase with each other. On replacing each telephone by the primary of a transformer, and connecting their secondaries thru a telephone in the proper phase, it is possible to balance out the static and at the same time secure an additive response of the signals from each receiver.

An arrangement of circuits by means of which this method can be carried out is shown in Figure 23. Here two oscillating receiving systems are kept in step by means of the circuits L_1 C_1 C_1' L_1'. L_1 C_1 and L_1' C_1' are identical, and each is tuned separately to the frequency to be received. When both audions are oscillating in step, the flow of current in these circuits as indicated by the vectors of Figure 23 will be alternately up on one side and down on the other. The point between the condenser C_1 and C_1' will be a node; and the antenna may be connected to this point without disturbing the conditions appreciably if a resistance R placed as indicated is included in the

antenna. This resistance need not be large enough to interfere seriously with the signal strength; it need only be large with respect to the resistance of the circuit L_1 C_1 C_1' L_1', which circuit has a very low resistance.

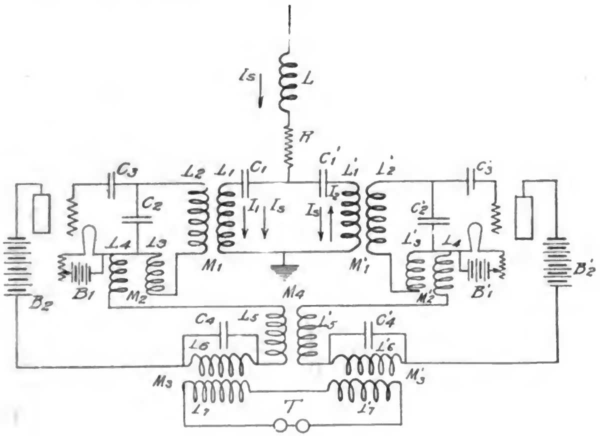


FIGURE 23

Incoming oscillations pass thru the divided circuit as indicated in the diagram, and therefore are in phase with the local oscillations of one receiver and 180 degrees out of phase with the local oscillations of the other. This produces the desired result in the currents thru the transformers of the circuit T which act in the manner already described.

It is found in practice that the oscillations set up in each system by the incoming signals tend to neutralize each other thru the circuit L_1 C_1 C_1' L_1'. This effect is avoided by introducing in the wing circuits a differential coupling arranged to neutralize the coupling between the two grid circuits. It is possible to do this, as it does not affect the coupling of either receiver with the antenna, and does not interfere with the local operation until the effective coupling between the two systems is reduced to a point below which they will no longer remain in step. There are other ways of securing the same result, but the system shown will illustrate the general procedure in carrying out this method of balancing.

The practical results obtainable with these receivers may perhaps be of interest. At the present time, signals from all high power stations from Eilvese (Germany) to Honolulu are heard day and night at Columbia University with a single audion receiver. Cascade systems give correspondingly better results, two stages being sufficient to make the night signals of Honolulu audible thruout the operating room. Interference with the signals from Nauen by the arc station at Newcastle, New Brunswick (Canada), is very easily eliminated by means of an audio frequency tuning circuit; and this is the most severe interference we have yet experienced, the two frequencies sometimes differing by less than 1 per cent. and the arc signals being much the stronger.

These receivers have been developed in the Research Laboratory of Electro-Mechanics, Columbia University; and are mainly the result of a proper understanding and interpretation of the key to the action of the audion; the grid potential-wing current curve. In conclusion, I want to point out that none of the methods of producing amplification or oscillation depend on a critical gas action; they depend solely on the relay action of the tube employed (electron or gas relay) and the proper arrangement of its controlling circuits.

SUMMARY: **The action of the audion as a detector and simple amplifier is explained, with the method of verification of the theory by means of oscillograms. To reinforce the oscillations in the grid circuit two methods are employed: first, to couple the grid circuit to the wing circuit and arrange the latter to permit radio frequency currents to pass freely in it; and second, to use a large inductance in the wing circuit, thereby tuning it to the incoming frequency (in conjunction with the capacity between the filament and wing in the audion itself). Both methods may be used together. Various methods of coupling grid and wing circuits are shown. Methods of combined audio and radio frequency amplification are described.**

The audion, being a generator of alternating current of any desired frequency, can be used as a beat receiver. A steady audion generator of regular groups of radio frequency oscillations is illustrated. Various methods of audio frequency tuning permitting high selectivity are possible. By the use of two audions in cascade, amplifications as high as 1,000 are attainable. The cascade systems can be arranged so as to operate both audions either synchronously or non-synchronously.

As an alternative to beat reception of sustained wave signals, an arrangement is explained wherein the amplifying ratio of a repeating audion is varied periodically at an audio frequency. Coupled to this system is a simple audion detector. Musical signals of any desired pitch are thus obtained.

It is found that static of large amplitude nearly always decreases the wing current, while a signal (with beat reception) alternately increases and decreases it. A system of circuits is described whereby this fact is taken advantage of in balancing out static while retaining an additive response to signals, thus effecting an elimination of static to a considerable extent.

Finally, instances of long distance stations received and interference overcome in practice are given.

Digitized by Google

DISCUSSION

Lee de Forest (by letter): Absence from New York and stress of business prevents my giving to Mr. Armstrong's paper the thoro discussion it merits from me.

Briefly, I must state that my investigation of the simple audion detector, the audion amplifier, and the "ultraudion" detector for undamped waves do not bear out completely the results and conclusions announced by that writer.

In the first place, anyone who has had considerable experience with numerous audion bulbs must admit that the behavior of different bulbs varies in many particulars, and to an astonishing degree. The wing potential-wing current curves for different bulbs, or even for the same bulb at different times, under differing conditions (filament temperature, etc.) vary widely.

What may appear to be a fixed law for one bulb may not hold for another.

Mr. Armstrong makes no mention of this well-known fact; nor does he even state that his grid potential-wing current curve may be quite otherwise than he has shown it with different applied "B" battery voltage, or filament temperatures.

He makes no mention of the fact, often demonstrated, that a continuous current indicating instrument, e.g., a micro-ammeter, may show a decrease in deflection, or practically no change in deflection either way when fairly strong radio frequency (or audio frequency) impulses are delivered to the grid even when the telephone receiver in the wing circuit gives strong response.

I have frequently proven that a *positive* charge applied to the grid, may decrease, rather than increase the "wing current." If I may say so, he treats the entire subject in much too cursory and cavalier a manner, even as he appears to be quite oblivious of the work of any other investigator or discoverer.

As I stated in an article in the "*Electrical World*," February 20th, the *oscillating* quality of the audion was discovered by me several years ago.

I found that the complicated circuits Mr. Armstrong illustrates were quite unnecessary for producing the effects mentioned. In fact, the combination of oscillating and amplifying functions in the same bulb are obtained almost, if not quite, as efficiently, and far more simply by much simpler circuits.

The second method he shows for a combination tuning to radio and audio frequencies is ingenious and highly creditable. Un-

Digitized by Google

fortunately, as he truly points out, there is to-day no continuous wave generator of sufficiently constant frequency to permit full advantage being taken of this elegant method.

Edwin H. Armstrong: The condition in which a positive potential applied to the grid produces a decrease in the wing current is a remarkable one, in that it has been the cause of that mysterious atmosphere with which the audion has long been surrounded. The effect occurs under certain conditions which are very easily explained. Suppose there is an appreciable amount of gas in the tube and the difference of potential between the wing and filament is adjusted so that a considerable number of positive ions are produced. In such a state it frequently happens that the number of positive ions coming in contact with the grid is in excess of the number of negative ions. As a consequence of this the grid assumes a positive charge with respect to the filament. Suppose the potential to which the grid becomes charged is three volts positive with respect to the negative terminal of the filament. Under these conditions a battery of say one or two volts connected as shown in Figure 1 with its

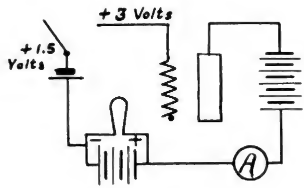


FIGURE 1

positive terminal connected to the grid will really change the potential of the grid in the negative sense. The natural result is a decrease in the wing current. The converse of this effect: the condition in which a negative potential applied to the grid produces an increase in the wing current, is invariably met with in high vacuum audions where the potential assumed by the grid is invariably negative. Both cases, however, can be explained on the same grounds. Figure 2 shows the potential assumed by the grid when a large number of positive ions are present.

Edwin H. Armstrong (by letter): In replying to Dr. de Forest's communication, I want to point out that the paper was

Digitized by Google

intended to deal with the application of circuits of a new type to the actuation of the audion. The fundamental operating features of the audion itself were outlined purely as a basis on which to explain the action of the circuits. A detailed explanation of the various phenomena involved in the audion as a detector and as a relay, radically different from that previously advanced by Dr. de Forest, was published by me some time ago in the "*Electrical*

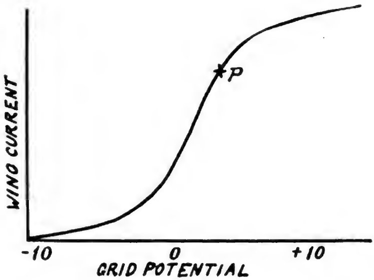


FIGURE 2

World," December 12th, 1914, and the columns of that paper, are, no doubt, still open to discussion of these elementary matters.

Dr. de Forest speaks of the great differences existing between the wing potential-wing current curves. It will be readily understood by those familiar with the laws of the conduction of electricity thru gases that such is bound to be the case where any considerable amount of gas is present in the bulb. The potential at which progressive ionization of the gas begins, is dependent, among other things, on the pressure; and hence the upper parts of the wing potential-wing current curves vary, but the lower parts, *the only place where the electron relay can be operated*, are invariably of the same general shape. With the modern methods now available, for producing very high vacua, it is a simple matter to construct audions whose characteristics are for all practical purposes identical. With these high vacuum bulbs, the astonishing differences of which Dr. de Forest speaks disappear to an astonishing extent.

The great differences which sometimes exist between the grid potential-wing current curves of different audions or for the same audion under different conditions of wing potential or

Digitized by Google

filament temperature are again due to the residual gas, and are eliminated as before by the use of very high vacua. It will be evident, of course, that for each value of wing potential and filament temperature there will be a different grid potential-wing current curve; but for high vacuum bulbs these curves lie one above the other in an orderly manner and, barring minor differences, are of the same general shape.

For an explanation of the fact that a continuous current instrument in the wing circuit shows no change in deflection when an alternating e. m. f. of *audio* frequency is impressed on the grid even when a telephone in circuit with the meter gives a strong response, I want to call attention to Figures 2 and 5, of the original paper, together with a suggestion that a telephone perhaps is apt to respond somewhat more strongly to an alternating current than does a continuous current instrument! An explanation of the decrease of wing current which may occur will be found in the publication in the "*Electrical World*," December 12th, 1914, with an accompanying oscillogram which shows the asymmetric effect in question. The circumstance stated by Dr. de Forest in which a *radio* frequency e. m. f. impressed on the grid produces a response in a telephone but not in a continuous current instrument is an impossible one. If the telephone responded, and there were no changes in the reading of the instrument, it would be an indication of an alternate and equal increase and decrease of the wing current at an audio frequency rate. This is an effect which *radio* frequency oscillations applied to the grid cannot produce. When a condenser is used in connection with the grid, radio frequency oscillations invariably produce a net decrease in the wing current and hence a decrease in the telephone current. Where use is made of the asymmetric relaying, which is possible because of the bends in the operating characteristic, either a net increase or net decrease may be produced in the wing current by radio frequencies applied to the grid, depending at which bend the audion is worked, but an increase and decrease can never be produced at the same time.

Dr. de Forest attempts to throw doubt on the validity of the operating characteristic, and hence on all explanations depending thereon, by stating that he has frequently proven that a positive charge applied to the grid may decrease rather than increase the wing current, a contention originally advanced by him in explanation of the relay and detecting action of the audion. In the discussion, I have pointed out the fallacy in this

Digitized by Google

view and explained the seeming paradox which is found in low vacuum bulbs on the working part of the grid potential-wing current curve. There is another effect which may lead to incorrect conclusions concerning the action of the electron relay, which is due to effects found above the working part of the curve. As the potential of the grid is increased, it is possible that the wing current may reach a maximum and then fall off. This is due to the fact that a conduction current flows to the grid when it is positive with respect to the filament, and that under certain conditions, this current is subtracted from the wing current. The maximum current which can flow from filament to wing is limited to the number of electrons emitted by the filament, and if the condition of maximum current flow in the wing circuit is established before the grid potential becomes highly positive, then a further increase in the grid potential will increase the number of electrons absorbed by the grid and the result is a decrease in the wing current. The impossibility of working an electron relay on this part of the curve will be evident from the accompanying diagrams (Figure 3) which show how the effective resistance of the input side of the audion increases as

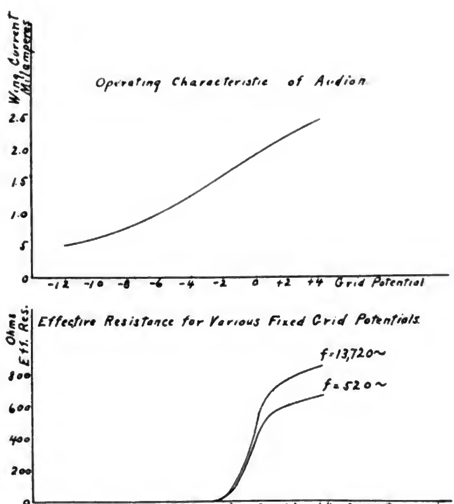


FIGURE 3

Digitized by Google

the potential of the grid is varied. Only when the grid is negative with respect to the filament can the full amplifying power of the audion be realized, as the input side consumes no energy. Herein lies the explanation of the great differences which exist in the amplifying powers of different bulbs when used in the customary fashion. It is usual to operate the audio frequency amplifier with the grid insulated from the filament for conduction currents so that the potential of the grid is determined solely by the characteristics of the audion. If it should chance to be sufficiently negative, the input side consumes no energy and the result is a good one; if it should be positive, then the input side consumes energy and the amplification is seriously impaired, the degree depending on the value of the positive charge. All this is clearly supported by the fact that when the potential of the grid of a good bulb is arbitrarily made positive, the amplification falls off. The curves shown in Figure 3 are additional confirmation, and in this connection it is interesting to note the agreement between the radio and audio frequency curves.

The statement by Dr. de Forest that he originally discovered the oscillating phenomenon and applied it to producing the effects described several years ago cannot be here discussed, because his priority in this matter will be contested shortly in another way.

Lee de Forest (by letter): While I cannot accept Mr. Armstrong's explanations of my observations as to the action of a positively charged grid on the wing current, they have at least more to recommend them than has his previous flat contradiction that such an effect as I have described existed at all.

What Mr. Armstrong states are "elementary matters" have not appeared so to associates and collaborators of Drs. Rutherford and Soddy with whom I have discussed them. These discussions, however, were prior to the appearance of Mr. Armstrong's paper.

In spite of Mr. Armstrong's explanations, we are left quite in the dark as to how high these consistent vacua are, and just what operating voltages he refers to. More quantitative explicitness and citations of the exact performances of scores of bulb would be more convincing than are the theories proposed as a basis for description of sundry complicated circuits.

If he is dealing with a type of tube which is quite distinct from the audion (on account of the degree of vacuum, the applied potentials, etc.), this should have been explicitly stated

Digitized by Google

at the outset. This is my chief complaint. No essential data are given, but only general laws with attempted axioms. I assumed that we were dealing with phenomena in the audion as popularly known, operating on from 20 to 50 volts. With such, at least, there still remain some unexplained problems.

If he be unable to explain my observation that, using audio frequencies, certain bulbs show a decrease, others no perceptible change in deflection of a direct current micro-ammeter while a telephone receiver gives responses many times audibility—this fact should be frankly stated. I should also like to have his explanation as to why certain audions are distinctly more sensitive to low than to high spark frequencies while others show the exact reverse. Tho I have theories on this point, I have not yet proven them.

In connection with Mr. Armstrong's insistence on the value of his oscillograms which were taken at audio frequencies because audio and radio frequency phenomena are identical in nature, I should like to call attention to his statement that "This is an effect which radio (as distinguished from audio) frequency oscillations applied to the grid cannot produce."

Is it not perhaps possible that where successive strongly damped wave trains, of radio frequencies, have alternately positive and negative initial wave fronts, an alternating increase and decrease of wing current may occur which would, while giving loud signals in the telephone receiver, produce practically no change in deflection in a direct current micro-ammeter in series therewith?

As to Mr. Armstrong's closing remark, I had not before realized that he actually claimed broadly the discovery of the oscillating property of the audion. I think it can and will be established that this was discovered some time before his first work in this field. If any are still of the opinion that the oscillating quality of the audion awaited the discovery of the complicated circuits he describes, I would refer them to the article on "The Double Audion Type of Receiver," by Professor A. H. Taylor, in the "*Electrical World*" of March 13th, 1915.

Edwin H. Armstrong (by letter): Replying to Dr. de Forest's latest communication in regard to the effect of a charged grid on the wing current, I cannot but assume, from his failure to produce evidence to the contrary, that his observations may be explained by the residual positive charge on the grid. This applies to that type of tube in which so many "unexplained"

Digitized by Google

phenomena are observed; "the audion, as popularly known, operating on from 20 to 50 volts."

Dr. de Forest's misapprehension as to the type of tube referred to in the paper rests entirely with himself. It was definitely stated in the article in the *"Electrical World,"* and on the occasion of the presentation of this paper before the Institute of Radio Engineers that the vacuum of the bulbs was such that only thermionic currents existed. The methods used to obtain these vacua were those recently described by Dr. Irving Langmuir in a paper presented before the American Physical Society, and also in another paper presented before the Institute of Radio Engineers (See this issue of the PROCEEDINGS, together with the discussion on Dr. Langmuir's paper).

In explanation of Dr. de Forest's observation that audio frequencies applied to the grid may produce either a decrease or no change in the reading of a *direct* current micro-ammeter, while a telephone responds strongly, I have pointed out the oscillograms which fully explain both cases. It seems necessary to add that a *direct* current instrument of the type mentioned measures *average* values!

The question of the relative sensitiveness of an audion as a detector to high and low spark frequencies is entirely irrelevant to the present discussion. It has, however, some points which are of interest. The effect occurs only when the valve action of the audion is used to rectify the oscillations and a condenser is necessarily used in series with the grid. When there is a scarcity of positive ions, the rate of leak of the charge accumulated in the grid condenser from one group of oscillations may be so slow that the condenser fails to clear itself before the arrival of another group of oscillations. Under these conditions, a residual negative charge is continuously maintained in the grid condenser during the periods of signaling, and this charge interferes with the rectifying action between grid and filament. Obviously, this effect will be more pronounced at the higher spark frequencies, and the sensitiveness of the audion will be less impaired on the low spark frequencies. The phenomenon is an interesting one, but on the whole it is quite simple and elementary in character.

Dr. de Forest attempts to explain the circumstance which I have shown is impossible—the circumstance in which radio frequencies applied to the grid produce response in a telephone in the wing circuit but no change in the deflection of a continuous current instrument in series with the telephone. The explana-

Digitized by Google

tion advanced is impossible. The effect described could be produced only by wave trains that were practically aperiodic. Needless to say, nothing remotely approaching this is in use in radio telegraphy at the present time.

In conclusion, I wish to point out that this discussion was originally begun by Dr. de Forest in an attempt to invalidate the explanations advanced to account for the various detecting, repeating, and oscillating phenomena. It is my opinion that the explanations given stand as correct.

Robert H. Marriott: It has been frequently charged that there has been a lack of research in radio engineering carried out in physical research laboratories. Mr. Armstrong deserves much praise in carrying out his highly interesting investigation, and it is to be hoped that further valuable results will be obtained under similar auspices.

(**This discussion is herewith closed.**—Editor.)

Digitized by Google

DEVELOPMENTS OF THE HETERODYNE RECEIVER[1]

By

JOHN L. HOGAN, Jr.

(Including a discussion on "Some Recent Developments in the Audion Receiver," by E. H. Armstrong.)

The comparatively recent development of the audion amplifier into the singing-relay form of radio-frequency oscillation generator has given a great impetus to heterodyne or electrical-beats receiving, since it has provided a cheap and satisfactory generator for such use. The further discovery that in the same audion bulb the triple functions of generation, rectification and amplification could be simultaneously carried on has additionally increased the use of heterodyne methods, altho the somewhat involved nature of the coincident phenomena has tended to obscure the true actions within the device. It is for this reason, in addition to his practical achievements, that Mr. Armstrong is to be congratulated for his painstaking work in the investigation of audion operation and for his clear and frank presentation of results. It may develop that I cannot agree with some of the conclusions he has drawn as to the relative commercial operating importance of some of these devices, but I do find his explanations of audion action in full agreement with my own observations and experiments.

It may be of interest to trace the development from the preferred form of beats receiver[2] shown in Figure 11 of my paper, "The Heterodyne Receiving System"[3] to the Armstrong arrangement, and to show some arrangements and give some results which have not as yet been published. To begin with, we must realize that a heterodyne receiver is one in which the incoming wave energy produces an effect at its own radio frequency, which effect is combined with a second effect occurring at a second (and usually slightly different) radio frequency so as to produce a "beat" phenomenon or resultant effect which is periodic and has a frequency equal to the difference in frequencies of the two

[1] The diagrams and substance of this paper were presented before the Institute of Radio Engineers, New York, March 3, 1915.

[2] U. S. Patent to Lee and Hogan, No. 1141717 of June 1, 1915.

[3] Proceedings of The Institute of Radio Engineers, Volume 1, Part 3, page 75 *et seq.*, July, 1913.

Digitized by Google

component effects.† This resultant periodic action, which corresponds to the cyclic progression in phase difference between the components, is usually utilized by mechanically or electrically rectifying two "beating" radio frequency currents so as to produce a tonal indication. This operation is explained fully in the original paper referred to, but may be made sufficiently clear by reference to Figures 4 and 6 which are here reproduced.

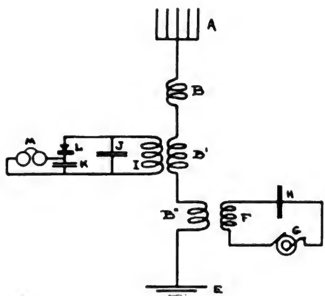


FIGURE 11
(OF ORIGINAL PAPER)

Figure 4 may be taken to represent on the A axis a sine wave voltage of frequency 250 per milli-second (or 250,000 per second). The B axis graph then represents a voltage of frequency 200 per milli-second. When these voltages act simultaneously on a circuit, the resultant takes the form shown by graph C, in which the "beat" or periodic change of amplitude is easily seen to occur at the rate of 50 per milli-second, or to correspond to the difference in fundamental frequencies. This voltage of course sets up in the circuit a corresponding current which is then rectified (graph D) and used to produce a final periodic effect such as shown by graph E. The frequencies 250,000 and 200,000 per second were chosen to permit graphs of several complete beats to be shown; the resulting beat frequency of 50,000 per second would of course be useless for producing directly an audible response in radio telegraphy. Ordinarily the frequencies would be, say, 250 and 249 per milli-second, giving a beat tone of 1,000 per second.

† U. S. Patents to Fessenden, Nos. 1050441 and 1050728, January, 1913.

Digitized by Google

To define one type of heterodyne action still more specifically, let us consider Figure 11 of the original paper. Here the first radio frequency effect is the voltage across coils B, B′, B″ produced by the received wave in the usual way. The second

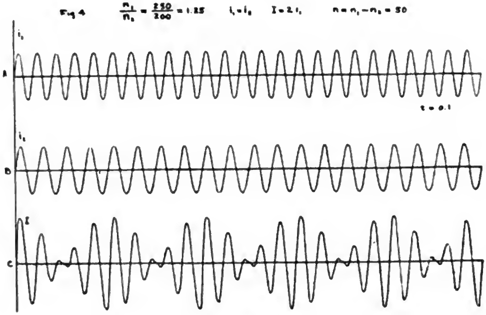


FIGURE 4
(OF ORIGINAL PAPER)

is the radio frequency voltage across "B" produced by the local generator circuit FGH. These voltages correspond to graphs A and B, Figure 4, and result in a fluctuating current, such as graph C shows, tho in general the beat frequency will be of the order of

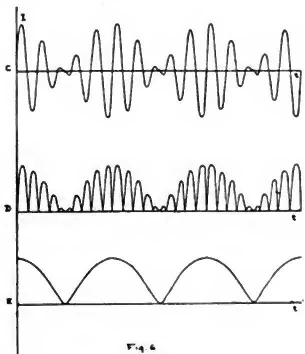


FIGURE 6
(OF ORIGINAL PAPER)

Digitized by Google

1,000 per second. This fluctuating current is rectified by the combination LKM, as indicated by graph D, Figure 6 (in which each alternate half-wave should be dotted, to represent the return of its energy to the resonant circuit) and results in movement of the telephone diafram corresponding approximately to graph E. One cycle of sound will be produced for each complete "beat," and so the tone frequency may be changed at will by varying the difference between the component frequencies.

In practice, a large number of combinations of units to form a heterodyne receiver are possible. For example, the "local" oscillation generator may consist of a radio frequency alternator, an arc generator, a buzzer exciting circuit, a high frequency spark circuit, an oscillating audion, etc. Any one of the many circuits for radio frequency tuning may be used, and the local oscillator may, in general, be coupled to any tuned circuit of a series; nevertheless, beat formation with damped waves is best accomplished in circuits of low damping. With sustained waves full beats are, of course, formed in any circuit. Any form of non-polarized indicator may be used, such as a static or electrodynamic telephone or relay, or a rectifier and polarized (ordinary) telephone. Figure 5 shows a heterodyne receiver in which

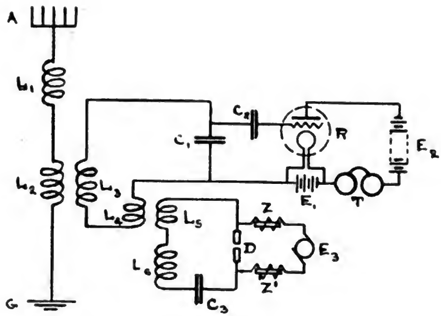


FIGURE 5

local oscillations generated by the direct current "arc" discharge gap D are transferred to the secondary tuning circuit L_3, L_4, C_1 and there interact with received-wave currents to form beats. As the audion rectifier-relay R introduces little damping into the secondary, full beat formation occurs. The arrangement is ex-

tremely sensitive, of course, and by selecting the proper coupling between L_4 and L_5 the normal delicacy of the audion to atmospherics and other intense momentary voltages may be somewhat reduced. The optimum power transferred from the local generator is rather critical for best amplification even with contact rectifiers, and with the audion the best adjustment for any given set of other conditions is very closely defined.

The extreme delicacy of the audion may be increased in heterodyne working exactly as in normal operation by the adoption of Mr. Armstrong's "regenerative" scheme. If the connection of Figure 8 (Armstrong's paper) is substituted for

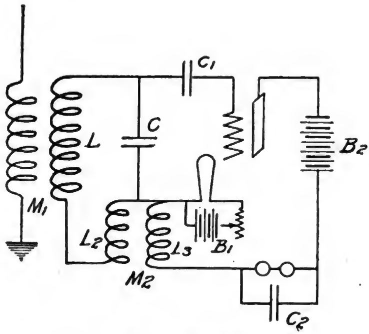


FIGURE 8 (Armstrong's Paper)

the simple audion arrangement of my Figure 5, the arc generator and antenna remaining unchanged, heterodyne reception with enhanced responsiveness will result. The coupling from local oscillator to secondary (or to antenna) circuit must be adjusted with great care, especially when the transformer M_2 (Armstrong's Figure 8) is coupled so closely that wing circuit radio frequency energy is transferred back to the grid circuit almost rapidly enough to maintain continuous oscillations. When the circuits are adjusted to the critical point of maximum amplification, the regenerative audion will be set into momentary sustained oscillation by each severe static discharge, so producing a brief singing beat tone and giving the sound effects of a sharply group-tuned telephone circuit. For the best results with so sensitive a rectifier-amplifier combination as the regenerating audion it is desirable to have as quiet an oscillator as possible,

Digitized by Google

since when strays are light or absent it thus becomes possible to copy signals produced by absurdly small amounts of received sustained-wave power. Of course, when day-and-night transmission is required for week after week without interruption (as must be the case for radio to compete commercially with wire or cable signaling) the signal power must be sufficiently large to permit differentiating between it and irregular, impulsive disturbances in some one or more known ways; at the same time irregularities in the local oscillations for heterodyne working are made unobjectionable. Nevertheless, a quiet oscillator is a desirable and useful thing.

The most uniform and quiet radio frequency generator for very small powers I have ever handled is the regenerative audion relay. As has been known for some time, radio frequency oscillations can be produced by a simple two-electrode evacuated bulb, but my experience has been that steadier currents may be made by application of the singing telephone relay principle to the audion repeater. Mr. Armstrong has pointed out that any energy-amplifying telephone relay may be used as an oscillator by transferring part of the amplified energy back to the trigger circuit to keep the device in oscillation. It should be interesting to consider the frequency determining elements of such a circuit, and I have therefore shown in Figure 6 the analog-

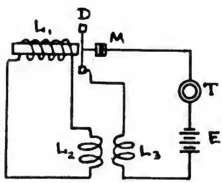


FIGURE 6

ous microphone relay arrangement. Here on closing the battery E circuit, a pulse of current is induced in L_1, via transformer L_3 L_2. If the winding direction of L_1 is properly selected with regard to the permanent magnet forming its core, the pulse will cause attraction of the diafram D, which will increase the resistance of microphone M and decrease the current in the battery circuit. The resulting fall in current induces a secondary pulse in L_2 in the opposite direction and repels the diafram, so reducing the microphone resistance, increasing the L_3 current and starting

Digitized by Google

the cycle anew. If the magneto-microphonic relay L_1 DM is sufficiently sensitive, a comparatively large nearly sinusoidal current will be set up in L_3 DMTE, as may be evidenced by the tone emitted by telephone T in circuit. The period of the alternating current generated will be that of the mechanical system DM, which should be of self-resonant character (i.e., not highly damped). If the microphone-diafram combination be coupled by an air column between two diaframs, (one on the "receiver" L_1 and the other attached to the microphone M) which has its length so chosen as to resonate to the diafram frequency, the system will produce alternating current without requiring any exceptional delicacy as a repeater, as is shown by the familiar telephone hummer.

If one secures an efficient aperiodic repeater, such as that indicated by Figure 7, where the armature A takes the place of

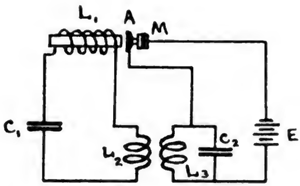


FIGURE 7

diafram D, the oscillation frequency may be determined electrically and may be shortened as far as the inertia of the repeater permits. Here the circuits $C_1 (L_1 + L_2)$ and $C_2 L_3$ are tuned to the oscillation frequency desired; in both Figures 6 and 7, the coupled circuit $L_1 L_2$ represents the trigger which drives the relay and the circuit E L_3 carries the amplified current.

Until the audion repeater was developed there seems to have been no satisfactory telephone relay. Mono-periodic microphone repeaters were, however, quite efficient, and radio frequency currents could be generated by the methods suggested in Figures 6 and 7. The superior efficiency of the audion, however, and its freedom from inertia, at once indicated its suitability for this purpose. Mr. Armstrong's Figure 8, which constitutes an oscillator when transformer M_2 is rather closely coupled, may be compared with these simple singing microphonic repeater circuits and will be found to depend upon

Digitized by Google

identical operating principles. The driving or grid circuit of the audion is connected for maximum resonant potential instead of current, since this favors its operation, and the device is of such sensitiveness that the driven or wing-B_2 circuit need not be tuned, tho to do so increases the available oscillation power. In Figure 8, the period of current is of course determined by the constants of the C, L, and L_2 circuit. The telephones and shunting condenser C_2 may be omitted and L_1 coupled to an antenna to set up beats with received energy therein, as shown by the right-hand half of my Figure 8. In this heterodyne

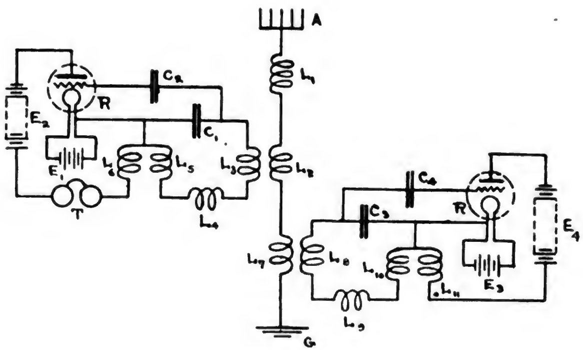


FIGURE 8

arrangement the regenerative audion in non-oscillating condition is indicated as the rectifying and indicating element. The telephones T need not always be shunted by a condenser, since the effective capacity of their cords and windings is often sufficient to permit regenerative amplification.

We thus have the heterodyne principle applied to large variety of receiver combinations. As Mr. Armstrong points out, the same bulb (with regenerative circuits) may be used simultaneously as a generator, rectifier and amplifier, then constituting an especially ingenious beats receiver. In practice, I have not found it possible to secure the full amplifying power of the regenerating audion relay when the bulb is oscillating, tho I have had both Mr. Armstrong's and Dr. de Forest's similar

Digitized by Google

"ultraudion" arrangements demonstrated to me, and have often reproduced them in my laboratory. It appears that the critical optimum of the power-efficiency characteristic cannot be made use of when the same bulb is used as rectifier, amplifier and oscillator. The difficulty or impossibility of securing maximum response, however, may not prove an obstacle in commercial working, since the extreme delicacy of the "best" adjustment really prevents operation when static is present.

A brief summary of some of the heterodyne tests which I have conducted over the past year or so may be of interest as giving experimental data for the various beats receivers. At Brooklyn, we have two antennas, one a flat top having a natural wave length of 1,000 meters and effective height of about 250 feet, the other having a natural wave length of 250 meters and height of about 175 feet. With the regenerative audion heterodyne shown in my Figure 8, it is not difficult to read daylight signals from Nauen, Germany, over 4,000 miles, on a 10,000 meter wave, *on the small antenna*. On the large antenna, this same receiver arrangement gives responses to Nauen's daylight signals so loud that they may easily be read some fifty feet from the telephones, or transmitted over the telephone lines to considerable distances merely by holding the receiving head-phone close to the Bell transmitter. This almost unbelievable responsiveness can only be reached and maintained when strays are practically absent, however; as soon as atmospherics appear it becomes necessary to use a less sensitive receiver if messages are to be read.

On the large antenna, Nauen's daylight signals give an audibility factor of from 300 to 500 when the plain audion is used as a detector (see my Figure 5), with considerably greater freedom from stray disturbance. Even with this, however, the delicacy seems too great for reliable reception, and it is advisable to use still more rugged rectifiers. The ronescon detector, a special crystal combination having extreme permanence of adjustment and a normal sensitiveness about 80 per cent of the bare point electrolytic, gives heterodyne responses to Nauen of about 100 audibility. This arrangement gives the best continuous operating condition of all those tried, tho for very small received powers (such as intercepted on the Brooklyn antenna from Nauen, Eilvese, San Francisco and Honolulu) it is desirable that the local oscillator be very quiet in operation.

For a considerable period, the Nauen-Sayville transmission was monitored at Brooklyn, everything sent either way being

Digitized by Google

copied so far as it was possible to do so thru atmospheric interference. When the ronescon heterodyne was used we found that our reception from Nauen was a trifle better than Sayville's, altho our antenna was far less effective in its ability to collect radio frequency energy arriving on waves of such great length than was that used at Sayville. The only difficulty experienced at Brooklyn or at Sayville (so far as could be determined) was from the apparent weakening of Nauen's signals in the presence of strays.

The evident conclusion is that heterodyne reception for consistent long distance working should be based on the use of rugged rectifiers having great overload capacity with small loss of conversion efficiency. Such reception of sustained wave signals has the following valuable characteristics, among others:

1. Signals produced as pure musical tones of regulable pitch, permitting
    a. Any degree of audio frequency tuning.
    b. Aural selection from static.
2. Selection by persistence of oscillation in addition to selection by wave frequency, since damped oscillations produce incomplete or decadent beats.
3. Ruggedness and ease of adjustment.
4. Stray minimization by virtue of the detector's overload characteristic (which may be equivalent to what Mr. Armstrong terms the "balanced valve" effect.)
5. Amplification of desired signal by heterodyne action, without proportionate increase of strays.
6. With signals of moderate strength, stray reduction by detuning antenna to coincide with frequency of local generator.

In spite of the present superiority for commercial work of such an arrangement as I have last outlined, however, the combined oscillator and amplifying rectifier and the regenerative audion used in non-oscillating condition for grouped-wave reception are useful and valuable devices. The work which Mr. Armstrong has done seems to me of great importance, and I wish again to thank him for his clear presentation of it.

New York, May 3, 1915.

SUMMARY: The heterodyne receiver is defined and explained. Various arrangements for heterodyne reception are discussed. The use of the "regenerative" or oscillating audion is then considered. It is shown how

Digitized by Google

any energy-amplifying relay can become an oscillation generator. Several instances are given. In connection with beat reception using the audion generator, it is stated that most satisfactory results are obtained in commercial service when it is used as a generator only, the detector being a rugged crystal combination. Examples of the extreme sensitiveness of the arrangements described are given.

Digitized by Google

THE PURE ELECTRON DISCHARGE

And Its Applications In Radio Telegraphy and Telephony

By

Irving Langmuir

HISTORICAL

It has been known for nearly two hundred years that air in the neighborhood of incandescent metals is a conductor of electricity. Elster and Geitel studied this phenomenon in great detail, and published the results of their investigations in a series of papers in "Wiedemann's Annalen" during the years 1882–1889.

In most of their experiments, they placed a metal plate close to a metallic filament within a glass bulb, and studied the charge acquired by the plate under various conditions of filament temperature and gas pressure. They found in most gases that the filament tended to give off positive electricity when it was at a red heat, but at very high temperatures it gave off negative electricity more easily than positive. When the vessel was exhausted as completely as was possible in those days, the tendency to give off positive electricity was much decreased and did not persist, whereas the tendency to emit negative electricity was apparently stronger than ever.

A similar discharge of negative electricity from the carbon filament of an incandescent lamp to an auxiliary electrode placed within the bulb was observed and studied by Edison and has since been known as the Edison effect. Fleming, in 1896 (Proc. Roy. Soc. **47**, 118, (1890) and Phil. Mag. **42**, 52 (1896)) investigated and described this effect in detail.

J. J. Thomson (Phil. Mag. **48**, 547 (1899)) showed that in the case of a carbon filament in hydrogen at very low pressures, the negative electricity is given off by the filament in the form of free electrons having a mass about 1/1800th of the mass of a hydrogen atom, and constituting in reality atoms of electricity.

* Delivered before The Institute of Radio Engineers, New York, April 7, 1915.

Owen (Phil. Mag. **8**, 230 (1904)) showed that a heated Nernst filament also gives off electrons, and Wehnelt (Ann. Phys. **14**, 425 (1904)) proved that the electric current from a lime covered platinum cathode (Wehnelt cathode) is carried in the same manner.

Richardson (Phil. Trans. **201**, 516 (1903)) applied the electron theory of metallic conduction to the electron emission from heated metals, and was thus able to develop a theory of this effect. In order to account for the conduction of heat and electricity by metals, Riecke and Drude had assumed that metals contain electrons which are free to move under the influence of an electric force and which are in constant vibratory motion similar to that of the molecules of a gas. Richardson assumed that these free electrons are ordinarily held within the metal by an electric force at the surface, just as the molecules of a liquid are prevented from escaping by a surface force related to the surface tension. If the velocity of an electron is sufficiently high, it may be able to overcome the surface force and escape. Since the average velocity of the vibratory motion increases with the temperature, the number of electrons which reach the necessary critical velocity to escape, will increase very rapidly with the temperature. These considerations are strictly analogous to those of the evaporation of a liquid, so that the number of electrons escaping should increase with the temperature according to the same laws as those governing the increase of the vapor pressure of a liquid as the temperature is raised.

It had already been shown that the vapor pressure (p) of a substance varies with the temperature (T) according to a relation of the form

$$p = A\sqrt{T}\,\varepsilon^{-\frac{\lambda}{2T}}$$

where A is a constant, λ is the latent heat of evaporation of the liquid (or solid), and ε is the base of the natural system of logarithms. Richardson was thus led to conclude that the current from an incandescent metal should increase according to an equation of a similar form, namely

$$i = a\sqrt{T}\,\varepsilon^{-\frac{b}{T}} \quad .$$

Here i is the current per square centimeter at the temperature T, and b is a constant which should be half the latent heat of evaporation of the electrons.

Digitized by Google

A curve showing the electron emission from heated tungsten, calculated with the use of appropriate constants from the above equation, is given in Figure 1.

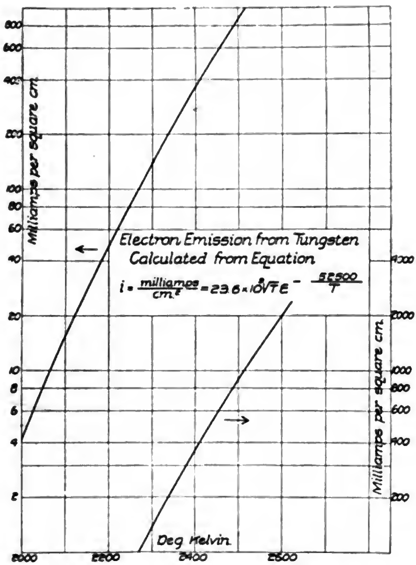


FIGURE 1—Electron Emission from Tungsten in a "Perfect" Vacuum

Richardson suggested that the currents obtained by the emission of electrons or ions from incandescent bodies should be called *thermionic* currents, a term which has since come into very general use.

According to Richardson's theory, an incandescent metal at a given temperature emits a certain number of electrons which is independent of the electric field around the heated body.

If a positively charged body is placed near the heated filament, the electrons will all be drawn away from the filament and will strike and be absorbed by the positively charged body. The motion of these electrons constitutes an electric current, the hot filament being the cathode and the positively charged body the anode of the discharge.

Digitized by Google

If, however, there is no electric field around the heated filament, or if a negatively charged body be placed near it, the electrons which are emitted from the filament return to it again and are re-absorbed, and therefore no current flows between the two electrodes.

According to this view-point, the electron emission is the same whether a thermionic current flows or not. As the potential of the cold electrode or anode is increased, a larger and larger proportion of the electrons emitted are drawn to the anode, so that the thermionic current increases. As the potential is further raised, a point is finally reached at which all the electrons emitted pass to the anode, so that a further increase in voltage causes no increase in current. The current is then said to be "saturated."

Richardson, in 1902, determined the relation between the saturation current from a heated platinum wire and a cylinder around it, and found that i varied with the temperature in accordance with the equation given above. For other substances also he found the relation to hold.

Since 1903, Richardson's theory of thermionic currents has been the subject of much investigation and discussion. H. A. Wilson (Phil. Trans. **202**, 243 (1903)) found that the electron emission from platinum at high temperature was decreased to 1–250,000 of its former value by a preliminary heating of the platinum in oxygen, or by boiling in nitric acid. The admission of a little hydrogen brought the current back to its former value.

Wehnelt (Ann. Phys. **14**, 425 (1904) and Phil. Mag. **10**, 80 1905)) discovered that platinum cathodes covered with lime emit vastly more electrons than platinum alone. He proposed using tubes containing such cathodes as rectifiers for alternating current of 100 or 200 volts, and described a Braun tube in which very soft cathode rays (100 to 1,000 volts) could be produced. Wehnelt worked usually with gas pressures ranging from 0.01 to 0.1 millimeter of mercury, the lowest pressure recorded being 0.005 millimeter. Under these conditions the paths of the cathode rays were visible, showing that there was strong ionization of the gas.

Soddy (Phys. Zeit. **9**, 8 (1908)) found that the large currents obtainable from a Wehnelt cathode stopped suddenly if the residual gases in the vacuum tube were absorbed by vaporizing some metallic calcium. This work of Soddy attracted considerable attention and made many investigators feel that thermionic currents in general were dependent on the presence of gas.

Digitized by Google

Lilienfeld (Physik. Zeitschr. **9**, 193 (1908)), however, considered that Soddy's experiments did not show that the electron emission from the Wehnelt cathode had decreased, but suggested that the decrease in current might be caused by the building up of a negative charge in the vacuum because of the large number of electrons needed to carry the current.

Fredenhagen (Verh. deut. phys. Ges. **14**, 384 (1912)) in 1912 studied the electron emission from sodium and potassium, two metals that Richardson had found particularly good sources of electrons, and concluded that the electrons are only emitted as a result of the presence of gas. He suggested that if a perfectly clean metallic surface could be obtained in a perfect vacuum the electron emission would cease entirely.

Pring and Parker (Phil. Mag. **23**, 192 (1912)) in the same year measured the currents from incandescent carbon rods in a vacuum. They found that with progressive purification of the carbon and improvement in the vacuum, the currents decreased to extremely small values. They conclude that "the large currents hitherto obtained with heated carbon cannot be ascribed to the emission of electrons from carbon itself, but that they are probably due to some reaction at high temperatures between the carbon, or contained impurities, and the surrounding gases, which involves the emission of electrons."

More recently Pring (Proc. Roy. Soc. A **89**, 344 (1913)) repeated these experiments under still better vacuum conditions and finds the former results confirmed. He concludes that "the thermal ionization ordinarily observed with carbon is to be attributed to chemical reaction between the carbon and the surrounding gas." "The small residual currents which are observed in high vacua after prolonged heating are not greater than would be anticipated when taking into account the great difficulty of removing the last traces of gas."

A similar feeling gradually arose in regard to the photo-electric effect, a phenomenon resembling the electron emission from incandescent metals, except that the electrons are emitted by the action of light—usually ultra-violet light, instead of heat.

Pohl and Pringsheim (Phys. Zeit. **14**, 1112 (1913)) find that the photo-electric effect is very much decreased by improving the vacuum, and suggest that perhaps the whole effect is due to interaction between the gas and the metal. Wiedmann and Hallwachs (the latter the discoverer of the photo-electric effect) (Ber. d. Deut. Phys. Ges. **16**, 107 (1914)) go further and state emphatically as a conclusion from experiments with potassium

Digitized by Google

that "The presence of gas is a necessary condition for appreciable photo-electric electron emission."

Fredenhagen and Kuster (Phys. Zeit. **15**, 65 and 68 (1914)) conclude that the same is true for the photo-electric effect from zinc, and in a still later publication Fredenhagen (Verh. d. Deut. Phys. Ges. **16**, 201 (1914)) finds that both the photo-electric and thermionic electron emission from potassium are entirely dependent on the presence of gas.

We see, then, that there were the best of reasons for believing that it would be impossible to get any electric discharge thru a perfect vacuum, because one could not expect to get any electrons from the electrodes. In the operation of ordinary X-ray tubes it was well known that a certain amount of gas was necessary. Porter (Ann. Phys. **40**, 561 (1913)) studied the dynamic characteristics of the Wehnelt rectifier and found that with pressures as low as 0.001 millimeter there was a tendency for the current to become unstable, fluctuating periodically between zero and a higher value.

With higher pressures, this difficulty was avoided, but the characteristics clearly showed a sort of hysteresis loop, the current with ascending voltage being different from that obtained with descending voltage.

My active interest in thermionic currents began in connection with some experiments on electrical discharges occurring within tungsten lamps. According to Richardson's data on the electron emission from such metals as platinum and osmium, the currents that might exist across the evacuated space in a tungsten lamp would be very large; in fact, the current density, at temperatures close to the melting-point of tungsten, might be expected to be several hundred amperes per square centimeter. Of course it is evident at the outset that the current flowing from one part of a filament to the other thru the vacuum must actually be very small in any ordinary lamp. It was known that the vacuum in a tungsten lamp is extremely high, and measurements indicated that in well exhausted lamps after 100 hours life the pressure was probably less than one millionth of a millimeter of mercury. Taking these two facts in to account, the very existence of a tungsten lamp seems strong evidence that thermionic currents in high vacuum must be very small, if not entirely absent.

When this effect was studied in more detail, it was found that the smallness of the currents in a lamp was not due to any failure of the filament to emit electrons, but was due entirely to an

Digitized by Google

inability of the space around the filaments to carry the currents with the potential available in the lamp.

In one case, two single loop tungsten filaments were mounted side by side in the bulb. After the bulb was exhausted in the best possible way and the filaments were thoroly aged and freed from gas, one of the filaments was heated while a positive potential was applied to the other thru a galvanometer. The hot filament thus served as cathode in the discharge occurring in the lamp. As the current thru the cathode was increased, the thermionic current as measured by the galvanometer increased at first, according to Richardson's equation as shown in Figure 1; but beyond a certain point, as indicated in Figure 2, the further

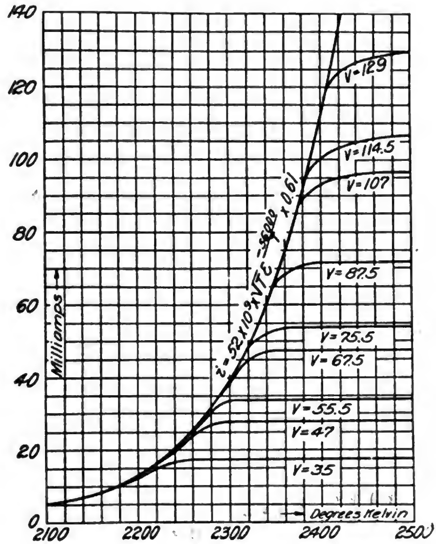


Figure 2—The Effect of Space Charge on the Thermionic Currents

increase in the temperature of the cathode produced no further increase in thermionic current.

The curve representing thermionic current as a function of temperature therefore consists essentially of two parts: first, a

Digitized by Google

part in which Richardson's equation applies; second, a part in which the current is independent of the temperature. In the first part of the curve, it is found that the current is independent of the voltage, or shape and size of the anode, but in the second part of the curve the current is affected by both of these factors and may also be either increased or decreased by placing the lamp in a magnetic field. It is thus evident that the only reason that the current does not continue to increase, according to Richardson's equation, is that the space between the electrodes is capable of carrying only a certain current with a given temperature difference.

The explanation of this phenomena was found to be that the electrons carrying the current between the two electrodes constituted an electric charge in the space which repelled electrons escaping from the filament and caused some of them to return to the filament.

A further theoretical investigation on the effect of this space charge led to the following formulas by which the maximum current that can be carried thru a space (of certain symmetrical geometrical shapes) may be calculated.

In the case of parallel plates of large size, separated by the distance x, the maximum current per square centimeter, i, is

$$i = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{9\pi} \sqrt{\frac{e}{m}} \frac{V^{\frac{3}{2}}}{x^2} \tag{1}$$

Here, e is the charge on an electron, m the mass of an electron, and V the potential difference between the plates. If we substitute the numerical value of $\frac{e}{m}$ and express i in amperes per square centimeter and V in volts, then this equation becomes

$$i = 2.33 \times 10^{-6} \frac{V^{\frac{3}{2}}}{x^2} \tag{2}$$

In the case of a wire in the axis of a cylinder, the maximum current per centimeter of length from the wire is given by the equation

$$i = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{9} \sqrt{\frac{e}{m}} \frac{V^{\frac{3}{2}}}{r} \tag{3}$$

If we substitute numerical values as before, we find

$$i = 14.65 \times 10^{-6} \frac{V^{\frac{3}{2}}}{r} \tag{4}$$

Digitized by Google

where i is the current in amperes per centimeter of length, and r is the radius of the cylinder in centimeters.

These equations have been found to agree accurately with experiments when the vacuum is so high that there is no appreciable positive ionization.

Extremely minute traces of gas, however, may lead to the formation of a sufficient number of positive ions to neutralize, to a large extent, the space charge of electrons and thus very greatly increase the current carrying capacity of the space. For example, a pressure of mercury vapor of about 1/100,000 millimeter has, under certain conditions, been found to eliminate completely the effect of space charge, so that a current of 0.1 ampere was obtained with only 25 volts on the anode, whereas, without this mercury vapor, over 200 volts were necessary to draw this current thru the space.

Besides this enormous effect on the current carrying capacity of the space, many gases have a great influence on the electron emission from the cathode. But in every case where the cathode is of pure tungsten, the effect of gas is to decrease, rather than increase, the electron emission. For example it is found that a millionth of a millimeter of oxygen, or of a gas containing oxygen, such as water vapor, will cut the electron emission down to a small fraction of that in high vacuum.

As a result of this work, we became firmly convinced that the electron emission from heated metals was a true property of the metals themselves and was not, as has so often been thought, a secondary effect, due to the presence of gas.

Further investigation showed that with the elimination of the gas effects, all of the irregularities which had previously been thought inherent in vacuum discharges from hot cathodes were found to disappear. In order to reach this condition, however, it was not sufficient to evacuate the vessel containing the electrodes to a high degree, but it was essential to free the electrodes so thoroly from gas that gas was not liberated from them during the operation of the device. It was also necessary to free the glass surfaces very much more thoroly from gas than had been thought necessary previously. The difficulty thus consists not in the production of the high vacuum, but in the maintenance of this vacuum during the use of the apparatus. As the voltage applied to the terminals was increased and as the current density in the discharge increased, the tendency for the gas residue to become ionized became very much more marked and the difficulties in maintaining a sufficiently high vacuum increased still further.

Digitized by Google

However, by special methods of exhaustion and by special methods of treating the electrodes, these difficulties have been overcome and it has thus been possible to construct apparatus in which a large current density can be obtained and potential differences of much more than 100,000 volts may be applied without obtaining effects attributable to positive ionization.

In previous devices which employed discharges thru vacuum, either with or without a hot cathode, there was always evidence of positive ionization if the current density was increased above an extremely low value, or if potentials over 50 or 100 volts were applied while a current of as much as a few milliamperes was flowing. The effects of this positive ionization manifested themselves in many ways. If the ionization was sufficiently intense, a glow thruout the tube was visible. For example, in the Braun tube, with a lime covered cathode, Wehnelt states that as high a vacuum as possible should be obtained, but he speaks of being able to see the path of the cathode rays. It has apparently always been assumed that cathode rays of sufficiently high intensity can always be seen, but of course such a luminosity is direct evidence of ionization of the gas. One of the most sensitive indications of the presence of positive ionization is the failure of the current to increase with the voltage in a regular manner, as shown in equations (2) and (4). If much gas is present, and by this I mean a pressure in the order of 1–10,000 millimeter, the current-voltage curve often shows decided kinks when the voltage is raised above 50 or 100 volts. In many cases the discharge is unstable and fluctuates periodically between two values. All these effects tend to be extremely erratic, since they vary with the composition and the pressure of the residual gases, and these, in turn, are altered by the discharge taking place thru them. For example, in the ordinary X-ray tube, the vacuum continually improves, and it is necessary, from time to time, to admit fresh portions of gas.

With the higher voltages, perhaps the most troublesome feature of positive ionization is its tendency to disintegrate the cathode. The positive ions, moving under the influence of the electric field, acquire high velocity, and when they strike the cathode cause rapid disintegration and ultimate destruction of the electrode. With a pure electron discharge, however, there is no disintegration of the electrode caused by the discharge and the filament lasts the same length of time as if no current passed thru the vacuum.

Digitized by Google

Another effect, produced by positive ionization, is the emission of electrons from the cathode under the influence of the positive ion bombardment. These electrons, which constitute the so-called delta rays, escape from the cathode with considerable initial velocity, and are therefore capable of charging up a third electrode in this space to a potential of ten or fifteen volts negative with respect to the cathode.

With the pure electron discharge, none of these effects are present. The cathode rays are entirely invisible, the current voltage curve is a smooth curve and follows the 3-2 power law, in case the filament temperature is sufficiently high and the shape of the electrodes is such that the small initial velocities of the electrons from the cathode do not play too large a role. It is possible to obtain a very high current density in this type of discharge, but in order to overcome the space charge effects, it is then necessary to use a very strong electric field close to the cathode.

DEVICES EMPLOYING A PURE ELECTRON DISCHARGE

Dr. Coolidge (Phys. Rev. **2**, 409 (1913)) has used the pure electron discharge in the construction of a new type of X-ray tube. In this tube the cathode consists of a small, flat spiral of tungsten wire, surrounded by a small molybdenum cylinder which serves as a focussing device, while the anode, or target, consists of a massive piece of tungsten, placed near the center of the tube. With this tube it has been possible to use voltages as high as 200,000 volts in the production of X-rays. The current thru the tube is absolutely determined by the electron emission from the filament, which, in turn, depends on the temperature, in accordance with Richardson's equation.

The advantages of this tube over the ordinary X-ray tubes previously used are many. Perhaps the most important feature is that the current and voltage are under complete control at all times, the current being fixed by the temperature of the cathode while the voltage is simply that furnished by the transformer or induction coil used. The tube seems to have an almost unlimited life, the temperature of the filament being so low that no appreciable evaporation occurs and the absence of gas eliminating the cathodic disintegration usually characteristic of high voltage discharges in vacuum. The tube is entirely constant in its action and the erratic effects usually observed in X-ray tubes are eliminated.

Digitized by Google

Several other types of apparatus have also been developed making use of this pure electron discharge, and these devices possess the same advantages over apparatus formerly used as the Coolidge X-ray tube possesses over the ordinary X-ray tube.

In order to distinguish these devices from those containing gas and in most cases depending upon gas for their operation, the name "kenotron" has been adopted. This word is derived from the Greek *kenos*, signifying empty space (vacuum), and the ending, *tron*, used by the Greeks to denote an "instrument."

KENOTRON RECTIFIER

The Coolidge X-ray tube is, of course, a rectifier for high voltage alternating current, but it is not suitably designed for this purpose. In an X-ray tube, the voltage applied must be consumed in the tube itself, whereas in the rectifier the voltage in one direction should be consumed in the load in series with the rectifier, altho the voltage in the opposite direction should be taken wholly by the rectifier. In the X-ray tube, because of the great distance between anode and the cathode and the presence of a focusing device around the cathode, the space charge effects are very much exaggerated, so that it is necessary to apply several thousand volts, in order to get even 10 milliamperes of current. This voltage necessary to overcome the space charge, is completely lost when the tube is used as a rectifier.

To overcome this loss of voltage as far as possible, the anode and cathode in the kenotron are placed close together, and everything is avoided which might tend to screen the cathode from the field naturally produced by the anode. In this way it has been possible to build kenotrons which have supplied pure electron currents of over an ampere, with a voltage drop of about 200 volts. This current, however, requires large anodes and cathodes, so that it is usually more convenient to build kenotrons with a current capacity of not over 250 milliamperes, and if it is desired to rectify larger currents than this, to place several kenotrons in parallel.

There seems to be no upper limit to the voltage at which a kenotron can operate. A kenotron has been built capable of rectifying 250 milliamperes at 180,000 volts, and there seems to be every reason to think that kenotrons could be used at very much higher potentials if desired.

The design and the characteristics of kenotrons has recently been described in a paper by Dr. Dushman (General Electric

Digitized by Google

Review, Vol. **18**, p. 156, 1915), and I will therefore only briefly describe these devices.

Figure 2 gives the characteristics of a typical kenotron designed for rather large currents. The curves show the current carried by the kenotron for different filament temperatures at given voltages between the electrodes. For example, if the temperature of the filament is 2,400 degrees the maximum current that can be obtained with any voltage is about 112 milliamperes. If, however, the resistance of the load is able to hold the current down to a value of say 54 milliamperes, then we see from the curves that the voltage drop in the kenotron would be 75.5 volts. The remaining voltage, which may be many thousands of volts, is consumed in the load in series with the kenotron.

Figures 3 and 4 illustrate two forms of kenotrons, one for voltages up to about 10,000, and the other one suitable for use up to 50,000 volts. With voltages higher than about 12,000 to

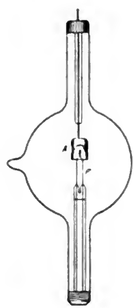


FIGURE 3—Molybdenum Cap Type of Kenotron

15,000 volts, the kenotron of the type shown in Figure 3 is apt to fail, because the electrostatic attraction of the anode pulls out the helically wound filament and short circuits the device. At the higher voltages, therefore, it is necessary to support the filament and to balance, as far as possible, the electrostatic forces acting on it.

The characteristics of the kenotron are such that the current flowing thru it is always perfectly stable, so that several kenotrons can be run in parallel and each one will take its proper share of the current. This is in marked contrast with the behavior

Digitized by Google

of mercury arc rectifiers, which have negative characteristics and therefore, if several are placed in parallel, one of them takes the whole of the current.

Owing to the absence of gas effects, the kenotron is a perfect rectifier, in that no measurable current flows in the reverse direction, even when voltages of 100,000 volts or more are applied. For similar reasons, it is capable of rectifying radio frequency currents, as well as audio frequency, there being not the slightest sign of any lag effects.

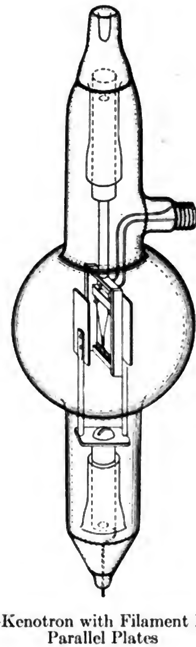


FIGURE 4—Kenotron with Filament Between Two Parallel Plates

AMPLIFYING OR CONTROLLING DEVICES: PLIOTRONS

In a pure electron discharge, as the temperature of the filament is raised, a point is always reached where the current becomes limited by the space charged between the electrodes. Under these conditions, only a small fraction of the electrons escaping from the cathode reach the anode, whereas the majority

Digitized by Google

of them are repelled by the electrons in the space and therefore return to and are absorbed by the cathode. From this view-point it is evident that if a negatively charged body is brought into the space between the anode and cathode, the number of electrons which then return to the cathode will increase, so that the current to the anode will decrease. On the other hand, if a positively charged body is brought near the cathode, it will largely neutralize the negative charges on the electrons in the space and will therefore allow a larger current to flow from the cathode. In this way it is possible to control the current flowing between anode and cathode by an electrostatic potential on any body placed in proximity to the two electrodes. This controlling effect may be best attained by having this controlling member in the form of a fine wire mesh, or grid, placed between the electrodes.

The term "pliotron" has been adopted to designate a kenotron in which a third electrode has been added for the purpose of controlling the current flowing between the anode and cathode. This word is derived from the Greek "*pleion*" signifying "more." A pliotron is thus an "instrument for giving more" or an amplifier. A similar use of the prefix "plio" occurs in the geological term "pliocene."

The three elements, hot filament cathode, grid, and anode, are, of course, similar to the elements of the de Forest audion. However, the operation of the audion is in many ways quite different from that of the pure electron device operating in the way I have described above.

In the audion, as in the Lieben-Reisz relay, the amplifying action appears to be largely dependent on gas ionization, even when the device operates well below the point at which blue glow occurs. The action is probably somewhat as follows. There is normally present a small amount of gas ionization, due to the passage of the electrons between cathode and anode. The presence of the positive ions partly neutralizes the space charge which limits the current flowing between the electrodes. If a small positive potential is applied to the grid, the velocity of the electrons passing by it is somewhat increased, and they therefore produce more ions in the gas. Besides this, as the potential on the grid is increased, the number of electrons passing the grid is increased, and this again tends to increase the amount of ionization. A very slight increase in the amount of ionization brought about in this way very greatly reduces the space charge, and therefore largely increases the current that can flow between

Digitized by Google

the electrodes. In this way, with a given construction of grid, filament, and plate, the relaying action may be very greatly increased beyond that which would occur if no gas were present. The amount of gas ionization which is necessary, in order to eliminate practically completely the effects of space charge, is often much too small to produce a visible glow in the gas.

If too much gas is present, or if the potential on the plate or the current flowing to the plate is too large, then the amount of positive ionization may reach such values as to neutralize almost entirely the space charge and thus allow a large current to flow. Under these conditions, the relaying action of the audion is lost. This is the case, for example, when the audion gives a blue glow. In the border land between these two conditions, there is a region of instability in which the sensitiveness of the audion may be enormously great, but it is usually not found very practicable to operate the device in this region because of the difficulties in maintaining adjustment, for any lack of adjustment may cause the audion to go over into a condition of blue glow.

The audion is often used with a condenser in series with the grid. Under these conditions, the audion requires the presence of a certain amount of gas ionization so that the positive ions formed may prevent the accumulation of too large a negative potential on the grid. With the pliotron, owing to the absence of positive ions, if it is desired to use a condenser in series with the grid, this condenser must be shunted by a high resistance and often a source of potential must be placed in series with the high resistance, in order to supply positive electricity to the grid as rapidly as this tends to be taken up from the electrons given off by the filament.

CONSTRUCTION OF PLIOTRONS

In the construction of pliotrons, it has been found desirable to make the wires constituting the grid of as small cross-section as possible. In this way, even when a positive potential is applied to the grid, the current that flows to the grid may be made extremely small. The use of very fine wire is made possible by using a frame of glass, metal, or other suitable material, to support the grid. Thus, in Figures 5 and 6, the filament is mounted in the center of a frame made of glass rods, on which the fine grid wire is wound by means of a lathe. The grid may thus consist of tungsten wires of a diameter as small as 0.01 millimeter and these may be spaced as close as 100 turns per centimeter, or even more.

Digitized by Google

In Figures 5 and 6 are shown two types of pliotron. Figure 5 shows a pliotron such as is used for amplifying radio signals in a receiving station. Figure 6 shows a large pliotron which may be used for controlling as much as 1 kilowatt of energy for radio telephony.

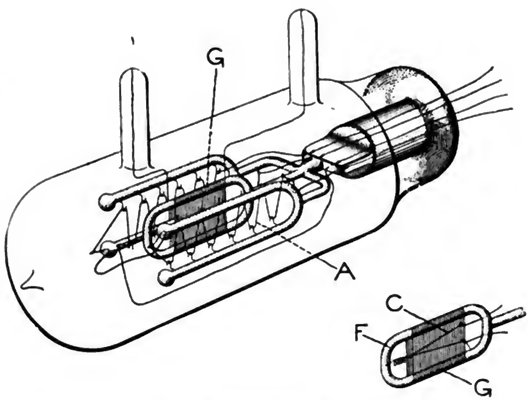


FIGURE 5—Small Pliotron

The characteristics of the pliotron depend upon the length of filament used, the distance between filament and grid, spacing between the grid wires, diameter of the grid wires, the distance between grid and anode, and the size and shape of the anode. The important elements in the characteristics of a pliotron are:

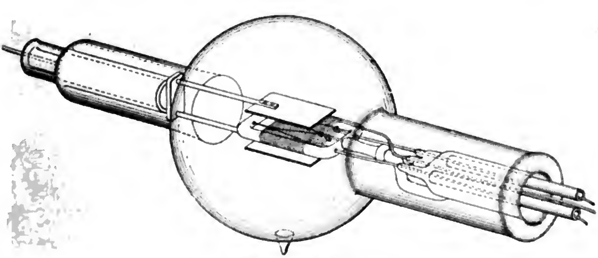


FIGURE 6—Large Pliotron

Digitized by Google

first, the relation between the current flowing between anode and cathode as a function of the potential on the anode and of that on the grid; second, the current flowing to the grid, as a function of the potential of the grid and the potential of the anode.

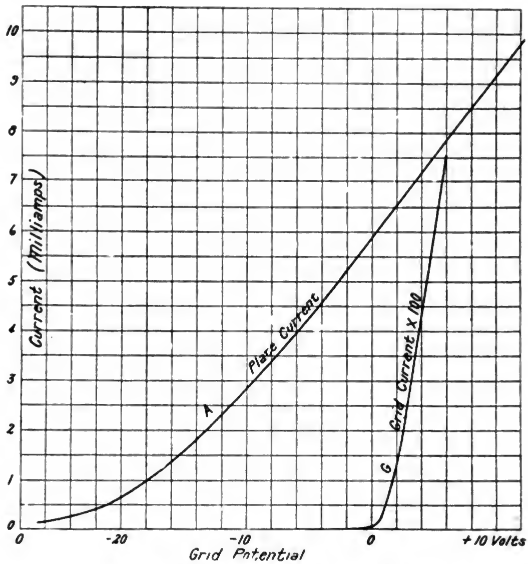


FIGURE 7—Characteristics of Small Pliotron

Figure 7 gives the characteristics of a small pliotron such as that shown in Figure 5. Curve A gives the current flowing to the anode for different grid potentials, while the potential of the anode is maintained constant at 220 volts. Curve G gives the current flowing to the grid under the same conditions. For different anode potentials, these curves are shifted vertically, by amounts proportional to the change in anode potential. In fact, it is found that these curves can be represented with fair approximation by a function of the form

$$i = A\,(V_a + k\,V_g)^{\frac{3}{2}}$$

where i is the current flowing to the anode, V_a is the voltage on

Digitized by Google

the anode, V_g the voltage on the grid, and k the constant which depends on the relative shapes and positions of the electrodes.

Figure 8 gives similar characteristics for a large pliotron like that shown in Figure 6. In this case, the anode potential was 8,500 volts. Since the grid is at a negative potential, no perceptible current flows in the grid circuit.

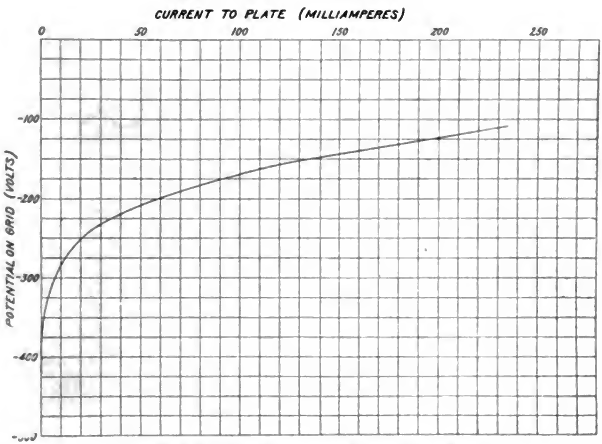


FIGURE 8—Characteristics of Large Pliotron

By using a fine grid, the current to the anode can be stopped entirely by even a very slight negative potential on the grid. On the other hand, a rather low positive potential will then be sufficient to draw a large current to the anode. The amount of current taken by the grid would be only a very small fraction of that flowing to the anode, in case the diameter of the grid wires is small compared to the distance between them. On the other hand, with a coarse grid, that is, a grid in which the spacing is large, a rather large negative potential may be necessary, in order to stop the current flowing to the anode. Similar results to those obtained by changing the spacing of the anode, may be obtained by changing the relative distances between the electrodes. The effects produced in this way may be expressed approximately by means of the constant k in the above equation; the effect of fine spacing thus being to increase the value of k, while coarse spacing decreases it.

Digitized by Google

By using a fairly coarse grid, consisting of fine wire, it is possible to obtain a control of the current to the anode, always using a negative potential on the grid. Under these conditions, since there are no positive ions present, no current flows to the grid, except that necessary to charge it electrostatically to the required potential. It thus becomes possible to control very large amounts of energy in the anode circuit, by means of extremely minute quantities of energy in the grid circuit.

There does not seem to be any upper limit to the voltages that may be used in the pliotrons. With voltages over 30,000 volts, it is often necessary to space the electrodes further apart and to use heavier wires for the grid, in order to reduce the danger of breakage of the parts by the large electrostatic forces which then occur.

The current carrying capacity of the pliotron is limited only by the size of cathodes that it is found convenient to use and by the voltage available. Large currents cannot be readily obtained with low voltages because of the space charge effect described previously. With voltages above 500 volts, however, it is found practicable to use currents of 300 or 400 milliamperes for a pliotron of the type shown in Figure 6. With high potentials, there is no difficulty in using currents as large as this, provided the energy is consumed in some device in series with the pliotron. On the other hand, if the full voltage is applied to the anode while the current is flowing to the anode, the energy liberated in the form of heat may be so great as to volatilize the anode or cause it to radiate so much heat that the glass parts of the apparatus are softened. In a pliotron with a 5-inch (12.7 cm.) bulb the amount of energy that may be so consumed within the pliotron is about 1 kilowatt. Still larger amounts of power may be dissipated if the bulb is immersed in oil and if the grid frame is made of quartz, or other heat resisting material.

It is evident from the characteristics of the pliotron that any number of these devices may be placed in parallel and that in this way, very large amounts of power may be controlled.

PLIOTRONS IN A RADIO RECEIVING STATION

PLIOTRON AS A DETECTOR

If the antenna of a receiving set is coupled directly to the grid of a pliotron and a telephone receiver is placed in series with the anode, signals may be readily detected, but the results obtained in this way are usually very poor. Under these condi-

Digitized by Google

tions, the sensitiveness of the arrangement is proportional to the curvature of the curve A, Figure 7 (or, more accurately, proportional to the second derivative of the anode current with respect to the grid potential). This curvature may be somewhat increased by applying a negative potential to the grid, but even under these conditions the sensitiveness of the arrangement is usually not very high.

If it is attempted to use a condenser in series with the grid and thus use the pliotron in the way that the audion is often used (as described, for example, by Armstrong, "Electrical World," December 12, 1914; also this issue of the PROCEEDINGS OF THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS), it is found necessary to shunt the condenser with the resistance and often to place a battery of a few volts in series with the resistance, in order to prevent a large negative charge from accumulating on the grid.

It has been found, however, by Mr. White, that a very minute trace of certain gases may very greatly increase the sensitiveness of this device as a detector. For example, by placing within the bulb a small quantity of an amalgam of mercury and silver, the characteristics of the tube show a kink, as indicated in Figure 9. With a detector of this sort, if the grid potential is adjusted so that its average value is approximately that at which the kink occurs, there is a very marked increase in sensitiveness. This is due to the fact that under these conditions either an increase or a decrease in the grid potential causes a decrease in the anode current. The sensitiveness of this detector is then very high. The quantities of mercury vapor necessary to give this effect are so low that anode voltages of 200 volts or more may be used without any indication of glow discharge.

PLIOTRON AS AMPLIFIER

The value of a pliotron as an amplifier is dependent primarily on the slope of the curve between anode current and grid potential; for example, curve A, Figure 7. A second factor of importance is the magnitude of the current taken by the grid. In order to get the greatest amplifying effect it is desirable to have this current as low as possible. In a pliotron of the type shown in Figure 5, the current to the anode increases at the rate of about 1 milliampere per volt change in the grid potential.

By using larger anode potentials, the slope of the curve can be made very much greater, since it becomes possible to use grids of finer mesh. For example, in Figure 8 it is seen that the slope

Digitized by Google

of the curve corresponds to about 1.9 milliamperes increase in anode current per volt change in grid potentials.

It has been found that there is no sluggishness in the characteristics of the pliotron, even at the highest frequencies.

By connecting the pliotron as an amplifier, as shown in Figure 10, the high frequency currents received from the grid

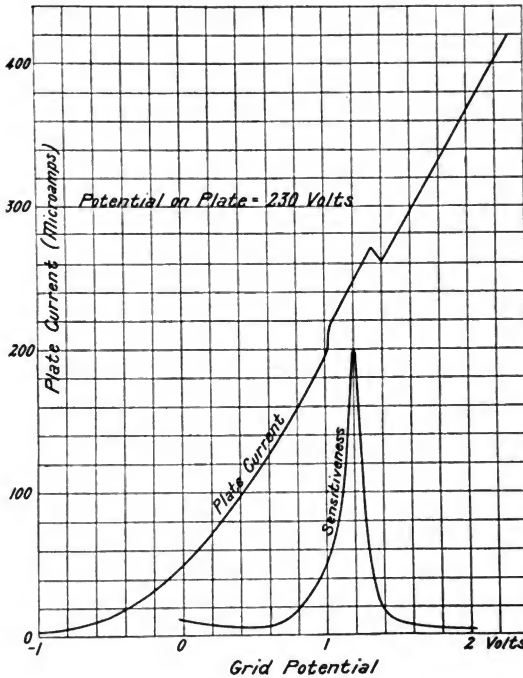


FIGURE 9—Characteristics of Detector Containing a Trace of Mercury Vapor

may be amplified from 100- to 600-fold. In this arrangement, it is the high frequency or radio frequency that is amplified, and not the audio frequency. This amplification of the radio frequency possesses the marked advantage that the detector circuit may be tuned to the same frequency as the amplifier

Digitized by Google

circuit, and in this way a very marked increase in selectivity is obtained. In fact, it has been shown by Mr. Alexanderson that the resonance curve of an outfit consisting of amplifier and detector, both tuned to the radio frequency as shown in Figure 10, may be obtained from the resonance curve for the detector alone, by squaring the ordinates. For example, if with a single detector, the signals from one station (*A*) are received 100 times as strongly as those from another station (*B*), then, with the above arrangement with the amplifier, the signals from *A* will be received 100 times more strongly, or 10,000 times as strong as those from station *B*. If two amplifiers be used in this way, the signals from station *A* could be obtained 1,000,000 (or 100^3) times as strong as those from station *B*.

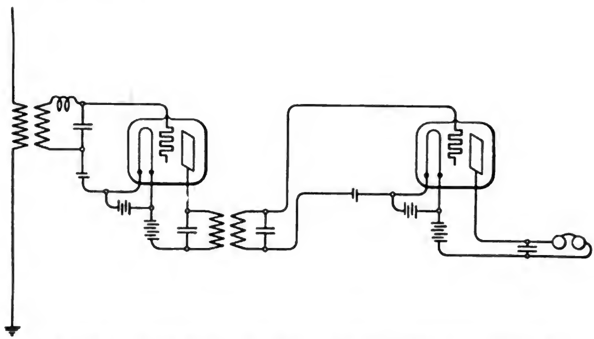


FIGURE 10—Arrangement of Two Pliotrons In Cascade, Employing "Tuning In Geometrical Progression"

In practice, this arrangement has been found to give a wonderfully high degree of selectivity.

Of course, a pliotron may also be used for amplifying the audio frequency, coupling the circuits together by means of an iron core transformer. A single pliotron, under these conditions, gives an amplification of current of several hundred-fold, when voltages of from 100 to 200 volts are used on the anode.

PLIOTRON AS OSCILLATOR

By placing inductance and capacity in the grid and plate circuits and coupling these two circuits together, it is possible to use the pliotron as a source of continuous oscillations. Small

Digitized by Google

pliotrons of the type shown in Figure 5 may produce oscillations of a power up to a few watts, and these may be used in a receiving station, according to the heterodyne principle, for receiving continuous oscillations. One pliotron may be used both for amplifying or detecting, and for producing oscillations.

With the larger pliotrons, using voltages of a few thousand volts, up to a kilowatt of radio frequency oscillations may readily be produced by a single tube.

USE OF THE PLIOTRON IN RADIO TELEPHONY

By means of a single large pliotron, it has been found possible to control about 2 kilowatts of energy in an antenna by means of the currents obtained from an ordinary telephone transmitter. There are many arrangements by which this may be accomplished. For example, a 2 kilowatt Alexanderson alternator (100,000 cycles) may be loosely coupled to the antenna and the anode of the pliotron may be connected to a point on the antenna where the potential is normally high. So long as the potential on the grid of the pliotron is strongly negative, no current flows to the pliotron and therefore the full energy is radiated by the antenna. If, however, the negative potential on the grid is decreased, a sufficient current may be drawn from the antenna strongly to damp the oscillations and thus greatly to decrease the energy radiated. With sufficiently high potential on the grid, practically the whole of the energy may be diverted from the antenna.

It is thus possible to control the output of the antenna by varying the negative potential on the grid of the pliotron. Since the grid is always negative, no current flows between filament and grid, and therefore practically no energy, is required to maintain the charge on the grid. In this way, therefore, by connecting the secondary of a transformer between the grid and filament, and placing the primary of the transformer in series with a telephone transmitter, it is possible by means of the variations in the currents from the telephone transmitter to obtain potentials on the grid of several hundred volts and thus to control the output of the antenna.

Instead of using an arc or alternator as a source of radio frequency current, the pliotron may also be used as a generator of the oscillations. One pliotron may be used both for producing the oscillations and for controlling the amplitude of the oscillations, in accordance with the variation of pitch and amplitude of

Digitized by Google

the sound waves acting on the telephone transmitter. It is usually preferable, however, to use a large pliotron for producing the oscillations, and to connect a small pliotron in the grid circuit of the large pliotron for controlling the output of the latter.

With the above arrangement an extremely simple and efficient radio telephone outfit can be made. Since the pliotron for producing oscillations requires comparatively high direct current voltages, it has been found convenient to combine the pliotron oscillator with a kenotron rectifier. Two types of apparatus of this type have been in use a considerable time, and it will be of interest to describe these in some detail.

In the first outfit, which is a small outfit having a capacity of about 20 watts in the antenna, the source of power is the local city supply, which is 118 volts, 60 cycle alternating current. This is connected with the primary of a small transformer, having two secondary windings. One of the secondaries is designed to give about 5 volts and furnishes the current used for heating the filaments of the kenotrons and pliotrons. The other secondary of the transformer is wound to furnish a potential of about 800 volts. This is rectified by means of a kenotron and serves to charge a condenser of about 6 microfarads. In this way a source of high voltage, direct current is obtained in a very simple manner. The plate of the pliotron oscillator is then connected to one of the terminals of the condenser, while the filament is connected to the other. The plate of the second pliotron is connected to the grid of the first, while the grid of the second is coupled by means of a second small transformer to the microphone circuit. With this small outfit, both pliotrons may be relatively small, and in order to obtain an energy of about 20 watts in the antenna, it is found that the current drawn from the condenser is so small that the potential supplied by it does not vary sufficiently to be audible in the signals sent out by this outfit. The different parts of this apparatus may be made very compact and no adjustments are found necessary in operating the system unless it is desired to change the wave length. In this case, it is only necessary to change the inductance or capacity.

In the second outfit, which is suitable for use up to 500 watts or more, the high voltage direct current is obtained from a small, 2,000 cycle generator. The current from this is transformed up to about 5,000 volts, rectified by kenotrons, and smoothed out by means of condensers. By the use of 2,000 cycle alternating current instead of 60 cycle, it is possible to store up large quan-

Digitized by Google

tities of energy and thus obtain as much as a kilowatt or more of power in the form of direct current with condensers of moderate size. This high voltage direct current is then used, as before, to operate a pliotron oscillator, the output of which is controlled by means of a small pliotron connected to the telephone transmitter.

By means of this system of control the amount of energy in the telephone transmitter circuit need be no larger than that commonly used in standard telephone circuits. It has thus been found possible to connect up this radio telephone outfit with the regular telephone lines so that conversation may be carried on between two people, both of whom are connected with the radio stations by means of the regular land lines. It has also been found possible to communicate both ways over these lines.

SUMMARY: The thermionic current produced by the emission of free negative electrons from the surface of heated metals is described in detail. Its theoretical magnitude is calculated for certain definite cases. The limitation of thermionic currents by space charges around the cathode (in high vacua) is explained. In reviewing the bibliography of the subject, it is shown that the preponderance of opinion before the most recent and careful experiments was to the effect the thermionic currents could not be obtained in a pure vacuum. The incorrectness of this conclusion is experimentally proven. The degree of cleanliness of the electrodes and the completeness of exhaustion required to produce these thermionic currents in regular fashion is unusual. With true thermionic currents, the cathode does not disintegrate, and there is no blue glow in the path of the cathode rays even at the highest voltages. An X-ray tube using thermionic currents is described. A rectifier for high voltage alternating current ("kenotron") is considered, its operating characteristics being given. By inserting a third fine wire grid electrode in a kenotron, an amplifying device ("pliotron") is obtained. Its theory, construction and characteristics are given. Its use in radio receiving stations as a detector or amplifier is described. The "exponential" method of tuning, involving the use of radio frequency pliotron amplifiers in cascade, is shown to have given remarkable selectivity. The pliotron may also be used as a powerful generator of radio frequency energy; or for the modulation or control of such energy. A 20-watt radio telephone transmitter, and a 500-watt radio telephone outfit are each described in detail.

Digitized by Google

DISCUSSION

Alfred N. Goldsmith: The material presented by Dr. Langmuir to the Institute of Radio Engineers constitutes one of the important contributions to the knowledge of thermionic phenomena in high vacua which have been worked out in the Schenectady laboratory. It may be that certain facts presented in the earlier papers will be of interest.

In a paper by Coolidge (Phys. Rev., December, 1913, page 409) the usual defects of X-ray tubes are given. They apply, in general, to tubes in which cathode rays pass. They are a gradual increase in the vacuum as the tube is operated, rapid and erratic changes in the pressure, heating of the electrodes with consequent evolution of gas, deposition of the electrode metal on the tube, the difficulty of obtaining satisfactory pressure regulators, and the dissimilar characteristics of two apparently identical tubes. If, however, the tube be exhausted to a pressure less than 0.000,03 millimeter (and certain other conditions are fulfilled), the above defects can be eliminated. Coolidge used for the cathode a spiral of thin tungsten wire electrically welded to molybdenum supports. The molybdenum was sealed in the tube using a special glass having the same coefficient of expansion. The remainder of the tube was of a German glass. The tungsten filament was heated by a storage battery, well insulated from the ground. Before exhausting the tube, the electrodes were fired in a tungsten vacuum furnace. This latter was a tungsten tube 1 inch (2.5 cm.) inside diameter and 12 inches (30 cm.) long. This was placed in a water cooled metal cylinder and exhausted to a few thousandths of a millimeter pressure. The tungsten tube was then connected to a 100 kilowatt transformer. For exhausting the tube, a Gaede molecular pump was used, connected to the tube thru a short large piece of tubing. During exhaustion, the tube was heated to about 470° C. At the same time, heavy high voltage discharges were passed thru the tube. This procedure was continued for several days. A liquid air trap was used between the Gaede pump and the tube to condense vapors. In the last stages of the exhaustion, very heavy discharge currents were passed thru the tube which was air cooled by the use of a fan.

Inasmuch as sufficiently low pressures to obtain the effects Dr. Langmuir describes can hardly be obtained without the use of a molecular pump, a brief description of this latter is not out of place. This pump is not of the piston type (which cannot

Digitized by Google

pump out vapors) but depends on gas friction. In the figure, the rotating disc is shown. As a consequence of its rotation, the difference of pressures on the two sides will be constant; that is, $p_1 - p_2 =$ constant. The constant is proportional to the speed of rotation of the disc and the internal friction of the gas. This latter has been shown to be constant at all pressures

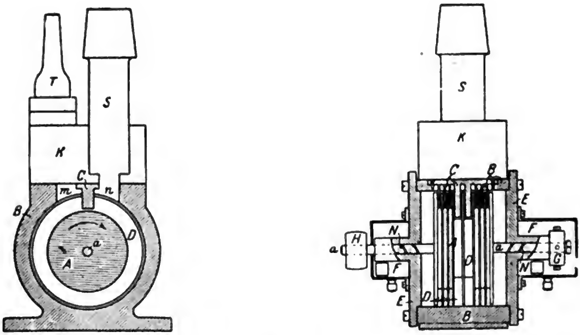


FIGURE 1

by Maxwell (theoretically). It will be seen that starting at a small pressure, it is theoretically possible to reach an absolute zero of pressure. Actually this cannot be realized since at very low pressures not $(p_1 - p_2)$ but $p_1 \div p_2$ is a constant. It is obvious that an auxiliary pump must be used to begin with. In practice, the peripheral velocity of the disc is high, namely not far from the molecular velocity. The disc rotates at 8,000 to 12,000 R. P. M. With pumps of this type, a 6 liter container can be exhausted to a pressure of 0.000,002 millimeter in 4 minutes.

Dr. Langmuir has worked out an ingenious pressure gauge for very low pressures based on similar principles. (Phys. Rev., April, 1913, page 337, also S. Dushman, Phys. Rev., March, 1915, page 212.) Inside the gauge is placed a thin aluminum disc attached to a steel or tungsten shaft and carrying a magnetic needle, shown in Figures 2 and 3 (from the "Physical Review"). Outside the tube, but in the plane of the needle, is a Gramme ring which is supplied with current cyclically at six points by means of a motor-driven commutator. The aluminum disc is there-

Digitized by Google

fore caused to rotate rapidly. Above it is suspended a very thin mica disc, hanging on a quartz fiber which carries a small mirror. The gas drag resulting from the rotation of the lower disc twists the upper disc thru an angle which is proportional to the pressure of the gas, the number of R. P. M. of the lower disc, and the square root of the molecular weight of the gas. It is, how-

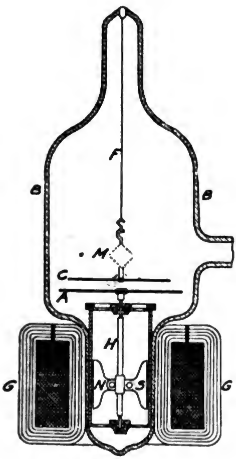


FIGURE 2

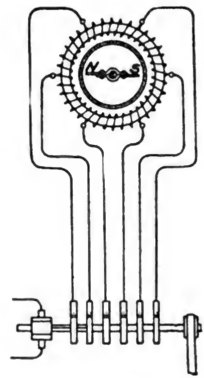


FIGURE 3

ever, practically independent of the distance between the discs. This gauge is of use at pressures below 0.01 millimeter. Its sensitiveness is high. A light beam reflected from the mirror moves 1 millimeter on a scale 60 centimeters (2 feet) away, when the lower disc rotates at 10,000 R. P. M. and the pressure is 0.000,000,25 millimeters.

In another paper Dr. Langmuir (Phys. Rev., December, 1913, page 450) draws certain important conclusions as to the methods and degree of exhaustion of tubes which are to show pure and reproducible thermionic currents. They are,

1. An extremely high vacuum is necessary: less than 0.000,1 millimeter. No oxygen, water vapor, carbon dioxide or hydrocarbons may be present. During exhaustion all glass parts must be immersed in liquid air, or be heated to 360° C., for an hour or more.

Digitized by Google

2. Large anodes are to be avoided. The anode should be heated to 2,000° C. or more *in vacuo*, or else a heavy high voltage discharge should be passed to it during exhaustion. In passing this discharge, the pressure should be so low that no glow is seen (except possibly when inert gases only are present). The electrodes are preferably tungsten which has been heated to 2,500° for 10 minutes in the apparatus.

3. By properly placing the electrodes, the space charge (which limits the thermionic currents) may be kept small. If a cylindrical anode is used, it should be charged to several thousand volts and the filament temperature raised until the thermionic current is 50 to 200 milliamperes.

Dr. Saul Dushman has also given some valuable data in relation to the construction of such tubes (Phys. Rev., August, 1914). In his work, tubes with molybdenum anodes were used. Platinum leading-in wires were employed. From the vacuum tube, a large bore glass tube ran to the liquid air trap, and thence to the Gaede molecular pump, which latter was connected to a "box" pump connected to a 1 centimeter "rough" vacuum line. A McLeod gauge was placed between the molecular and box pumps. There was also an outlet whereby air dried by passage over phosphorus pentoxid could be admitted to the apparatus. During the exhaustion, an electric oven kept the tube at a temperature of 350 degrees. It was at a temperature of more than 300 degrees for at least an hour. The vacuum was certainly less than 0.000,000,2 millimeter. The electrodes were freed from occluded gases and volatile oxids by applying an alternating electromotive force of from 1,000 to 5,000 volts, the thermionic current being 50 to 200 milliamperes. The temperature of the anode was 1,000° C. or more. The blue glow gradually disappeared, and the thermionic currents increased. When the anode was finally brought to a white heat, the high voltage discharge was stopped. The temperature of the tungsten cathode was calculated from the following formula, where T is the temperature (in degrees Kelvin), and H is the intrinsic brilliancy of the filament in international candles per square centimeter of projected area:

$$T = \frac{11{,}230}{7.029 - \log_{10} H}$$

In a recent article ("*General Electric Review*", March, 1915), Dr. Dushman gives the details of the design of the kenotron. In particular, the important questions of proportioning the

Digitized by Google

electrodes to the current-carrying capacity, of keeping the internal loss in the kenotron low, and of preventing excessive electrostatic strain on the electrodes are considered.

Passing to the question of the advantage of the kenotron over the mercury arc rectifier in that several of the former may be safely operated in parallel, the criterion for such stable operation is easily expressed. If i is the current passing thru a kenotron, a small change in terminal voltage e must cause a change of the same sign in i.

That is, $$\frac{di}{de} > 0.$$

But for the kenotron, it has been shown that

$$i = k\,e^{3/2}$$

where k is a constant. Therefore,

$$\frac{di}{de} = \frac{3\,k}{2}\,e^{1/2} > 0.$$

Also, it can be similarly shown that if two or more kenotrons are operated in parallel, a small change in terminal voltage of all of them will produce changes of current in each of them proportional only to the corresponding constant k of each kenotron.

By reference to Figure 7 of the paper, it will be seen that the amplification produced by the small pliotron even when the grid is at a positive potential is considerable. Thus a change of grid potential from + 2 to + 4 volts causes in a change of power in the grid circuit of $1.46(10)^{-4}$ watts, but as a result there is a change of power of $1.4(10)^{-1}$ watts in the plate circuit. The amplification is therefore roughly 1,000. At lower grid potentials, and especially at negative grid potentials, this must be enormously increased; and especially at lower frequencies.

Lee de Forest: Naturally Dr. Langmuir's paper is to me one of the most interesting ever presented before the Institute. It is a tribute to the exhaustive thoroness and scientific care with which such a resourceful corporation as the General Electric Company can attack any problem in which it may become interested.

Philologists, fully as much as physicists or radio engineers, are indebted to Drs. Langmuir and Dushman for coining two fresh new words to add to our modern Greek mythology, along with such contributions as "Cymoscope," "Cymometer," etc.

That the two devices thus designated possess a novelty

Digitized by Google

of nomenclature no one can deny. As to just wherein the "Kenotron" differs in principle from the Edison-Wehnelt-Fleming "vacuum valves," or the "Pliotron" from the audion amplifier and oscillating audion is a somewhat more debatable question.

It is certainly not self-evident that when a large audion is exhausted to a higher degree of vacuum than heretofore, so that conductivity by means of gas carriers enters less and that by thermions enters more into phenomena otherwise identical, long ago discovered, and thoroly characteristic—it becomes (except by an ingenious name) a new device.

Increased utility naturally follows upon enlarged dimensions, increased life, and ability to transform larger amounts of power.

I believe, however, that Dr. Langmuir has, by working into these extremely high vacua and the high potentials necessitated thereby, pursued the less promising of two paths of research.

It is well to remember in this connection that to-day arc generators developing 75 kilowatts of radio energy are in operation on voltages of less than 1,000 volts.

An arrangement for controlling the amplitudes of radiated waves by means of an audion side-path to earth, the latter in turn controlled by a microphone, was used by myself as early as 1909. It was found that, with the amount of power I was then experimenting with, the complication of circuits and necessary additional apparatus involved, rendered this method less advantageous than the simple microphone-in-earth-lead connection.

Where however large powers are to be voice-controlled an arrangement operating on this principle offers certain important advantages.

Sewall Cabot: I should like to ask Dr. Langmuir to give us some idea as to the constancy of adjustment in using the pliotron as a receiver. In using the audion we have had much trouble in obtaining and holding the voltage at the anode at its proper value, and in keeping the temperature of the filament steady. The pliotron, having no gas in it, and using higher potentials would seem to be a more constant device.

Irving Langmuir: The most advantageous feature of the pliotron seems to be its constancy. Even the form using a slight amount of mercury vapor is extremely constant in action. The anode voltage may be increased from 70 volts to more

Digitized by Google

than 200 or 300, and as the voltage is increased, the sensitiveness of the device gradually rises. We have had no difficulty whatever in receiving signals using the regular city supply line to supply the plate or anode voltage. This cannot be done with the audion which is too sensitive to slight changes in the voltage of that circuit. The slight fluctuations which occur in the voltage of the city supply line cause, however, no effect at all in the pliotron.

In order to get the greatest sensitiveness in the use of this detector, the potential of the grid is so adjusted that we work on the flat part of the current-voltage curve, thus rendering it possible greatly to increase the current by a slight change in the grid voltage. In fact, the pliotron is always used by us in such a way that most of the electrons emitted from the filament return to the filament when no signals are coming in.

Digitized by Google

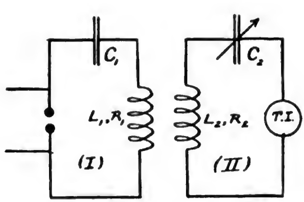
A DERIVATION OF THE BJERKNES LOGARITHMIC DECREMENT FORMULA

By

LOUIS COHEN

It is the purpose of this paper to present a new derivation of the well-known Bjerknes logarithmic decrement formula. The author believes that the method and the mathematical treatment of the problem as given here is simpler and easier to follow than the original work of Bjerknes; and it may therefore be of interest to radio engineers.

The Bjerknes method consists essentially in coupling loosely an oscillatory circuit, which includes also a thermo-indicating instrument, to the exciting circuit, and noting the readings on the instrument in the oscillatory circuit when that circuit is exactly in resonance with the exciting circuit, and when it is slightly off resonance. The arrangement of circuits is shown schematic-



ally in the accompanying diagram; we denote the exciting circuit by (I) and the resonance circuit by (II). If the coupling is very weak, the current induced in circuit (II) is small, and its inductive reaction on circuit (I) is negligible. In that case we may consider that circuit (I) acts merely as a source of e. m. f. for circuit (II) thru the mutual inductance between them. The e.m.f. induced in circuit (II) is of the same frequency and the same damping as the current in circuit (I), and we have then

Digitized by Google

the following differential equation for the e.m.f.'s acting in circuit (II):*

$$L_2 \frac{dI}{dt} + R_2 I + \frac{1}{C_2} \int I_2 \, dt = E \varepsilon^{(j\omega_1 - a_1)t} \qquad (1)$$

where $\omega_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{L_1 C_1}}$, and $a_1 = \frac{R_1}{2 L_1}$;

the frequency constant and damping factor of circuit (I).

The e. m. f. acting on circuit (II) generates a current in it of the same frequency and the same damping as that of the e. m. f. In addition to this, however, we also have a transient current in circuit (II), which is due to the fact that an inductive circuit does not respond instantly to the impressed e. m. f.; it requires a certain time interval before the permanent condition is established. Since, however, in this case the e. m. f. acting on circuit (II) is itself intermittent, when a spark discharge is used, for instance, in circuit (I), the permanent condition is never reached. The transient current comes into play every time the e. m. f. begins to act on circuit (II), which means at every spark discharge in circuit (I). The transient current in circuit (II) is also of a damped oscillatory character.

We have then for the total current in circuit (II),

$$I = I_1 + I_2, \qquad (2)$$

where I_1 may be considered as the forced current, and I_2 the transient or free oscillatory current.

Since I_1 is of the same frequency and the same damping as the impressed e. m. f., we have

$$I \propto \varepsilon^{(j\omega_1 - a_1)t} \text{ and}$$

$$\frac{dI_1}{dt} = (j\omega_1 - a_1) I_1, \quad \int I_1 \, dt = \frac{1}{j\omega_1 - a_1} I_1.$$

---

*(Radio engineers are reminded of de Moivre's theorem; namely $\varepsilon^{j\theta} = \cos\theta + j\sin\theta$, where $j = \sqrt{-1}$. As a matter of symbolic notation, and for ease of mathematical manipulation, $\varepsilon^{j\theta}$ is carried thru all calculations, the understanding being that only its real part, $\cos\theta$ shall be retained in the final results.

Remembering this convention, the right hand member of equation (1) becomes

$$E\varepsilon^{j\omega_1 t}\varepsilon^{-a_1 t} = E\varepsilon^{-a_1 t}(\cos\omega_1 t + j\sin\omega_1 t).$$

Passing to the real part, this stands for

$$E\varepsilon^{-a_1 t}\cos\omega_1 t.$$

This is merely the mathematical expression for the statement directly preceding equation (1) in the text.—EDITOR.)

Digitized by Google

Equation (1) may therefore be written in the following form:

$$\left\{L_2(j\,\omega_1 - \alpha_1) + R_2 + \frac{1}{C_2(j\,\omega_1 - \alpha_1)}\right\} I_1 = E\varepsilon^{(j\omega_1 - a_1)t},$$

and

$$I_1 = \frac{E\,\varepsilon^{(j\omega_1 - a_1)t}}{L_2(j\,\omega_1 - \alpha_1) + R_2 + \dfrac{1}{C_2(j\,\omega_1 - \alpha_1)}}. \tag{3}$$

Putting $\alpha_2 = \dfrac{R_2}{2\,L_2}$, and $\omega_2^2 + \alpha_2^2 = \dfrac{1}{L_2 C_2}$, and rearranging, equation (3) takes the form

$$I_1 = \frac{E(j\,\omega_1 - \alpha_1)\,\varepsilon^{(j\omega_1 - a_1)t}}{L_2\left\{\omega_2^2 - \omega_1^2 + (\alpha_2 - \alpha_1)^2 + 2\,j\,\omega_1(\alpha_2 - \alpha_1)\right\}}. \tag{4}$$

The potential across the condenser C_2 due to charging current I_1 is,

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{C_2}\int I_2\,d\,t = \frac{E\,\varepsilon^{(j\omega_1 - a_1)t}}{L_2 C_2\left\{\omega_2^2 - \omega_1^2 + (\alpha_2 - \alpha_1)^2 + 2\,j\,(\alpha_2 - \alpha_1)\right\}}. \tag{5}$$

Taking only the real parts of I_1 and V_1 we have*

$$I_1 = K\sqrt{\omega_1^2 + \alpha_1^2}\,\varepsilon^{-a_1 t}\cos(\omega_1 t + \phi + \psi), \tag{6}$$

$$V_1 = \frac{K}{C_2}\,\varepsilon^{-a_1 t}\sin(\omega_1 t + \phi), \tag{7}$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} &\text{where } K = \frac{E}{L_2\sqrt{\left\{\omega_2^2 - \omega_1^2 + (\alpha_2 - \alpha_1)^2\right\}^2 + 4\,\omega_1^2(\alpha_2 - \alpha_1)^2}}.\\ &\tan\phi = \frac{\omega_2^2 - \omega_1^2 + (\alpha_2 - \alpha_1)^2}{2\,\omega_1(\alpha_2 - \alpha_1)},\\ &\tan\psi = \frac{\alpha_1}{\omega_1}. \end{aligned}\right\} \tag{8}$$

For the transient terms I_2 and V_2, it is only necessary to consider the character of the free current in a circuit of inductance L_2, capacity C_2, and resistance R_2. The solution of the problem

* (It is to be noted that the *real* part of $\dfrac{A + B\,j}{X + Y\,j}$ obtained by multiplying numerator and denominator by the conjugate imaginary, $X - Y\,j$, and simplifying, is $\dfrac{A\,X + B\,Y}{X^2 + Y^2}$.

The modulus, or phase angle of $P + Q\,j$ is θ where $\tan\theta = \dfrac{Q}{P}$.

For the fraction above, it is $\tan\theta = \dfrac{B\,X - A\,Y}{A\,X + B\,Y}$.—EDITOR.)

Digitized by Google

is well known; we shall therefore give here the final equations only, we have

$$I_2 = D_1 \varepsilon^{-a_2 t} \cos \omega_2 t - D_2 \varepsilon^{-a_2 t} \sin \omega_2 t, \tag{9}$$

$$V_2 = \varepsilon^{-a_2 t} \sqrt{\frac{L_2}{C_2}} \left\{ D_1 \cos(\omega_2 t - \gamma) - D_2 \sin(\omega_2 t - \gamma) \right\}, \tag{10}$$

$$\tan \gamma = \frac{\omega_2}{a_2}.$$

The constants D_1 and D_2 are to be determined from the initial conditions of the problem.

We shall consider now separately the two cases: first when the electrical constants of circuit (II) are adjusted for resonance to circuit (I), and second when slightly out of resonance.

Resonance condition, $\omega_2 = \omega_1$.

The total current in circuit (II) is

$$\left.\begin{aligned} I_r = I_1 + I_2 &= \omega_1 K_r \varepsilon^{-a_1 t} \cos(\omega_1 t + \phi + \psi) + \\ &\qquad \varepsilon^{-a_2 t} (D_1 \cos \omega_1 t - D_2 \sin \omega_1 t), \\ V_r = V_1 + V_2 &= \frac{K_r}{C_2} \varepsilon^{-a_1 t} \sin(\omega_1 t + \phi) + \\ &\qquad \varepsilon^{-a_2 t} \sqrt{\frac{L_2}{C_2}} \left\{ D_1 \cos(\omega_1 t - \gamma) - D_2 \sin(\omega_1 t - \gamma). \right. \end{aligned}\right\} \tag{11}$$

$$\begin{aligned} K_r &= \frac{E}{L_2 (a_2 - a_1) \sqrt{(a_2 - a_1)^2 + 4 \omega_1^2}}, \\ &= \frac{E}{2 L_2 \omega_1 (a_2 - a_1)}. \end{aligned} \tag{12}$$

In the above and subsequent equations a^2 is neglected in comparison with ω^2, $\frac{a^2}{\omega^2}$ is very small in comparison with unity.

The angle ψ is very small, and for the resonance condition the angle ϕ is also very small, hence we may put $\psi = \phi = O$. Also since $\frac{\omega}{a}$ is a large quantity, $\gamma = 90°$ approximately. Equations (II) reduce then to the following:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} I_r &= K_r \omega_1 \varepsilon^{-a_1 t} \cos \omega_1 t + \varepsilon^{-a_2 t} (D_1 \cos \omega_1 t - D_2 \sin \omega_1 t) \\ V_r &= \frac{K_r}{C_2} \varepsilon^{-a_1 t} \sin \omega_1 t + \varepsilon^{-a_2 t} \sqrt{\frac{L_2}{C_2}} \left\{ D_1 \sin \omega_1 t + D_2 \cos \omega_1 t \right\} \end{aligned}\right\}. \tag{13}$$

Digitized by Google

To determine the constants D_1 and D_2, we note that for $t = 0$, $I = 0$ and $V = 0$. We have then,

$$K_r \omega_1 + D_1 = 0,$$
$$D_2 = 0,$$
$$\therefore \qquad D_1 = - K_r \omega_1,$$

and
$$I_r = K_r \omega_1 \cos \omega_1 t \left(\varepsilon^{-a_1 t} - \varepsilon^{-a_2 t}\right). \tag{14}$$

The integrated effect of the square of the current for a complete train of oscillations is,

$$J_r^2 = \int_0^\infty I_r^2 \, d\, t = K_r^2 \omega_1^2 \int_0^\infty \cos^2 \omega_1 t \left(\varepsilon^{-a_1 t} - \varepsilon^{-a_2 t}\right)^2 d\, t. \tag{15}$$

The above integral is well known (see Peirce's "Table of Integrals"), and we get

$$J_r^2 = K_r^2 \omega_1^2 \left(\frac{1}{4\, a_1} + \frac{1}{4\, a_2} - \frac{1}{a_1 + a_2}\right)$$
$$= \frac{K_r^2 \omega_1^2 (a_1 - a_2)^2}{4\, a_1 a_2 (a_1 + a_2)}. \tag{16}$$

Non-resonance condition.

In this case $\tan \phi$ is very large and $\phi = 90°$ approximately. The total current in the circuit and the potential across the condenser are given by the following expressions:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} I = I_1 + I_2 &= - K \omega_1 \varepsilon^{-a_1 t} \sin \omega_1 t + \varepsilon^{-a_2 t} (D_1 \cos \omega_2 t - D_2 \sin \omega_2 t) \\ V = V_1 + V_2 &= \frac{K}{C_2} \varepsilon^{-a_1 t} \cos \omega_1 t + \varepsilon^{-a_2 t} \sqrt{\frac{L_2}{C_2}} \{ D_1 \sin \omega_2 t + D_2 \cos \omega_2 t \} \end{aligned}\right\} \tag{17}$$

where the value of K is given by (8).

For $t = O$, we have $I = O$ and $V = O$, hence

$$D_1 = O,$$
$$\frac{K}{C_2} + \sqrt{\frac{L_2}{C_2}} L_2 = O.$$

Therefore

$$D_2 = - \frac{K}{C_2} \sqrt{\frac{C_2}{L_2}} = - \frac{K}{\sqrt{L_2 C_2}} = K \omega_2. \tag{18}$$

Substituting above value of D_2 in (17) we get,

$$I = - K \omega_1 \varepsilon^{-a_1 t} \sin \omega_1 t + K \omega_2 \varepsilon^{-a_2 t} \sin \omega_2 t. \tag{19}$$

Digitized by Google

The integrated effect of the square of the current is,

$$J^2 = \int_0^\infty I^2 dt = K^2 \int_0^\infty \{\omega_2 \varepsilon^{-a_2 t} \sin \omega_2 t - \omega_1 \varepsilon^{-a_1 t} \sin \omega_1 t\}^2 dt. \tag{20}$$

The above integral can be separated into three parts. We have

$$\int_0^\infty \varepsilon^{-2a_2 t} \sin^2 \omega_2 t\, dt = \frac{\omega_2^2}{4\, a_2 (a_2^2 + \omega_2^2)} = \frac{1}{4\, a_2},$$

$$\int_0^\infty \varepsilon^{-2a_1 t} \sin^2 \omega_1 t\, dt = \frac{\omega_1^2}{4\, a_1 (a_1^2 + \omega_1^2)} = \frac{1}{4\, a_1}$$

$$\int_0^\infty \varepsilon^{-(a_1 + a_2) t} \sin \omega_1 t \sin \omega_2 t\, dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^\infty \varepsilon^{-(a_1 + a_2) t} \{\cos (\omega_1 - \omega_2) t - \cos (\omega_1 + \omega_2) t\}\, dt$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_0^\infty \varepsilon^{-(a_1 + a_2) t} \cos (\omega_1 - \omega_2) t\, dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{(a_1 + a_2)^2 + (\omega_1 - \omega_2)^2} \Big[-(a_1 + a_2) \cos (\omega_1 - \omega_2) t + (\omega_1 - \omega_2) \sin (\omega_1 - \omega_2) t \Big] \varepsilon^{-(a_1 + a_2) t} \Big/_0^\infty$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \frac{a_1 + a_2}{(a_1 + a_2)^2 + (\omega_1 - \omega_2)^2}$$

Similarly

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_0^\infty \varepsilon^{-(a_1 + a_2) t} \cos (\omega_1 + \omega_2) t\, dt = \frac{1}{2} \frac{a_1 + a_2}{(a_1 + a_2)^2 + (\omega_1 + \omega_2)^2}.$$

Combining the results from the above integrals, we get

$$J^2 = \int_0^\infty I^2 dt = K^2 \left\{ \frac{\omega_1^2}{4a_1} + \frac{\omega_2^2}{4a_2} - \frac{\omega_1 \omega_2 (a_1 + a_2)}{(a_1 + a_2)^2 + (\omega_1 - \omega_2)^2} - \frac{\omega_1 \omega_2 (a_1 + a_2)}{(a_1 + a_2)^2 + (\omega_1 + \omega_2)^2} \right\}. \tag{21}$$

The last term in the above equation is negligibly small in comparison with the other terms, hence

$$J^2 = K^2 \left\{ \frac{\omega_1^2}{4\, a_1} + \frac{\omega_2^2}{4\, a_2} - \frac{\omega_1 \omega_2 (a_1 + a_2)}{(a_1 + a_2)^2 + (\omega_1 - \omega_2)^2} \right\} \tag{22}$$

$$= \frac{K^2}{4} \left\{ \frac{(\omega_1^2 a_2 + \omega_2^2 a_1) \{(a_1 + a_2)^2 + (\omega_1 - \omega_2)^2\} - 4 a_1 a_2 \omega_1 \omega_2 (a_1 + a_2)}{a_1 a_2 \{(a_1 + a_2)^2 + (\omega_1 - \omega_2)^2\}} \right\}.$$

Since the difference in the values of ω_1 and ω_2 is small, we may write $\omega_1^2 a_2 + \omega_2^2 a_1 = \omega_1^2 (a_1 + a_2)$ and

$$4\, \omega_1 \omega_2 a_1 a_2 (a_1 + a_2) = 4\, \omega_1^2 a_1 a_2 (a_1 + a_2),$$

and in using the final formula we must bear in mind the approxi-

Digitized by Google

mation thus introduced; that is, to obtain accurate results, the difference in the values of ω_2 and ω_1 must be made small.

With this approximation, formula (22) simplifies to the following:

$$J^2 = \frac{K^2\,\omega_1^2}{4}\left\{\frac{(a_1+a_2)\left\{(a_1-a_2)^2+(\omega_1-\omega_2)^2\right\}}{4\,a_1 a_2\left\{(a_1+a_2)^2+(\omega_1-\omega_2)^2\right\}}\right\}. \qquad (23)$$

Introducing the value of K^2 from (8), we get

$$J^2 = \frac{E^2\,\omega_1^2\,(a_1+a_2)\left\{(a_1-a_2)^2+(\omega_1-\omega_2)^2\right\}}{4\,L_2^2\,a_1 a_2\left\{(a_1+a_2)^2+(\omega_1-\omega_2)^2\right\}\left\{\left[(a_2-a_1)^2+\omega_2^2-\omega_1^2\right]^2+4\,\omega_1^2(a_2-a_1)^2\right\}} \qquad (24)$$

The second factor in the denominator can be put in the following form:

$$\left\{(a_2-a_1)^2+(\omega_2-\omega_1)^2\right\}^2+4\,\omega_1^2(a_2-a_1)^2 = (a_2-a_1)^4$$
$$+\,2\,(a_2-a_1)^2(\omega_2^2-\omega_1^2)+(\omega_2^2-\omega_1^2)^2+4\,\omega_1^2(a_2-a_1)^2$$
$$= (a_2-a_1)^4+2\,(a_2-a_1)^2(\omega_2^2+\omega_1^2)+(\omega_2+\omega_1)^2(\omega_2-\omega_1)^2$$

Neglecting the term $(a_2-a_1)^4$, and introducing the same approximation used before, the above reduces to,

$$4\,\omega_1^2\left\{(a_2-a_1)^2+(\omega_2-\omega_1)^2\right\}.$$

Substituting this in (24), we get

$$J^2 = \frac{E^2\,(a_1+a_2)}{16\,L_2^2\,a_1 a_2\left\{(a_1+a_2)^2+(\omega_1-\omega_2)^2\right\}}. \qquad (25)$$

For resonance condition we have by combining (16) and (12),

$$J_r^2 = \frac{E^2}{16\,L_2^2\,a_1 a_2\,(a_1+a_2)}. \qquad (26)$$

From (25) and (26) we get by division,

$$\frac{J_r^2}{J^2} = \frac{(a_1+a_2)^2+(\omega_1-\omega_2)^2}{(a_1+a_2)^2}, \qquad (27)$$

and

$$\frac{J_r^2-J^2}{J^2} = \frac{(\omega_1-\omega_2)^2}{(a_1+a_2)^2}. \qquad (28)$$

Hence

$$a_1+a_2 = (\omega_1-\omega_2)\sqrt{\frac{J^2}{J_r^2-J^2}}. \qquad (29)$$

If δ_1 and δ_2 are the logarithmic decrements per semi-period of circuits (I) and (II) respectively, then $a_1 = 2\,n_1\,\delta_1$ and $a_2 = 2\,n_2\,\delta_2$. Introducing these values in (29), and assuming that the frequencies are nearly the same, equation (29) becomes,

$$\delta_1+\delta_2 = \pi\left(1-\frac{n_2}{n_1}\right)\frac{J}{\sqrt{J_r^2-J^2}}, \qquad (30)$$

Digitized by Google

which is the well known logarithmic decrement formula given in all text books on radio engineering.

SUMMARY: The Bjerknes method of determining the logarithmic decrement of a circuit consists in coupling loosely to it an oscillatory circuit containing a thermo indicator; the latter circuit having known constants. From the resonance curve obtained by detuning the latter circuit, the logarithmic decrement of the unknown circuit is calculable by formula (30) above.

The current in the resonant circuit is the sum of two component currents; one forced (and of the same decrement and frequency as the exciting current) and one a transient or free oscillatory current. Using the convenient mathematical method of imaginary symbolic operators, the differential equation of the excited current is set up and solved for the resonance condition and for non-resonant conditions. The integrated effect of the square of the current is obtained for each case. Proceeding on the assumption that the detuning of the circuits is not large, the usual formula for obtaining the logarithmic decrement is derived.

Digitized by Google

VOLUME 3 DECEMBER, 1915 NUMBER 4

PROCEEDINGS

of

The Institute of Radio Engineers

(INCORPORATED)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TECHNICAL PAPERS AND DISCUSSIONS

INDEX TO VOLUME 3

EDITED BY
ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, Ph.D.

PUBLISHED QUARTERLY BY
THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, INC.
ONE HUNDRED AND ELEVEN BROADWAY
NEW YORK

THE TABLE OF CONTENTS FOLLOWS ON PAGE 305

Digitized by Google

GENERAL INFORMATION

The right to reprint limited portions or abstracts of the articles, discussions, or editorial notes in the Proceedings is granted on the express condition that specific reference shall be made to the source of such material. Diagrams and photographs in the Proceedings may not be reproduced without securing permission to do so from the Institute thru the Editor.

Those desiring to present original papers before the Institute of Radio Engineers are invited to submit their manuscript to the Editor.

Manuscripts and letters bearing on the Proceedings should be sent to Alfred N. Goldsmith, Editor of Publications, The College of the City of New York, New York.

Requests for additional copies of the Proceedings and communications dealing with Institute matters in general should be addressed to the Secretary, The Institute of Radio Engineers, 111 Broadway, New York.

The Proceedings of the Institute are published quarterly and contain the papers and the discussions thereon as presented at the meetings in New York, Washington, Boston or Seattle.

Payment of the annual dues by a member entitles him to one copy of each number of the Proceedings issued during the period of his membership. Members may purchase, when available, copies of the Proceedings issued prior to their election at 75 cents each.

Subscriptions to the Proceedings are received from non-members at the rate of \$1.00 per copy or \$4.00 per year. To foreign countries the rates are \$1.25 per copy or \$5.00 per year. A discount of 25 per cent. is allowed to libraries and booksellers. The English distributing agency is "The Electrician Printing and Publishing Company," Fleet Street, London, E. C.

Members presenting papers before the Institute are entitled to ten copies of the paper and of the discussion. Arrangements for the purchase of reprints of separate papers can be made thru the Editor.

It is understood that the statements and opinions given in the Proceedings are the views of the individual members to whom they are credited, and are not binding on the membership of the Institute as a whole.

COPYRIGHT, 1915, BY

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS, INC.

ONE HUNDRED AND ELEVEN BROADWAY

NEW YORK, N. Y.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS

Following the Index at the end of this number are the title page, page of general information, and table of contents page for the entire Volume 3 (1915) of the PROCEEDINGS. These last may be suitably placed at the beginning of the volume for binding.

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS AND BOARD OF DIRECTION, 1915

(Terms expire January 5, 1916; except as otherwise noted.)

PRESIDENT

JOHN STONE STONE

VICE-PRESIDENT

GEORGE W. PIERCE

TREASURER

WARREN F. HUBLEY

SECRETARY

DAVID SARNOFF

EDITOR OF PUBLICATIONS

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH

MANAGERS

(Serving till January 2, 1918.)

LOUIS W. AUSTIN — JOHN HAYS HAMMOND, JR.

(Serving till January 3, 1917.)

ROBERT H. MARRIOTT — GUY HILL

(Serving till January 5, 1916.)

GEORGE S. DAVIS — ROY A. WEAGANT

EMIL J. SIMON — JOHN L. HOGAN, JR.

LLOYD ESPENSCHIED

ADVERTISING MANAGER

LOUIS G. PACENT

PAST-PRESIDENTS

SOCIETY OF WIRELESS TELEGRAPH ENGINEERS

JOHN STONE STONE, 1907–8 — LEE DE FOREST, 1909–10

FRITZ LOWENSTEIN, 1911–12

THE WIRELESS INSTITUTE

ROBERT H. MARRIOTT, 1909–10–11–12

THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS

ROBERT H. MARRIOTT, 1912 — GREENLEAF W. PICKARD, 1913

LOUIS W. AUSTIN, 1914

Digitized by Google

STANDING COMMITTEES

1915

COMMITTEE ON STANDARDIZATION

Alfred N. Goldsmith, *Chairman*, College of the City of New York,	New York
Louis W. Austin	Washington, D. C.
Louis Cohen	Washington, D. C.
James Erskine-Murray	London, England
John L. Hogan, Jr.	New York
Guy Hill	New York
Lester Israel, *Secretary*	New York
Arthur E. Kennelly	Cambridge, Mass.
Frederick A. Kolster	Washington, D. C.
Robert H. Marriott	Seattle, Wash.
Greenleaf W. Pickard	Boston, Mass.
George W. Pierce	Cambridge, Mass.
Emil J. Simon	New York
Charles H. Taylor	New York
C. Tissot	Paris, France
Roy A. Weagant	Aldene, N. J.
Jonathan Zenneck	Munich, Germany
John Stone Stone, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON PUBLICITY

John L. Hogan, Jr., *Chairman*	New York
George S. Davis	New York
Robert H. Marriott	Seattle, Wash.
David Sarnoff	New York
Emil J. Simon	New York
Robert B. Woolverton	San Francisco, Cal.
John Stone Stone, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON PAPERS

Alfred N. Goldsmith, *Chairman*, College of the City of New York,	New York
Louis W. Austin	Washington, D. C.
John L. Hogan, Jr.	New York
Arthur E. Kennelly	Cambridge, Mass.
Robert H. Marriott	Seattle, Wash.
Robert B. Woolverton	San Francisco, Cal.
John Stone Stone, *ex-officio*	New York

Digitized by Google

COMMITTEE ON FINANCE

ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, *Chairman*, College of the City of New York,	New York
GUY HILL	New York
JOHN L. HOGAN, JR.	New York
ROY A. WEAGANT	Aldene, N. J.
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

SPECIAL COMMITTEES

COMMITTEE ON SAN FRANCISCO REPRESENTATION

ROBERT B. WOOLVERTON, *Chairman*	San Francisco, Cal.
JOHN L. HOGAN, JR.	New York
ROBERT H. MARRIOTT	Seattle, Wash.
DAVID SARNOFF	New York
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON FORMATION OF SEATTLE SECTION

ROBERT H. MARRIOTT, *Chairman*	Seattle, Wash.
FREDERICK G. SIMPSON	Seattle, Wash.
ROY A. THOMPSON	Seattle, Wash.
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENTS

JOHN L. HOGAN, JR., *Chairman*	New York
WARREN F. HUBLEY	Newark, N. J.
DAVID SARNOFF	New York
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

COMMITTEE ON 1915 FINANCIAL MATTERS

WARREN F. HUBLEY, *Chairman*	Newark, N. J.
JOHN L. HOGAN, JR.	New York
DAVID SARNOFF	New York
JOHN STONE STONE, *ex-officio*	New York

Digitized by Google

It is with deep regret that the Institute of Radio Engineers announces the death of

Mr. N. H. C. Taylor

He was the radio operator on board the steamship "Marowijne," which foundered with all on board during a hurricane on the Caribbean Sea on August 14, 1915. Mr. Taylor, who was an Associate Member of the Institute, was in the employ of the Tropical Radio Telegraph Company at the time of his death.

The heroic steadfastness required by the radio operator in stress and storm is shown by this catastrophe.

Digitized by Google

THE TRAINING OF THE RADIO OPERATOR*

By

M. E. Packman

In contra-distinction to the advance that has been made by the scientific and commercial development of radio telegraphy, the operator problem stands much as it did in the earliest days. While radio equipment has undergone many improvements, traffic departments have accomplished much in the organization and collection of business, and the number of equipments has greatly increased, little has been done to increase the efficiency of the operating staff. In former days the only question asked of a man applying for a position as wireless operator was; "Are you an operator?" Since the advent of the Government License it has been changed to "Have you a license?" An affirmative answer was and is, in the majority of cases, all that is required to secure the applicant his position. In some cases, this was necessary; and it will undoubtedly continue to be so inasmuch as it is not always possible to obtain a competent man at the particular moment that an operator is needed. It seems, however, that if the question of the training and selection of operators for radio service were handled in a manner more in accord with that followed by railroads, the deplorable condition that exists in some land and ship stations would be greatly improved. As all persons acquainted with the commercial development of radio communication in this country well know, a very chaotic state of affairs existed prior to the time that the Department of Commerce placed certain restrictions on radio equipment, operators, and methods of operating. After the matter of wave length restrictions has been more nearly adjusted to meet present conditions, I think it will be possible to say that as a whole conditions have been much improved.

As far as the operators are concerned, the Government examinations have weeded out many undesirable men from the service and consequently have raised the standard a little higher, but it must be borne in mind that the Department of Com-

* Presented before The Institute of Radio Engineers, New York, October 6th, 1915.

Digitized by Google

merce looks at the efficiency of the operator from a different point of view than should the commercial company if it is seeking the most suitable men. The requirements of the department are only a part of what good commercial service demands, tho in many cases a first grade license is all that is required or asked for.

As one man of my acquaintance, who employs a great many operators every year has stated in referring to the operators on his ships, "Some of these men cannot send, some of them cannot receive, some of them cannot adjust a detector, and some of them cannot tune." Such men as he refers to, that do little else than ride back and forth on the ships, are common in the radio service everywhere; and the excuse is made that it is difficult to find men who are good telegraphers and at the same time are capable of handling a radio set to the greatest advantage. This condition is the natural result of attempting to get efficiency out of men who have had no telegraphic experience or who have had no training in the use of commercial radio apparatus. I have known men whose highest aim in life was to be so expert a telegrapher that they could sit down and work any telegraph circuit at which they might be placed. On the other hand, there are radio operators who are interested only in the handling of the instruments; and again there are men who have no particular interest in any phase of the business, other than its outside attractions. Obviously none of these classes of men completely fill the requirements of a "good" operator, but this list includes practically all the available men, with few exceptions, who have not been specially trained.

A question then arises: what are the qualifications of a "good" operator. In the first place, he should be capable of transmitting signals clearly, accurately, and rapidly in either American Morse or Continental Morse. He should understand that any communication not only has to be sent but also to be received; and realizing this, he will space his characters and words so that they will be easily understood by the receiving operator. He should know when to repeat and when it is unnecessary, when to send slowly and when he may send faster. In receiving, he should be able to read almost any kind of sending, and to make a neat copy with either pen or typewriter regardless of whether he has interference to contend with or not. If he is capable of getting the most out of his instruments he must thoroly understand the principles which underlie their design. This knowledge must be so perfect and of so practical a nature

Digitized by Google

that he will know instantly what is needed in case of emergency or disaster. He must have a comprehensive knowledge of telegraphic tariffs, traffic, methods of routing, the location of various radio and telegraphic stations, etc., so that he can quickly determine in what way a message can be handled with the greatest dispatch and least expense. This will not only be an aid to him in procuring business but it will be of benefit to the general public with whom he deals. He must be ready and willing to perform the functions of his office at all times; and in every case he must be a gentleman.

Some of the qualifications enumerated involve inborn personal characteristics that are apart from any training that a school can give. Experience has shown that one phase of the work will appeal more strongly to one man than another and that it is seldom the case that a man of his own initiative becomes proficient in all the things essential to his work. I think it can be said, however, that given a man with average intelligence, willingness, and six months training in a well organized school; a proficient radio operator can be developed.

The object of this paper is briefly to outline the course in "Radio Telegraphy" as given at Dodge's Institute of Telegraphy at Valparaiso in Indiana, and to show some of the methods that are used in an effort to meet the requirements of a comprehensive training for radio operators or other persons interested in the art of radio communication. More than one-third of the students entering the school are enrolled in the Radio Department, and of this number about two-thirds also take the work in the Morse Department, thus familiarizing themselves with both codes. Aside from the special work in each of these departments all students are required to take a half hour's work in penmanship, under a competent instructor, each day. To anyone familiar with telegraphic work, the importance of this is apparent. The school is also equipped with a large number of typewriters so that the student may become proficient in copying directly from the circuits by this means. The greater portion of the students completing the course in Radio Telegraphy enter the service of the Marconi Wireless Telegraph Company with which company we have a working arrangement. Others of these students enter other commercial or government service.

As might be expected in an institution of this kind the student body is made up of all classes. The students are of all ages, and they come from all parts of the United States; many of them come even from foreign countries. Some of those who

Digitized by Google

enroll in the Radio Department, especially, are college graduates; many are high school graduates, while some of them have very meagre education. Altho we have no regular entrance requirements, as far as education is concerned, it is frequently the case that we are compelled to refuse the applicant because of his lack of elementary education. The average student is between eighteen and twenty years of age and has had two years of high school training. This is, of course, a desirable qualification, and I have found that those students who have had amateur experience together with the high school work are the most apt in mastering the radio work. This is due, of course, to their great interest in the radio field. Another class of men that invariably develop into excellent radio operators is drawn from the commercial and railroad fields. There is also a great variance in the ulterior motives of the different students. The majority of them, of course, expect to prepare themselves for service as commercial radio operators. However, we have many special students with entirely different objects in view. Among these are men from the armies and navies of foreign countries as well as some from the United States government service. We have other students who are interested in the subject from a scientific standpoint only, some who expect to teach the subject in other schools and colleges, and so on.

In arranging a course that will meet these varied conditions, numerous points had to be considered. In the first place, it is impossible in most cases for the student to remain in school for a period exceeding six months. This means that all the work relating to the subject must be covered within this time at most. In the second place, owing to the lack of preparatory training in electrical science, it is necessary to begin with the very principles of electricity; and considering the extent of such electrical knowledge that an operator should have, and the complexity of some electrical ideas, it requires a very careful selection of the subject matter in order that the course be made as comprehensive as possible. Many of the theories which underlie the working of radio apparatus, involve the principles of alternating currents, a subject which is usually taken up in the third or fourth year in engineering courses; and altho simple to an electrical engineer is very complex and difficult of explanation to a student who has no foundation for such work. Nevertheless, these ideas have to be covered in order that the student is eventually able to reason out many of the problems and questions that may present themselves sooner or later. In our work the students are not

Digitized by Google

shown lists of questions, the answers to which can be memorized, and their examinations are the result of actual knowledge of radio apparatus, its uses, merits, and failings. This, it appears, is the only possible manner in which a "good" operator can be trained so far as theory and manipulation of apparatus are concerned.*

In general, the theory, adjustment and operation of radio equipment is given in a series of lectures associated with laboratory work, which occupies three hours each forenoon, five days per week. The beginning class is held between 11 and 12, an intermediate class between 9 and 10, and the advanced class between 8 and 9. The hour between 10 and 11 is devoted to code practice. Other code classes are held from 1.30 to 3 P. M., 4 to 5 P. M., and 7 to 8 P. M. The penmanship class is held between 3.30 and 4 P. M. During the summer months, the evening session is discontinued. In describing the various parts of the course, I shall take up the code work first.

At the time the Department of Radio Telegraphy was established, the American Morse code was used almost exclusively in the radio service in this country, the South Wellfleet station being the only one that used Continental Morse extensively, so far as I am informed. With this condition existing, it was a simple matter to train a Morse operator to receive the same code thru telephone receivers. In the Morse Department of the school, there was and is every facility for training a student in Morse receiving where there are a great variety of speeds. A new student is started on a circuit where an instructor makes the characters of a letter and the student pronounces the letter; and as he becomes familiar with the combinations forming all the letters, he is advanced to a circuit on which short words are sent, which he calls off as he recognizes them. In this way a student is advanced from one circuit to another until he is receiving at a speed of twenty-five to thirty words per minute. On the more advanced circuits in the commercial and railway department, the instruction consists of commercial and railway messages or train orders. Examinations are held from time to

*One method of preparing a man for a government license, which I have been informed is used, is to furnish the student with a list of questions, such as are used by the inspectors in examining applicants for operators' licenses, together with the correct answer to each question. With such a list of questions and answers, it is a simple matter for a telegrapher to pass the examination as given by the Department of Commerce, provided he does not write down answer six for question five. Such a man is of course worthless in actual radio service altho he has nevertheless passed the requirements of the Department of Commerce.

Digitized by Google

time and the students making the fewest mistakes in their copies, which are marked with care, are advanced to higher circuits.

After a student who had enrolled in the radio course had progressed to the point where he could receive eighteen to twenty words per minute from a sounder, he was transferred to the radio code work. All such students were supplied with practice sets including a single slide tuning coil, detector, fixed condenser, head telephone receiver, and sufficient aluminum wire to construct an indoor antenna, as well as a key and buzzer mounted on a base board. An operator at the radio station in the school sent press matter at a speed of about fifteen words per minute for a period of an hour and a half or so, and at a faster speed for an equal period. Students, supplied with the small receiving sets which they had installed in their rooms, were supposed to spend the afternoon in copying these signals. This method was very good, in some respects, where the total number of students was small and where they were all able to receive ordinary Morse signals at a fair speed. They not only had the benefit of the code practice but they also had some practical experience in the adjustment of detectors and in tuning, which is, of course, a valuable part of an operator's training. On the other hand where students are depended upon to get their own practice in this way, they are very apt to waste a great deal of time and their progress is slow.

In the spring of 1913, the Department of Commerce regulations went into effect, calling for Continental code and examinations for licenses. It was evident that numerous changes would have to be made in the course of instruction in order that the students might receive the necessary and proper training. As a result a complete reorganization of the department was inaugurated. The Continental code is now taught exclusively in the Radio Department and the system used for many years in the Morse work is followed with the exception, of course, that all receiving is done with telephone receivers instead of by means of a sounder.

Ten code circuits, operated at various speeds, are used at the present time. On circuits 8, 9, and 10, which are the beginners' circuits open buzzers are used. An instructor sends letters singly on the lowest of these, and the student calls out the letter as he recognizes it. The student is not permitted to copy on paper at the start as it is found that he then invariably loses interest before he has accomplished anything. There is always

Digitized by Google

a little rivalry among the members of a group of new students as to which one will be the first to call off the letters as they are sent; and this urges them to use increased energy in mastering the first few days' work. As they become familiar with all the letters, figures, and characters prescribed for radio signaling the students are advanced to a higher circuit where they pronounce words. Inside of a few weeks or less, they are able to receive words sent at a rate of four or five per minute. The length of time required, of course, depends upon the natural aptitude of the student, and his application.

Figure 1 shows the general arrangement of the code and lecture room; the photograph, being taken from the instructor's desk does not, however, include the switch board and instruments

FIGURE 1

used in controlling the circuits. On circuits 1 to 7, all receiving is done thru double head telephone receivers similar to those used in commercial working. The transmitter or signal producing device used on all of these circuits consists of a buzzer, controlled by a telegraph key, having line wires connected to the terminals of the interrupter, a condenser being interposed in one or both of these. On circuits 3 to 7, there is one transmitter on each circuit, with telephone terminals bridged across the line wires for seven students. Circuits 1 and 2 are arranged in long

Digitized by Google

lines along the side of the code room, and each is divided into eight stations all of which are equipped with a buzzer transmitter, condenser and transfer switch for changing from sending to receiving. All of these circuits are connected with a Western Union switch board at the instructor's desk by means of which any one of the circuits may be connected with any other or any transmitter on the instructor's desk can be instantly connected, by means of a loop pin with any circuit. Or, in the same manner, a telephone transmitter may be connected with any circuit. The code speeds on circuits 7 to 1 are gradual variations from five or six words per minute on 7 to the highest speeds on circuits 1 and 2 which usually are connected together. Each of the buzzers on these circuits is separately adjusted so as to give out as good a note as possible, and it always happens that there are as many different tones as there are buzzers inasmuch as it is difficult to obtain a perfect tone from all. This I consider to be an extreme advantage, however, over the system used in some schools where one master vibrator or other audio frequency generating device is used as a source of power to supply all circuits. It is possible for a student to become so familiar with one spark frequency, especially if it is absolutely regular, that he will have great difficulty in copying commercial stations which have sparks varying in a more or less degree from the perfect tone. With the individual buzzer method, however, an experienced operator, when listening in on our faster circuits to the interchange of radio messages will not fail to recognize its true ring. Some of these student stations emit a high musical spark resembling the 500-cycle stations, while there are others of varying pitch down to the rough irregular spark such as is emitted by the old low frequency sets of the Shoemaker type. In fact nearly every condition of arcing or other irregularity in a commercial transmitter is automatically met.

To some this may appear to be a deplorable way in which to teach a student to copy telegraph code, but on further consideration it is evident that the student not having had a perfect spark to copy from at all times, has accustomed himself to just the conditions of regular commercial service. Altho the tendency is toward a universal use of musical sparks and apparatus with which such sparks can be readily and easily maintained, it will undoubtedly be a long time before the difficulties of tone adjustment will be done away with. Again, the moral effect of an irregular or rough spark is impressed upon the mind of the student. Some students of their own accord endeavor to get and

Digitized by Google

maintain a clear tone, while others are more or less indifferent. In any case, the advantages of the good tone are evident and a certain pride is ordinarily taken in maintaining such tones. (I have been told by old operators that our students can be recognized by the adjustment of their test buzzers.)

Another advantage of the individual buzzer arrangement is that the loudness of the different stations can be readily adjusted to any fixed value, assuming that the frequency of interruption is constant. As previously mentioned, a condenser is interposed between either one or both sides of the line and the buzzer, and by constructing these condensers so that they have different capacities, their impedences are different and hence different stations can be made to send out signals of different strengths. Some of the stations have adjustable condensers and hence have a ready means of "varying their power." At the instructor's desk, variable condensers are used so that the signal strength can be varied from just audibility to any desired value. Other methods of varying the signal strength in such circuits readily present themselves, but the method outlined above has proven to be the most satisfactory of any that I have tested. In any case it is exceedingly important that the practice signals be not too loud and it is desirable to have them of different strengths. It has been my experience that a student may become so proficient in the code work on the circuits, that he can copy the most complicated code and cipher messages from the fastest senders, but when placed in the radio receiving room he will be able to get but little of what is being sent. This is partly due to the fact that he may be practicing with too loud signals. Ability to read very faint signals from distant stations is largely a matter of ear training and for this reason it is desirable to have the practice signals quite weak. On the other hand, an operator who is accustomed to receiving such signals may become so confused by very loud signals that he will be unable to copy them.

Each station on circuits 1 and 2 is provided with four calls; that is, it represents four different ship or land stations and the operator at each of these places is expected to answer any one of these calls. Inasmuch as the international call letters assigned to commercial stations in this country, into the service of which most of our students go, are combinations beginning with W or K, each of the student stations has one call beginning with each of these letters. The two remaining calls are selected from those used in the United States Naval service or foreign stations, thus

Digitized by Google

giving a wide variety of combinations. Some of these calls are selected on account of the difficulty encountered in transmitting them, or again there may be two that are easily confused or wrongly interpreted by a receiving operator. Others admit of a rhythmical swing which experienced operators develop. Among the different stations and ships represented on these circuits are those at the principal ports on our sea coasts and on the Great Lakes and the vessels which are likely to be in communication with them. The instructor's desk answers to or uses any call not assigned to one of the student stations. Occasionally the entire system of calls is changed. It is thought that such a system as this trains the student to be quick to recognize as well as to send difficult or uncommon calls.

Practically all the code work on these faster circuits consists of message work, and such other communications as are actually carried between ships and radio stations. Everything is carried over these circuits in accordance with the provisions of the London Convention, the Marconi traffic regulations, and good judgment. Students are not permitted to converse over the circuit nor to carry on any conversation except where the exigency of the case demands it. Messages are sent from one station to another with proper prefixes and service instructions, being relayed where necessary and filed for future reference. As might be expected, a student is often tempted to give an O. K. on a message addressed to his station when a goodly portion of it is missing rather than to ask for a repetition or to say that he had not received it, and in order to circumvent this, nearly all the messages sent out from the instructor's desk are messages that call for answers or must be relayed. This proves to be a very satisfactory method of insuring that the communication has been actually received and soon the student ceases to commit such offenses. Sometimes a wrong check is purposely affixed to determine if the student will note this. The various ship stations send in their "T R" reports and positions which must conform to the practice of commercial stations; in fact, everything is handled as nearly in conformity with actual conditions as possible. Very little press is sent over these circuits as it not only gives the student a fictitious idea of his ability, but really furnishes little practice. In fact, I am convinced that it has a tendency to make him "guess" more than anything else, which is, of course, one of the worst habits that an operator can acquire. In case such material is sent over the circuits, it is generally an article having in it many uncommon words. In some instances

Digitized by Google

subjects in French, German or Spanish, or long lists of code or cipher words are sent in an endeavor to train the student to write down just what he receives, by sending such material that he is unable to form any advanced ideas.

Another failing common to many operators, which we have endeavored to overcome in our men, is the inability to read signals thru interference. There always has been more or less of this to contend with, but now that all commercial work is ordinarily carried on at the same wave length, or at best at a few wave lengths the confusion has become greater; and when severe atmospheric disturbances exist in addition, it taxes the ability of the operator to the utmost. The acquiring of ability or skill in reading signals under these conditions is a matter of patience and concentration of the mind on one particular tone; a faculty which can be developed by training. In order, in a measure, to duplicate the condition of interference and to bring out this faculty of copying under adverse conditions, I make it a practice at times to have an interfering transmitter, or possibly several, working on the same circuit at the same time the regular code practice is being carried on over this circuit. This is done an hour or so each day and the results are exceptional. Ordinarily an omnigraph or other automatic transmitter is used to operate the interfering buzzer, the strength of the signals being variable. However, at times two groups of students will be carrying on communication simultaneously on the same circuit.

For the regular code practice, no automatic transmitters or sending machines of any kind are used, altho we have a number of varieties; except that a day or two before the government inspector visits the school, the omnigraph is used in order that the applicant shall not be confused by its mechanical accuracy. Hand sending by expert radio operators is depended upon entirely. All students receive such instruction either one and a half or two hours per day depending upon which circuit they happen to be working and the state of their advancement. During such periods of the day as there is no instruction on the circuit the students send among themselves, each being assigned a certain part of an hour, the schedules being rigidly maintained.

It is generally considered that not all men can become expert senders, this being a natural qualification with some; but it has been our experience that nearly any person can become a good sender if he is taught the full arm "pump handle" movement and rigorously practices it. Slow sending, if heavy, distinct, and properly spaced is always better than light rapid

Digitized by Google

sending in the case of a new man. After he has once become a good sender, he easily acquires the speed which is essential in many cases. Taking operators as they are ordinarily found, better speed can generally be made and more business transacted in the same time, by sending good distinct characters at a speed of twenty or twenty-two words per minute than can be done by transmitting at a speed of twenty-eight or thirty words per minute. There is always a tendency for new men to endeavor to "burn up" some other operator by rapid sending and if he is a poor sender at best, a great deal of time is lost as a result. Our code circuits are fitted with good telegraph keys, some Western Union keys, and some heavier keys similar to those frequently found in radio stations; and students are urged to practice a correct method of sending on these during all their spare moments. In cases where a man is especially stiffened in the muscles of his forearm from manual labor, or in other cases, we insist on an hour or so of continuous sending every day. After a student has practiced a correct method of sending until he has become sufficiently competent to transmit signals clearly, accurately and without "breaking," he is allowed to operate the school station on field days. Students are always anxious to do this but good sending on the practice circuits is pre-requisite. In most cases a good sender is the result.

In the technical or theoretical phase of the work the first part of the course consists of a study of the elements of electricity and magnetism, emphasizing such points as relate directly to radio apparatus and abreviating such matters as are not of first-hand importance. Following these more elementary subjects, the course is extended into a study of dynamo electric machinery, going only briefly into the theory of such apparatus, but giving special attention to the actual principles of the generation of current, the factors influencing the output, the function of the various parts, as well as the use, and care of such machines and methods of making tests and repairs. In connection with the study of alternating current machines the student is familiarized with terms common to alternating current operation (frequency, wave form, power factor, etc.), so that when the study of capacity and inductance has been taken up, the elements of alternating current problems will be less difficult. To facilitate the study of dynamo-electric machinery, the laboratory is equipped with a number of types of motor-generator sets used in radio service as well as various other A. C. and D. C. motors and generators of different capacities, together with starters, rheo-

Digitized by Google

stats and other auxiliary apparatus. Figure 2 is a view of the general laboratory which shows some of this equipment. In the foreground is a direct current generator, belted to a three-phase

FIGURE 2

induction motor, the set being used to supply direct current for operating the motor-generators and other direct current apparatus. The generator of this set is of very open construction and the terminals of all windings are brought to a connection block, making it a very convenient machine for demonstration work. Along the right hand side of the picture can be seen several radio transmitters, of different types, used for instruction and demonstration work. Along the wall to the left, not visible in the photograph, are cabinets containing various kinds of physical and electrical instruments, tuning devices, measuring instruments, and other apparatus useful in experimental work in radio telegraphy.

After completing that part of the work covering dynamo-electric machinery, a study of electro-magnetic induction is taken up, theoretically and experimentally. This is one subject upon which too much time cannot be spent and every effort is made to present the phenomena of inductance and self and mutual induction in such a manner that the student will get a clear conception of principles involved. The effects of self inductance

Digitized by Google

are discussed in their relation to the primary circuits of induction coils and transformers. In the explanation of mutual induction I have found the use of audio frequency currents, generated by a buzzer, very helpful, using induction coils or coupling coils in which one of the coils can be rotated with respect to the other. Use is also made of coupling transformers of all types common to radio service, the result of which is that the student looks at the principle rather than any one form of construction. Many other schemes used by instructors in physics can be used to advantage. This part of the course is concluded with a study of the practical construction of commercial induction coils and transformers such as are used in radio installations, here as elsewhere, attention being drawn to methods of testing and making temporary or permanent repairs.

Following this work the next part of the radio set that is studied is the condenser, it being considered in its various forms and constructions. An effort is made to give the student a clear insight into the principles which are involved in certain important phenomena. Methods of calculating the approximate capacities of different types are shown, and then the means of obtaining any desired value of capacity, with definite dielectric strength, by the combination of standard units is demonstrated. Emphasis in this case is laid on the methods by wh ch the proper capacity in the condenser of a radio set can be obtained by re-arranging the separate units of the condenser which has been injured, thru breakdown or puncture, and the precautions which must be taken in thus using it. Methods of charging condensers as used in the closed circuit of transmitters and the necessity for and function of the spark gap are demonstrated; which leads to a study of oscillatory discharges.

It has been my experience that unless the theoretical work is varied or made attractive by the interposition of actual radio telegraphing, thus giving an actual demonstration of some of these theories, it often happens that the student will lose interest, with the result that he fails to grasp the very things which are most essential. At this point, then, a horizontal aerial is strung up a short distance from the ground thus constituting a very apparent air condenser, and an induction coil is connected thereto forming a plain aerial transmitter. With this arrangement signals or messages are sent to portable stations. Altho this type of transmitter is generally known to the student, the experiment proves an interesting diversion in which many of the practical difficulties encountered in the operation of such sets

Digitized by Google

with large induction coils, and their remedies, can be easily demonstrated and in a forcible manner.

Just at this point, when the student has in mind the oscillations of the current in this plain aerial transmitter and the radiation of electric waves, I have found it to be a very opportune time to go ahead with the explanation of the terms period and frequency, and their relation to wave length. With an aerial 100 feet long, all of which is visible, the student can be made almost to see the oscillation running out to the end of that wire and returning in a given time, and if the wire is longer that it will take a greater length of time for the complete oscillation.

After concluding the study of plain aerial transmitters, with stress laid on the limiting quantity of charge that can be converted into radio frequency energy in consequence of the small capacity of the aerial, the work naturally leads into the study of coupled transmitters wherein much larger capacities can be used. With an understanding of oscillatory currents already acquired, the effects of the constants of the closed circuit on the wave length are quite apparent. I have found that a study of wave lengths in a circuit which does not radiate waves, leads to much confusion and lack of understanding hence the reason for a consideration of wave length in connection with the plain aerial transmitter first.

During that part of the work covering closed circuits of the transmitter, I assume a circuit having a condenser of a certain capacity about which is shunted an inductance of some twenty turns. It is stated that the wave length using say two turns is 300 meters. The inductance of the helix per turn is then calculated, and the results tabulated. The student then calculates the wave length with the movable clip on each of the twenty turns and enters this data in his tabulation after which attention is invited to the fact that the wave length varies as the square of the number of turns. From this it is apparent that in case he was working on a ship and for any reason was required to change his wave length say from 300 to 600 meters the position of the clips would be instantly known, with fair approximation, without the use of a wave meter or other device. In like manner, the effect of the condenser capacity on the wave length is demonstrated; and cases are assumed wherein a portion of the condenser is damaged and the use of half of the condenser with a definite increase in the inductance will give the wave length required, this to be obtained without the use of measuring instruments. It is a well known fact that the majority of operators,

Digitized by Google

after having once located a 600-meter adjustment on their receiving tuners, actually do very little tuning, and in case of accident to a ship or its radio equipment, it is very necessary that the operator on such a ship should be able to maintain his apparatus in such a condition that he can send on a wave very nearly 600 meters in length. In cases where the distance is great, this may be of extreme importance. Close coupling will not answer in all cases and hence an endeavor is made to give the student a knowledge of the best and quickest way in which to meet such conditions (to say nothing of the value which such information is to him at all other times). In order to verify the calculations and to bring the facts more emphatically to mind, the wave length at each adjustment is measured in the laboratory by means of a wave meter and the results are tabulated along with the calculated values in the note book which every student keeps. The results of such measurement are also reproduced in curves.

Following this work, means for transferring the oscillating energy to the radiating circuit and the conditions under which the greatest current is produced in the antenna are taken up and explained. Various methods are demonstrated in the laboratory for indicating the maximum antenna current, so that an operator will have some way of determining if his antenna is radiating the maximum amount of energy whether he has an approved hot wire ammeter or not. In the study of resonance between an oscillating circuit and an oscillating E. M. F., no attempt is made to avoid the actual alternating current principles which determine the strength of current that will flow in a circuit containing resistance, inductance and capacity. Once this idea is formed in the mind of a student a great many questions such as resonance phenomena in the audio frequency circuits, the use and proper capacity of telephone condensers in receivers, etc., are readily understood. In any case of this kind, the general theory is explained and then demonstrated by experiment. After demonstrating the tuning of the open and closed circuits in different ways the effects of re-transference of energy between them and the production of two wave lengths are brought out. Here, as in many other cases, it is necessary to exaggerate the fact in order to make the desired impression, and for this purpose we have some special apparatus with which it is possible to produce two wave lengths differing from each other by several hundred meters, with the two circuits tuned to an intermediate value.

At this point we take up the study of spark gaps especially

Digitized by Google

the quenched gap which, when placed in the primary circuit of the above coupled system, serves to demonstrate the quenching action in a forcible manner. I have constructed a small quenched gap having ten sections which quenches perfectly operating on 60-cycle current in connection with a one-fourth kilowatt leakage transformer. An attempt to measure the wave length of the circuit in which it is contained shows a very flat wave having a decrement that is difficult to determine. This is shown mounted on a small panel set (Figure 2) which was built for some experimental work in transmitting on low antennas.

The work in transmitting sets is concluded with a study of several standard sets that are in commercial use, showing the inter-relation of the various parts and auxiliary apparatus such as meters, circuit breakers, antenna switches, etc. One of the sets that we have permanently installed in the school is a Marconi 2-kilowatt, 240-cycle set which was loaned to us thru the courtesy of Mr. John Bottomley. This set is complete with storage battery-induction coil auxiliary set, and receiver. Several other complete sets of composite type are also installed. Figure 3 is a view of the radio station showing the Marconi

FIGURE 3

2-kilowatt, 240-cycle transmitter, the storage battery auxiliary transmitter, switch boards, and various types of receiving apparatus.

Digitized by Google

During the course, about one week's time is spent on storage battery work in which are set forth the details of types common in radio service, their care, methods of charging, etc. Some circuits applicable to emergency ship lighting are also shown.

In taking up the study of receiving circuits and receiving apparatus, we begin with a review of the principles of resonance, again emphasizing the factors which determine the impedence; wherein it is seen that the alternating E. M. F. produced in the antenna by the passage of a wave train can only produce a maximum current in the antenna to earth circuit when the inductance and capacity of that circuit bear a definite relation to each other. Therefore, in order that this circuit shall be adjusted so as to have a low impedence, its capacity and inductance must be made variable by the insertion of a variable condenser and a tuning coil at its earthed end. Before progressing farther into the theory of tuning, it is necessary to consider the action of some detector, such as a crystal rectifier, stating its function and the actual reason for its use. After this has been done, a detector can be included in our antenna circuit and we have the elements of the simplest form of receiving circuit. It is shown experimentally and theoretically how this circuit can be so adjusted that it will respond to waves of widely differing length; and then how it can be further adjusted so that it will respond only to frequencies which are very near to that to which it is tuned. Such a receiver is then compared with a standard receiver as to selectivity and strength of signals, which readily demonstrates its disadvantages. The next improvement on this simple outfit, the close coupled tuner is taken up in the same manner, theoretically and experimentally. In connection with this type of receiver, reference is made to commercial tuners embodying this principle, such as the Type "D" tuner of the United Wireless Telegraph Company, many of which are still in use. Every student, tho generally much to his displeasure at first, is required to use one of these tuners in the radio receiving room until he becomes familiar with its use and possibilities.

After the study of closely coupled receiving sets, and the various methods involving a direct coupling, their advantages and disadvantages, loose or inductively coupled receivers are taken up; first in an elementary way, and then in connection with regular receiving sets. Our laboratory is well equipped with tuning apparatus of various kinds so that quite an opportunity is offered for setting up any standard circuit, or most special circuits. Specific instructions in the use of commercial tuners,

Digitized by Google

such as are used by the commercial companies, follow the theoretical circuits. A great many operators in commercial service are incapable of getting the most out of their receiving sets; and especially is this true in the case of some of the more complicated receivers involving intermediate circuits or special tuning apparatus. In order to train the student to make the most of the facilities at hand and to give him an actual knowledge of the use of such apparatus, I have used the following scheme with success. The tuner or receiving circuit under test is connected to an antenna in the usual manner or to a dummy antenna in which are induced sharply tuned oscillations from a wave meter excited by a buzzer operated by an omnigraph. With the wave meter in operation, the student adjusts the receiver as broadly as possible, thus picking up the signals; after which he tunes for selectivity, and readjusts for the optimum results. After he has become familiar with the various adjustments several wave meter transmitters differing more or less in wave length are simultaneously operated, all being inductively related to the antenna or dummy antenna. A student will send with one of these transmitters while the one manipulating the receiver will endeavor to separate his signals from the interfering signals. In a short time the student becomes quite adept in tuning, and is able to meet many of the difficulties encountered in practice.

In the study of detectors, many of the common types are included, tho the most emphasis is laid on those of the crystal rectifying type inasmuch as they are the ones most used in commercial service at the present time. A great deal of stress is laid on the use of carborundum, which is probably more used and more reliable than any other detector. In much the same manner that a student becomes apathetic toward the Type "D" tuner, he becomes averse to the use of carborundum for reasons which are well known, but if he is supplied with a suitable potentiometer and a large collection of these crystals, he can generally be convinced that this form of detector has some merits. Every student, during the course, spends several hours testing crystals. The laboratory is equipped with a large number of detector stands, potentiometers, and tuners fitted for the use of these crystals, and in using these he gains an idea of the correct method of using such detectors, and eventually has more confidence in them.

One forenoon each week, a special class is held at which all students in the radio work are in attendance. This period is devoted to the discussion and study of radio law, the international

Digitized by Google

regulations, traffic rates, method of computing charges, and similar matters. On some occasions, classes in geography are held at this hour, and maps of the radio districts are studied. steamship lines and routes pointed out, location of radio stations noted, and so on. Each student is required to learn the name of every passenger steamship line on the Great Lakes, the names of their vessels, their runs, call letters, and stations with which they are likely to be in communication. This information is of great value to a new operator, and requires very little time to learn. Some students take a great interest in this work.

Altho our station license is an experimental license and calls for no specific hours of service, we have certain hours during which we always have one or more men on duty in the receiving room, where they get a great deal of practical experience. The requirements as to the matter of maintaining a continuous watch during the time that is assigned to a student are strict, the result of which is that the man acquires a sense of duty so that he is much more apt to realize the importance of his position after he is actually in the service. A complete log is kept of everything that transpires, and all messages are copied and filed. These later are sorted out and entered on report blanks such as are used by the commercial companies and which are furnished by them for this purpose. In fact, the business of the station. in every particular, is handled by the students in a manner as nearly in conformity with commercial practice as is possible. In rating students for positions their record in the receiving room, and number and completeness of the messages copied are taken into consideration.

The receiving room is well equipped with commercial tuners and some special receivers and other receiving apparatus. In the laboratory we have apparatus for receiving undamped. continuous wave stations as well as spark stations, and tuning apparatus for waves as long as 14,000 meters. Most of the equipment in the receiving room is commercial apparatus, while the experimental apparatus is used in the laboratory station. Figure 4 is a photograph in the laboratory receiving room. showing some special receiving apparatus used in research work. At the right is seen a long wave receiving coupling and on the left is a continuous wave generator which was built for testing receivers for undamped waves. It can also be used as a generator for heterodyne receiving. A radio-telephone, with which some experimental work has been done, can be seen in the foreground

Digitized by Google

on the left. Any transmitter in the laboratory can be controlled from this room.

For the regular station work, we have a standard six wire aerial, supported on a 100-foot (31 meter) steel tower, brought down to a mast on the building. In connection with the labo-

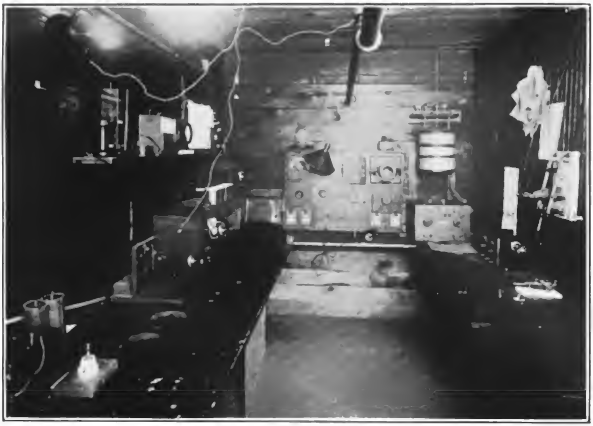


FIGURE 4

ratory apparatus, we have a smaller four wire aerial and a long single wire antenna, used principally for long wave reception. With the arrangement of these different aerials and certain apparatus, it is possible to have several groups of students receiving simultaneously without mutual interference. Ordinarily we have two well-advanced operators on duty in the station from 8 A. M. until midnight; however, in case of severe storms over the lake region, a continuous watch is maintained.

Another interesting feature of the work in the radio course is the so-called "field work." One afternoon each week, when the weather conditions permit, the students are divided up into parties of four to eight and supplied with portable receiving sets or complete field sets which are taken out into the surrounding country and set up. Aerials are erected on poles provided for the purpose or put up on high trees. Occasionally a kite will be used to elevate an aluminum wire or a small boat on one of the nearby lakes will be equipped with a small sending and receiving

Digitized by Google

set. Figure 5 shows a field station, in the charge of a group of students, with which they are in communication with the station at the school. As will be seen this set includes both transmitter and receiver, and when the aerial is elevated to a suitable height,

FIGURE 5

it has a range of several miles. It can be used either as a "plain aerial" set or directly coupled, radiating about half an ampere either way when properly tuned.

Communication is established between these field stations and the school, where an operator is maintained. During the course of such work aerial construction, methods of quickly putting up an emergency aerial, and the importance of good earth connections are demonstrated in an interesting and forcible manner. I have also found this to be an excellent manner in which to combine practical detector adjustment, tuning and wiring up of apparatus. Many interesting experiments that can be performed in the open country readily present themselves, all of which are of advantage in an operator's training. The effects of broad and sharp waves, necessity of tuning, and the

Digitized by Google

advantages of high spark frequencies and so on are readily set forth in an interesting manner.

For the benefit of special students or those who are particularly interested, we have a somewhat more advanced course in electrical and radio engineering subjects including radio telegraphic measurements and theories. The extent of this work, at the present time, is limited owing to a lack of necessary equipment, but at the same time it offers some advantages to those students who are ambitious and desirous of extending their knowledge of the art of radio communication.

During the coming fall it is our plan to erect a second steel tower 175 feet (54 meters) high at a distance of 400 feet (123 meters) from our present tower. It is also expected that we will add considerably to our electrical equipment at that time.

SUMMARY: The qualifications of a "good" operator are divided into inborn and acquired or teachable characteristics. A course of training for radio operators is then discussed in detail. The entrance requirements and objects of the students are considered, and the subject matter of the course is given.

1. OPERATING DIVISION. Students are taught to receive on buzzer-excited circuits, using head band telephone receivers. A number of circuits of gradually increasing speed and difficulty are provided. Different tones and intensities of signals are provided to accustom the student to actual conditions. All messages sent between student stations are in accordance with the radio laws and commercial practice. Messages must generally be checked and relayed by the student. Artificial interference is provided to teach reading of desired message thru such interference.

2. TECHNICAL DIVISION. The elementary principles of electricity and magnetism and the study of dynamo-electric machinery are given. Inductance, mutual inductance. capacity, wave length and frequency are studied, together with methods for their predetermination by calculation. Resonance phenomena are shown. Different types of commercial receivers and crystal detectors are tested. Field work is done with portable transmitting and receiving sets. Some facilities for research work are provided.

3. TRAFFIC DIVISION. The radio law, international regulations, geography and other material of value to operators are taught by lecture. Work in penmanship is obligatory.

Digitized by Google

DISCUSSION

Elmer E. Bucher: After careful consideration of Mr. Packman's contribution, I see that he recognizes the time-worn but desirable search for the "one hundred per cent perfect" employee. To a slight extent, I agree with him that in some respects the efficiency of the operating staff of commercial radio telegraph companies might be improved; but I must take complete exception to the allegation that the training of operators has suffered neglect, or that progress in this detail has not kept pace with general commercial radio development. The further reference to "deplorable conditions," assumed to exist in the operating staffs at certain commercial ship and shore stations, cannot carry weight without citations of specific instances of inability. It is useless to decry the service or personnel of an entire organization for the disability of a few, hence it may be of interest to give a brief outline of the method of instruction in vogue at the various radio schools maintained by the Marconi Wireless Telegraph Company, thereby disproving the assertion that radio telegraph operators have not been well trained.

It has been the practice of that Company since its inception to instruct its employees thoroly in the subject of radio telegraphy by the establishment of schools both here and abroad. In localities where the demand for operators has been insufficient to warrant the opening of a company-owned school, local telegraph schools have been subsidized or supplied with apparatus free of cost. In addition, these schools have had the free services in an advisory capacity of the Marconi officials and engineers, who have thereby assured themselves that the graduated students possess qualifications suitable to a proper standard. The foregoing policy has been adopted and rigidly adhered to thruout these years, and it is a fact that the courses given at privately owned institutions have been generally modelled after that given at the Marconi training schools.

In general, corporation-owned schools have the advantage over privately owned schools in that the former are in possession of a more complete radio equipment and are thus enabled to offer their pupils a more comprehensive course than is otherwise possible. Being in closer touch with commercial radio development and the demands of a well organized radio service, such companies are prepared to supply their students with the knowledge most necessary to their requirements, technically and commercially.

Digitized by Google

A particular problem which radio schools are compelled to meet is the varied degree of intelligence and ability manifested by the applicant for admission. In a university or college, before a student is enrolled on the roster, certain conditions must be met and complied with; consequently it is assured that the entrant is, in a large measure, fitted for the instruction he is about to receive. More clearly, such applicants have thru a number of successive years gradually fitted themselves for their more advanced work, and are therefore able to derive the fullest benefit of the instruction.

Obviously, in a radio telegraph school, such a long drawn out procedure is not possible: first, because the applicant has neither the inclination nor the financial means to support himself over an extended period of training; and second, because no commercial company would care to meet the financial drain imposed upon its treasury by carrying a student on the register for a great number of months. It may be of interest in this connection to remark that corporation-owned schools are not generally a financial success; yet companies are perfectly willing to stand the expense involved in order to maintain a high standard of service by the employment of a staff of well trained men, so important to its commercial success.

Therefore, in order that the student may receive a permanent assignment in the radio service with the least possible delay, it becomes the duty of the radio telegraph school to fill in the gaps in the student's knowledge of the art. In consequence, it is not always possible to inaugurate a definite course of procedure. In so far as possible, the mode of instruction must be varied to meet the individual needs of the pupils.

So far the best success has been achieved by first ascertaining the knowledge of the applicant in respect to the radio art in general and the fundamentals of elementary electricity and magnetism. This known, we are at once enabled to segregate the students into two classes. The missing links of the more advanced student's knowledge are then filled in by a number of general lectures on radio telegraphy, after which a series of experiments are made on the actual apparatus.

The student least informed on matters of electricity is placed in a separate class where he is given thoro instruction in the elements of electricity and magnetism. Slowly but surely, the supposed complexities of the art disappear, the pupil having formed a complete mental picture of the underlying action upon which the operation of radio telegraph apparatus is based.

Digitized by Google

In this work the instructor must exercise great patience, for it takes time to shape and mold the thought of a raw recruit in the right direction.

A similar procedure is adopted in respect to instruction in the telegraph code; *i. e.*, the student's ability is first ascertained, and then a division into classes made accordingly.

In the code classes artificial radio telegraph circuits are employed thruout, traffic being dispatched from individual to individual after the method employed at commercial ship and shore stations.

The foregoing instruction is followed up by a series of lectures on "Radio Traffic" in which the student is fully informed on the International, United States, and Navy regulations. Intricate problems which the student may encounter in dealing with various radio stations of foreign countries are discussed and solved, until it is certain that the pupil is thoroly familiarized with all possible future conditions which he may meet.

Contrary to the views expressed by the speaker of the evening, I am in favor of introducing a certain amount of automatic machine sending now and then in the code practice, for it has been observed to have a marked effect upon the student's sending. A good automatic Wheatstone sender, connected to a buzzer system, and operated at a speed suitable to the pupil's ability, will do wonders in impressing upon his mind the desirability and necessity of a uniform mode of sending. The ease of reception experienced impels the student to adopt a similar mode of formation more or less unconsciously, resulting in daily improvement.

I would lay down no hard and fast rule concerning the time required for a student to complete his tuition in radio telegraphy. I do not believe it possible to make an expert telegraphist from an absolute beginner in the space of six months, even tho I am aware that this condition has been approached in isolated instances. I do, however, maintain that by six months' study and close application a student is qualified to pass the U. S. Government examination and competent to take an assignment as junior operator at any ship or shore station.

It might be mentioned here that the Marconi Company uses every precaution in introducing a beginner into the commercial service. It is its custom to send a school graduate to sea as a junior operator, under the guidance of an experienced man. In this manner he is enabled to derive the full benefit

Digitized by Google

of the senior operator's previous experience and all possibility of error thro lack of initiative on his own behalf is thereby eliminated.

In respect to training the student to read radio signals thru interference, a school located in a prominent seaboard city such as New York, does not require artificial "jamming" or interfering apparatus. A commercial receiver connected to a fair-sized aerial fulfills the requirements, the operator being enabled to separate interfering stations under actual commercial conditions. Obviously, no better method of training could be devised.

I note from Mr. Packman's contribution that certain pupils with whom he has come into contact possessed biased minds, even to the point perhaps of expressing their desires as to the type of apparatus they consider preferable! A student having pre-conceived notions in this respect is apt to possess proclivities along other lines not amenable to discipline. Hence I would lose no time, in extreme cases, for the good of the services, in eliminating his name from the records.

I contend that the profession of radio telegraphy requires young men of live and alert characteristics who are quickly capable of assimilating new ideas, progressive in their make-up and business-like in character. To secure a well-rounded employee, one equally proficient in several branches of a given art, is one of the problems of the hour; the natural result of this need has been an age of specialization which in many fields has been overdone.

A radio telegraphist cannot be a man of narrow vision. He must be broad enough to think in terms international for he comes in contact with peoples, business methods, and social customs, of all climes and races. Thru several years of experience I have not found it difficult to lay out a course of procedure that will fully fit the student in this respect; and I firmly believe that, in view of their previous training, the degree of proficiency attained by the average radio employee is remarkable, and that in no department of wire telegraphic or telephonic communication will there be found operatives of the attainments of the average telegraphist in charge of radio telegraph equipment to-day.

I think it will be found on investigation that as far as the Marconi Company is concerned, the training of radio operators has in nowise suffered neglect. Every possible available means has been brought to bear in the student's preliminary

Digitized by Google

education so that he may be fully qualified to meet any emergency arising on his initial assignment to a ship or coast station.

David Sarnoff: I consider that the radio operator is one of the most important elements in radio communication. I agree, in some respects, with Mr. Bucher's refutation of the statement made by Mr. Packman regarding "the rather deplorable conditions which exist at present in the radio operating field." I believe there has been a marked tendency toward improvement in this direction during the past few years, and observation justifies the expectation that the improvement will continue.

The acquisition of the late United Wireless interests by the Marconi Company, thereby placing the large number of radio operators under the control of one organization, and the international requirements that a single code—continental—be universally employed, have helped matters considerably. By having all operators under the control of a single organization, antagonism and rivalry among operators otherwise employed by competing radio or steamship companies are removed and this is a very important factor. The advantages of a universal code are obvious in that it renders communication between operators of all nations more flexible.

Before operators are employed in the Marconi service, they are required to pass thru the Marconi School of Instruction where they are given thoro instruction in the principles and manipulation of the various types of radio equipment in general commercial use.

The procuring of a government radio license is not considered sufficient proof of the operator's ability and general fitness for the Marconi service. There are of course exceptional instances where deviation from this rule is imperative and under such conditions the choice of an operator must be governed by the exigencies of the moment.

I should like to say a word or two about the training of the radio operator, starting from the point where Messrs. Packman and Bucher leave the subject.

In my opinion the actual training of the operator commences after he leaves school and joins the operating staff. I have frequently thought that the present method of employing graduates from radio schools in the radio service is wrong; for the reason that at present their first positions are given them on shipboard whereas the better way would be to assign them

Digitized by Google

first to coast stations, where they would obtain the benefit of the more skilled operators on shore, who are thoroly familiar with the proper methods of conducting radio traffic. Here also, the novices in the profession have a better opportunity of handling a larger amount of radio traffic, under the guidance and with the assistance of the more matured and trained coast station operators. The early Marconi operators, and those who now hold the more important positions in the organization, were thus trained.

Unfortunately, however, my theory is not possible of adoption by radio organizations at present, for the following reasons.

First. Because the number of coast stations now in operation, as compared with the number of ship stations, is proportionately very small.

Secondly. Because the majority of the coast stations are situated in out-of-the-way places where, by reason of existing circumstances, it is not practical to assign any but trained operators.

Thirdly. If a graduate from a school is sent to an important coast station and spends some time in becoming proficient, it is hardly to be expected that he would thereafter view with favor the assignment to a less important position on shipboard. Here, too, the difference in salaries paid at ship and shore stations would play an important part.

It is interesting to note from this evening's paper the different methods employed in training the student to become a proficient radio telegraphist, but experience has taught us that there is a marked difference shown by the young operator in transmitting or receiving messages in school, and in handling regular business at a commercial station. This is but natural, and a condition which must be expected. It is for this reason, however, that the disadvantages of placing a school graduate, even on an unimportant freight ship, are so apparent. One poor operator on shipboard, with even a weak radio equipment, can do more harm when in the vicinity of busy ship and shore stations, than can be undone by ten good operators, with an equal number of efficient sets.

In the paper on "Radio Traffic" which I delivered last year before the Institute, I dwelt at length on the importance of brevity in radio communication, and this all-important point cannot be impressed too strongly, especially on the young operator. Very often I have observed junior operators assigned to less important ship stations, transmitting a radiogram by

Digitized by Google

the longest method possible, inserting unnecessary symbols and words, repeating where there is no need to do so, and thereby retarding the movement of traffic very seriously.

The young operator is often actuated by a desire to listen to himself sending. On ship stations where traffic is infrequent, the junior operator often indulges in quite a lot of unnecessary preliminaries and finishing touches, when transmitting or receiving a single message. While these matters may appear insignificant to some of those present, I submit that you need only consider the unfavorable conditions of static, or strays, interference, and frequently poor operating, to appreciate what it means to indulge in superfluities under such circumstances. On the other hand, the advantages of brevity under these conditions will likewise be apparent. Unfortunately, the government regulations pertaining to radio communication, are not adapted to the solution of these practical problems when they prescribe certain preambles and symbols in handling radio traffic. In my paper on the subject previously referred to, I gave examples of this condition.

I also reiterate my long-standing objection to the present wave length regulations enforced by international agreement. It avails us very little to produce transmitters of high radiating efficiency, and receivers capable of sharp tuning, when the majority of ship and shore stations employ 600 meters as their working wave length. I am aware, of course, that wave lengths below 600 meters may be used, and while this has been taken into consideration in the design of the more modern equipments, it fails entirely, nevertheless, to afford the measure of relief required.

In this connection I might say a word or two in admonition of the operators who fail to take full advantage of the opportunity afforded them by the latest Marconi equipments, which are provided with 300, 450 and 600 meter wave lengths, and with facilities for rapidly changing from one wave length to another, the change being effected by the throwing of a single switch. I have known operators who continue to struggle thru interference on 600 meters rather than change to 300 or 450 meters, and I have also observed others who do not even struggle. It is, however, not possible, under the present government regulations, to take full advantage of even the wave lengths mentioned; for the reason that by the rules of the London Convention it is required that when two stations communicate, both must employ the same wave length. Therefore,

Digitized by Google

while it is feasible for a ship station equipped with the latest Marconi set to change quickly from 600 to 450 or 300 meters when communicating with another ship or coast station, it is not quite so feasible for the coast station to effect the same change. You will appreciate, therefore, the importance of reconsidering the whole subject of wave lengths and traffic regulations.

I would urge all of you who have opinions to express on this subject, to write the Institute.* It will be glad to accumulate and summarize all ideas so that a logical and comprehensive statement of facts and suggestions may be presented at the next International Convention, which is to be held at Washington, D. C. It may sound a trifle optimistic to talk of International Conventions in these days, but we are hopeful nevertheless.

In connection with the proper manipulation of radio equipments by operators; I have noticed during my experience that radio engineers are very often prone to criticize the operator for failure to obtain maximum efficiency, and I doubt not that the criticism is sometimes warranted; but on the other hand, something may be said about the radio engineer who, when designing radio equipment at the laboratory, fails to appreciate the operator's difficulty on shipboard. For instance, I have always felt that sufficient attention has not been paid by designing engineers to the subject of detectors. Sensitiveness seems to be the goal for which most engineers aim, but apparently stability is not given the same consideration. There is nothing more troublesome at radio stations than to handle a detector which is too frequently affected by vibration, induction from transmitting apparatus, or by the many other causes which disturb crystal detectors. Operators many times continue to call radio stations which promptly respond but are not heard because the detector at the calling station is temporarily out of adjustment. Every operator knows that this is a daily occurrence and the cause of unnecessary interference, repetition and consequent delay in the movement of traffic. I am of the opinion that some form of valve detector is probably most suitable for commercial operation at ship and shore stations, because the valve detector gives more promise of possessing the combination of the two important elements, namely, sensitiveness and stability.

---

* A paper dealing with "The Inadvisibility of Wave Length Regulation" will be delivered by Messrs. Goldsmith and Hogan later in 1916. All members having views on this subject are strongly urged to communicate them to either of the authors in writing.

Digitized by Google

As regards commercial radio schools versus radio telegraph company-owned schools: It is preferable, of course, where a student can do so, to take up his course of training in a school of a large radio organization, because such a school is conducted with the object of training the men for the company's service and not for the profit derived from tuition fees. But there are many cases where, for good reasons, it is not possible for a young man to attend the company's school, and for this reason the commercial schools are performing a very important mission in the radio art. Men must be trained, and they should be trained properly. Many a boy living at or near Valparaiso, Indiana—where the Dodge Institute of Radio Telegraphy is located—might have been unable to take a course in a Marconi School situated elsewhere, and for that reason the Marconi Company lends its support to, and assists in every possible way, this School, as well as all other schools which show a desire to train operators as they should be trained.

Alfred N. Goldsmith: There is no doubt whatever that the question of wave length regulation, which has been brought up by Mr. Sarnoff, is worthy of the most careful consideration. It is further desirable that it be carefully considered *at length*, in view of the possibility of an International Convention on this subject within the next two years. It is not at present obvious that wave length regulation is at all a necessity, and certainly the matter is one for considerable discussion.

As an illustration of an undesirable state of affairs, attention may be called to the restriction of the important range of wave lengths between 600 and 1,600 meters to the use of the Government. It will be noted that most of the stations using these wave lengths are Navy stations, primarily intended for use in times of war, but not for commercial service in times of peace. Whenever one realizes that in times of war the enemy would hardly refrain thru courtesy from using wave lengths within the restricted range, the valid objection to closing this range to all commerical ship and shore stations, becomes evident. The ability to tune skilfully and read thru interference is well worth cultivation.

I feel further that amateurs have been unduly hampered by the wave length restrictions which are now current. This, however, is of comparatively small importance when contrasted with the really serious crippling of commercial traffic by the enforced rules concerning 600 meter transmission and the equality

Digitized by Google

of wave lengths between ships and their corresponding shore stations.

I expect that in the near future a paper will be written by Mr. Hogan and myself dealing with the question of wave length regulation and considering critically whether any wave length regulation should be adopted, and furthermore what rules of radio traffic are most desirable. I am very desirous that all members of the Institute or others interested, should correspond with Mr. Hogan or myself, on this subject in order that we may have the broadest expression of opinion on which to base our own judgments.

Referring further to a possible part of the training of the radio operator which has not been clearly brought out, it seems to me that it would be well to give the students in radio operating some courses in reading messages thru atmospheric disturbances. It would be possible to imitate their effect in the laboratory and thus train the student, at least to some extent, in receiving thru such strays.

John L. Hogan, Jr.: I have been much interested both by Mr. Packman's paper and by Dr. Goldsmith's statement as to the problem of wave length restriction which has been before us for some years. It is so nearly a self-evident fact that the present Federal regulations as to radio wave lengths are of an unjust and ineffectual nature that their adoption seems a most surprising thing. The restriction of wave lengths between 600 and 1600 meters, which is the range best adapted for low and moderate power ship communication, to Government use is an act which has caused and is causing unfortunate delay in the development of the commercial radio art. The requirement that inter-communicating stations both use the same wave length, and the insistence that ships communicate always with the nearest land station, are also regrettable features of the present Convention rulings.

With reference to Mr. Packman's paper, I must agree with Mr. Bucher in his indication that the operating situation of commercial radio telegraphy is not entirely "deplorable." Nevertheless, there are a number of points upon which the vast majority of radio operators could be better trained.

One of these, which was mentioned incidentally by Mr. Packman, receives far less attention than it really deserves. This is the matter of operators' handwriting. It has been my experience that the "copy" of radio operators is as a rule much

Digitized by Google

poorer than that of wire telegraphers. One reason for this is, of course, that the average age of the radio men is considerably below that of the line men, and that the penmanship of the radio operator is therefore likely to be in a formative stage. Another reason is that the traffic in many radio stations, on account of its small volume, puts no especial premium upon and offers no especial opportunities for clear smooth handwriting. It is a fact, nevertheless, that a radio operator is not likely to advance rapidly to better operating positions, and thereafter to executive positions, if his handwriting is of an uncertain and illegible type. It is not probable that too much emphasis can be laid upon the desirability of careful drill in helping to form the habit of clear and characteristic handwriting.

A second point is that radio operators in a commercial telegraph school should be trained to copy signals thru static interference strays. I have known men to be graduated from telegraph courses with the ability to read good buzzer signals, at fairly high speeds, and after securing their Government licenses, to fail utterly in attempts to read incoming radio messages thru even moderate static disturbance. Until an operator has become accustomed to concentration upon signal notes in the midst of harsh irregular noises from strays, he is likely to become excited and useless if he encounters unusual atmospheric interference. If it were difficult to give such training during the usual telegraph course, it might be expected that the operators would have to wait until they entered commercial service for this part of their training. However, it is not at all impracticable to combine practice in receiving thru strays with the ordinary daily code practice which all students of radio operating must be given.

Figure 1 shows a device which is simple and easily set up, yet which I do not believe has been used for this purpose except by the National Electric Signaling Company. In this diagram, X represents a weighted pivoted contact which drags upon the heavily and irregularly knurled surface of a slowly revolving metal wheel. Connected in series with this imperfect contact is a battery B_1 and potentiometer R_1. By suitably choosing the speed of the wheel and the weight of the contact at X, the strength of battery B_1, and the position of sliding contact on R_1, irregular impulses corresponding to almost any sort of static may be applied to the line wires L_1, L_2, thru the telephone transformer T_1. These irregular current impulses, transmitted from the line wires, are reproduced in receiving

Digitized by Google

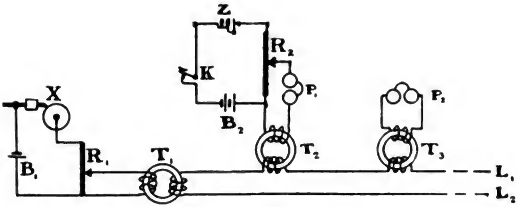


FIGURE 1

telephones P_2, thru the telephone transmitter T_3, as scratchy hissing sounds closely resembling those produced by atmospherics. A buzzer sender, consisting of a buzzer of any frequency Z, a key K and battery B_2, and a variable resistance R_2, may be associated with the line wires thru another telephone transformer T_2. By varying the potentiometers R_1 and R_2, the relative intensities of strays and signals can be made anything desired. It is, of course, obvious that additional transmitters of various frequencies and intensities can be associated with the same line wires, and that these wires may be used to conduct the signals to any reasonable number of student's receiving telephones, such as P_2. While many modifications of the device are obvious, the system as shown has proved very useful for such work as I suggest, and practice on it would form a desirable part of any radio operator's preliminary experience.

A third point upon which many radio operators are weak lies in the adjustment of their receiving tuners. Inductively coupled receiving apparatus, having variable primary and secondary inductances, and a tuning condenser directly connected across the secondary coil, represent the best practice of the commercial radio service to-day. This apparatus, simple as it is, is capable of giving widely different results in the hands of operators of different degrees of experience. Setting aside for the moment those men who are really able to handle an inductively coupled receiver properly, the remaining radio operators may perhaps be divided into two groups. The first of these, which we may call the "primary men," do all their adjusting by altering the inductance of the primary circuit and at the same time leave the secondary inductance and capacity at some average setting which gives fairly satisfactory results, so long as no interference is encountered, The second group, or "secondary men," have a great aversion to changing the settings

Digitized by Google

of their primary coils and tune only with the secondary variable condenser. It is obvious that an operator who is in either of these classes will be certain to get only mediocre results from even the most carefully designed receiver. It is highly essential that all radio operators should appreciate that with an inductively coupled tuner they will secure maximum loudness of signals with maximum freedom from interference when their primary and secondary are both tuned to the wave length they desire to receive, and when the coupling between primary and secondary coils is properly adjusted. It requires a considerable amount of actual practice with inductively coupled tuners to learn just how the four variables (primary, secondary, inductive coupling, and secondary capacity) are inter-related and how compensating adjustments in each must be made as the others are changed.

In order that beginners may have training of this sort, they are usually given short periods of listening at an operating receiving radio station. It is manifestly impossible to handle a large class in this way, giving each one of them enough practice in tuning to be of much value to him. In order that radio schools may deal with this point in a way comparable with its importance, I suggest the circuit arrangements shown in Figure 2.

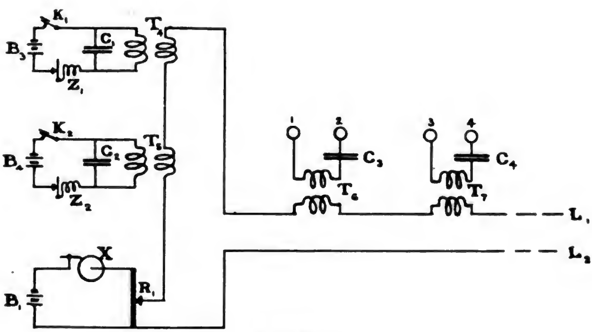


Figure 2

In this diagram, buzzer exciters producing radio frequency currents of any desired intensity and group frequency, and corresponding to waves of any length and decrement encountered in practice, are associated with the line wires L_1, L_2. The

Digitized by Google

buzzer Z is connected with battery B, key K, capacity C, and the primary air core transformer T as shown. With the same line wires a static exciter such as that described in connection with Figure 1 may also be connected. At each student's desk, the line wire is connected thru a transformer, such as T_6, which has its terminals connected to binding posts such as 1 and 2, thru a condenser, as C_3. The radio frequency currents set up by the buzzer exciters impress forced radio frequency voltages upon the terminals 1, 2, and if the capacity C_3 and inductance of T_6 are chosen so as to represent properly an average antenna, any radio receiving set may be connected to the two binding posts exactly as it would be connected to antenna and ground in a radio station. By tuning the receiving sets so connected, signals from any of the buzzer exciters may be selected, as signals from outside stations may be selected in practice. The difficulties of eliminating highly damped disturbances, such as those of strays, may also be experienced in this way, since the impulse maker X will shock the primary circuit of each receiving tuner into oscillation of whatever period it has, exactly as static would in an ordinary receiving station. For tuning to damped waves, one or more of the buzzer exciters may have resistance inserted in their oscillation circuits, so as to increase the decrement of the current impulses there generated.

Simple modifications of Figure 2 which will permit students to inter-communicate under conditions very closely approximating those of actual radio practice may easily be devised by following the principles just outlined. It is certain that training of this sort would go far toward increasing the traffic handling ability of any operator who has not reached a point of high efficiency in the manipulation of his instruments.

By these comments, I do not wish to be understood as inplying that radio operators in general suffer from inability in these several directions. There are many men in the field of whom their respective service executives may well be proud. There are, nevertheless, many inexperienced telegraphers who would be greatly benefited by thoro drill in the three matters I have discussed. It is my hope that future courses of training in radio telegraphy will give beginners greater opportunities for thoro understanding of commercial radio conditions.

M. E. Packman: In reference to Mr. Hogan's scheme of using many commercial receiving sets, which, of course,

Digitized by Google

is highly desirable, he apparently fails to appreciate the fact that it would require about 25 to 30 receiving sets, costing from two hundred and fifty dollars up. Such expense is not possible for commercial institutions.

The work with elaborate artificial antennas in receiving has been turned over to the more advanced students.

In reference to Mr. Bucher's and Mr. Sarnoff's remarks in connection with the deplorable conditions I referred to, I think that they are both considering the service on the Atlantic Coast which is indeed better than it is in other parts of the Marconi service. I am more or less familiar with Mr. Bucher's school and know that his training is very comprehensive but the point is that the demand is far greater than the school can supply. I have known men in service who have first grade licenses and who are actually unable to receive anything. I have known men in my own school who get thru the commercial examinations with no trouble who are practically worthless as far as commercial service is concerned. This condition has been the case for a good many years in the part of the work with which I am familiar, tho it has been improving from time to time. Many operators have been employed who have practically very little knowledge as compared with what they should have.

On the Great Lakes, it must be considered that the time of navigation does not exceed over nine months and that out of 60 or 80 ships, there are only 15 or 20 which run the whole year round. This means that there will be 40 or 50 operators required at the beginning of the season. Some of the old ones return, but only very few, and the first men that call at the office are the ones that secure the positions, regardless of their ability. The point to be noted is that they are employed without knowledge of the chief operator as to their ability. This condition does not exist in the East to this extent.

(Further material received from Mr. Packman too late for insertion in this issue of the PROCEEDINGS will appear in an early issue.—EDITOR.)

Digitized by Google

SUSTAINED RADIO FREQUENCY HIGH VOLTAGE DISCHARGES*

By

HARRIS J. RYAN AND ROLAND G. MARX

INTRODUCTION

In high voltage work, discharges thru the air between conductors and over and thru insulators can be prevented only with the aid of ample knowledge of their characteristics. Discharges produced by low (audio) cycle voltages for given conditions are now fairly generally understood. In radio telegraphy, high (radio) frequency damped and sustained high voltage waves are employed. Accidents, including lightning, produce in high voltage power circuits, in the long run, almost every conceivable high voltage transient. Such transients may vary from a simple over-voltage at normal frequency thru all possible impulses and damped oscillations to perhaps a briefly sustained high frequency high voltage wave train. Little is known as yet of the relation between discharge distances and voltages of the various sorts just specified. The evidence so far accumulated indicates that for given values of maximum voltage, the discharge distances are almost *independent* of the characteristic variation of the voltage whenever the critical corona voltage is higher than the discharge voltage. It indicates, too, that the discharge distances are *dependent* upon the characteristic variation of the voltage whenever the critical corona voltage is below the discharge voltage. In regard to the latter condition, this evidence indicates further that the discharge distance will be longest when the voltage source or transient is most sustained, or when its frequency is the highest or when both of these characteristics are present. It follows that discharge distances should be found a minimum for low frequency high voltages and a maximum for sustained high (or radio) frequency high voltages. It thus appears that voltages which can be formed by accident may discharge thru

* A paper presented before a joint meeting of The Institute of Radio Engineers and The American Institute of Electrical Engineers, San Francisco, September 16th, 1915.

Digitized by Google

greater distances and do more damage than the same values of voltages as used in most commercial work. The following experiments were undertaken as a reconnaissance in this region of high voltage phenomena.

DISCHARGE INTO THE ATMOSPHERE FROM A SINGLE ELECTRODE

One terminal of a sustained high frequency high voltage source[1] was grounded, the other was a 1-inch (2.5 cm.) copper tube capped with a hollow copper sphere 2 inches (5 cm.) in diameter. This spherical end of the high voltage terminal was mounted properly remote from all grounded objects. When a voltage of 50,000 at 88,000 sustained cycles was applied, a dry redwood stick was brought near to the sphere and then removed. A spark passed from the sphere to the stick and immediately grew into a heavy brush discharge. See Figure 1. It consisted

FIGURE 1

essentially of an active mass of darting streamers. The character of this mass varied from that of a combustion flame at the base to the familiar static discharge at the extremities. We have been able to determine with a fair degree of approximation (by measurement correct to within ten per cent.) that the rate of energy supply in the discharge from the electrode, illustrated in Figure 1, was about one kilowatt. It is charac-

[1] Described in "*Sphere Gap Discharge Voltages at High Frequencies*," by J. Cameron Clark and Harris J. Ryan, "Proceedings of the Am. Inst. Elec. Eng'rs," June, 1914, Vol. XXXIII, page 937.

Digitized by Google

teristic of this high voltage, radio frequency discharge, that it consumes a large amount of power; and if that power is not available, a discharge will not develop. It may start to develop and one may see some brush momentarily, but not the actual discharge. No "flashing-over" effect will be produced unless plenty of power is available. The discharge averaged about 10 inches (25 cm.) in length, was rather bright, produced a hissing, roaring sound, and was not accompanied by the familiar odor of ozone that is formed by the less violent audio frequency or intermittent radio frequency discharges. It is easily blown about by air currents. It may be blown by the breath from place to place on the ball. It can be fanned with a hat from the ball back along the 1-inch (2.5 cm.) conductor, and put out as it is driven into the region of lower capacity in the vicinity of the conductor, that is, where the fields are less intense and where the energy cannot be delivered at the rate that the flame or the discharge requires.

A modification of the above experiment was arranged to enhance the flame-like portion of this discharge, and to eliminate most of the "brush" part. A circular metal disk 16 inches (40 cm.) in diameter, provided with a 3-inch (7.5 cm.) hole at its center, and with ¼-inch (0.6 cm.) guard tubing facing all edges, was hung centrally over, and about 3 inches (7.5 cm.) above the 2-inch sphere (5 cm.) terminal by means of non-conducting supports. Figure 2 is a photograph of the steady flame-like discharge that occurred from the sphere to the plate. This photograph was naturally obtained by a legitimate artifice. In the laboratory, everything was dark when the first exposure was made and the flame photographed; and then by using some flash-light powder, all the apparatus was illuminated so that it could be photographed also. The flame, tho very strong, gives off no great amount of luminous radiation. The voltage and frequency were the same as before, viz., 50,000 and 88,000. The temperature of this flame was high. It melted quartz, rapidly disintegrated a tungsten lamp filament, and formed a bead on the end of a Nernst lamp filament. The metal of the electrodes was not greatly heated, and little or no metallic vapor appeared to enter the arc stream.

This flame discharge is not stable under all conditions. For example when the inductance and capacity of the disk were increased by placing in contact with it one end of an insulated 1-inch (2.5 cm.) copper tube 4 feet (1.2 meter) long, the flame discharge was no longer quiet and stable, but became noisy

Digitized by Google

and snappy, tending to develop into an intermittent disruptive discharge. The flame became unstable also when the electrode gap length of the arc generator was too short in adjustment. It appeared to be identical with the flame-like portion of the

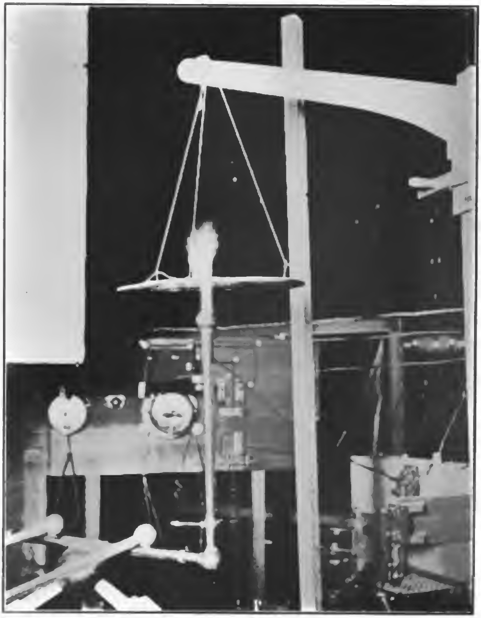


FIGURE 2

heavy brush discharge of Figure 1. Time did not permit a study of the extent to which the combustion of nitrogen was taking place in the flame. It seems as tho something of the sort is occurring for the reason that ozone is not in evidence when this discharge occurs.

The ability of the radio frequency brush to produce thermionic conduction thru glass, porcelain, quartz and all similar refractory insulations is perhaps its most remarkable property. This is illustrated by bringing any mass of high grade electrical

Digitized by Google

porcelain near to or in contact with the sustained radio frequency electrode. In an actual case, the electrode was a ½-inch (1.2 cm.) aluminium tube laid in the top groove of a 33 kilovolt porcelain line insulator that was itself placed on an insulating support and mounted remote from all objects of opposite or ground potential. On the application of 35 kilovolts at 200,000 cycles, the air between the tube and insulator was overstressed, small flame discharges conducted the insulator charging currents to the porcelain surface where one or more brilliant hot spots would appear in about 30 seconds. Further study developed the fact that these hot spots were the heads of corresponding hot conducting cores that extended into the depth of the porcelain, thus establishing by conduction new routes for the delivery of the charging currents taken by the porcelain mass. No insulation that supports a conductor charged with high voltage at sustained high frequencies can endure, unless it is so designed that not a particle of air or other gas in contact with it is overstressed under actual working conditions. The Fortescue and Farnsworth principle can be employed in the design of such supporting insulators so as to suppress all overstress of air adjacent to the porcelain or other solid dielectric.[1]

SUSTAINED RADIO FREQUENCY CORONA ABOUT A WIRE

The general arrangement of the equipment employed for the sustained radio frequency corona study is shown in the diagram of Figure 3; and a photograph thereof in Figure 4. The corona was formed around a number 19, B. & S. gauge clean copper wire* held axially in a galvanized iron cylinder, 15 inches (38.1 cm.) in diameter and 35 inches (88.9 cm.) long. Twelve (12) inches (30 cm.) of the wire at the center of the cylinder were normally left clear, and the remainder was shielded by two brass tubes 7-16 inch (1.1 cm.) in diameter. A third tube ½ inch (1.2 cm.) in diameter was arranged to slip over the central portion of the wire, and shield that too when desired. In this manner the corona could be suppressed, or it could be allowed to develop by removing the copper tube from the wire, and thus greatly increasing the stress on the atmosphere adjacent to the wire (because of the smallness of the wire circumference). We could thus check up the accuracy of the cathode ray power measuring meter.

[1] "*Air as an Insulator when in the Presence of Insulating Bodies of Higher Specific Inductive Capacity,*" C. L. Fortescue and S. W. Farnsworth, "Trans. Am. Inst. Elec. Eng'rs," 1913, Vol. XXXII, page 893.

* Diameter of wire = 0.036 inch = 0.092 cm.

Digitized by Google

Various voltages up to about 30 kilovolts, (root-mean-square), were impressed on the wire at sustained radio frequencies of 88,000 and 188,000 cycles per second; also at 60 cycles per second for comparisons. The appearance of the coronas at radio and audio frequencies differed greatly, while those at the

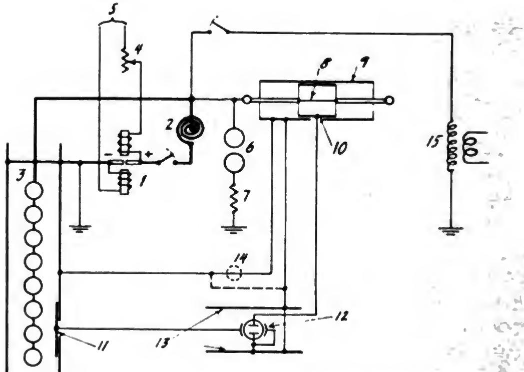


FIGURE 3—Diagram of Connections for Sustained Radio Frequency Corona Investigation

1—Arc Generator
2—Air Inductance
3—Air Condenser
4—Resistance
5—To 1200 Volt D. C. Supply
6—Sphere Gap Voltmeter
7—Carborundum Resistance
8—Corona Wire
9—Cylinder
10—Potential Tapping Cylinder
11—Potential Tapping Plate
12—Cyclograph Quadrants
13—Guard Plates
14—Carbon Lamp Resistance
15—60 Cycle High Voltage Transformer

two radio frequencies differed only slightly. That is to say, the enormous difference in corona at radio frequencies and at audio frequencies such as 60 cycles, is a difference that has come about perhaps gradually on the way up from 60 cycles to some such value as 50,000 cycles. At all events, to double, or a little more than double the frequencies when one is operating at a frequency of as high as 80,000 cycles, produces very little effect on the character of the phenomenon. The radio frequency corona appeared very active, it was quite brilliant and noisy and gave off an appreciable amount of heat. At 30 kilovolts the average diameter of the radio frequency corona was about 2 inches (5 cm.) whereas that at the audio frequency appeared to be less than 1-8 inch (0.3 cm.). A photograph of these coronas is reproduced in Figure 5. Two exposures were

Digitized by Google

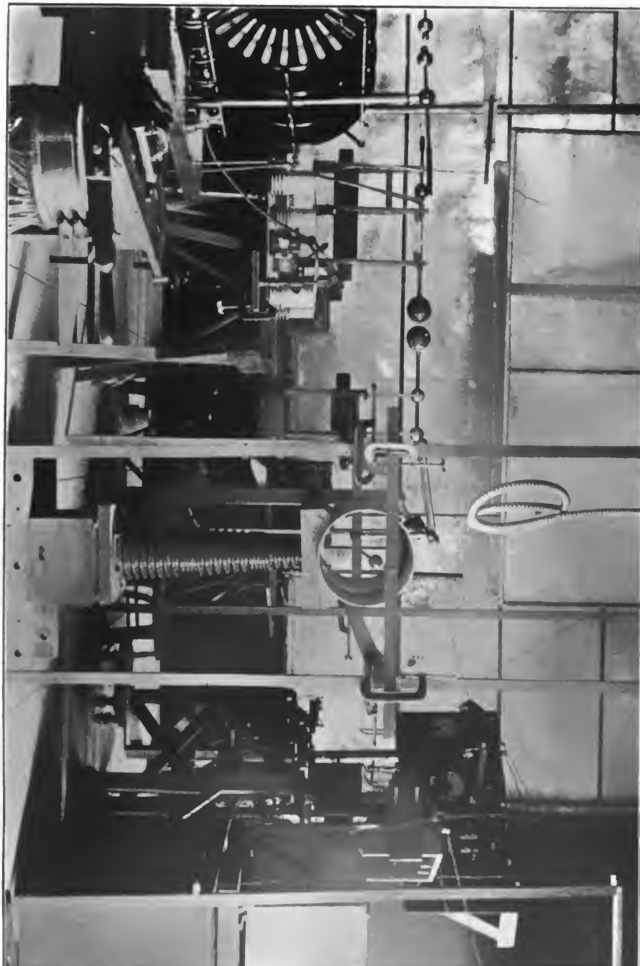


FIGURE 4

Digitized by Google

made on the same film; on the left is a 1-second exposure to the corona about the wire at 19.5 kilovolts and 188,000 cycles, while on the right is a 120-second exposure to the corresponding corona formed at the same voltage and 60 cycles. The camera was moved so as to separate the two images. In the original photograph the difference is very striking. Not only was the exposure 120 times as large, but the result was very nearly as many times less. The action is therefore a vastly more intense one.

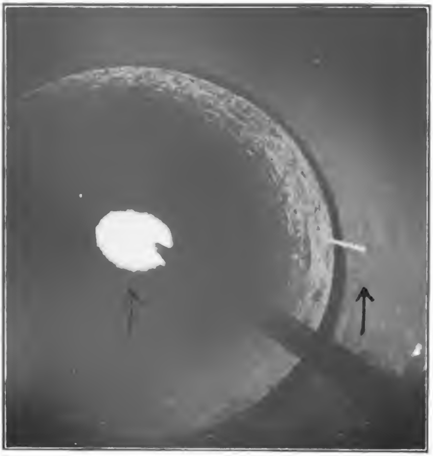


FIGURE 5

Some observations were made to determine the relative values of the voltages required to start corona about the wire at 188,000 cycles and at 60 cycles. All voltages were determined with the same 5-inch (12.7 cm.) spherical gap.* Attention is called to the lack of information that we have as yet in regard

* Little has been published as yet in regard to the standardization of the sphere-gap for the measurement of radio frequency voltage. It appears likely that not much more than a beginning has been made. Until such standardizations are available, the spherical gap will serve quite well as a radio frequency voltage gauge for purposes of record and comparison. The working scale for the 5-inch (12.7 cm.) spherical gap used herein was arbitrarily chosen as the one determined at radio frequencies for a 7-inch (17.8 cm.) spherical gap with the neutral of the voltage source grounded. *Loc. Cit.* No. 1; also "Dielectric Phenomena in High Voltage Engineering," by F. W. Peek, Jr., page 107.

Digitized by Google

to the standardization of these gaps. Our work has indicated very closely that there is little difference between the indications that a sphere electrode gap will give for given values of voltage at radio and at audio frequencies. However, for the exact interpretation of the result as given here, the footnote will be helpful. The density of the atmosphere was that due to ordinary temperatures near sea level. Twelve and seventenths (12.7) kilovolts were required to start the corona at 188,000 cycles and 13.2 kilovolts correspondingly at 60 cycles. The indications of the sphere gap were here assumed to be independent of changes in frequency.

Cyclograms were taken of the energy consumed per cycle in the corona about the wire at 60, 88,000 and 188,000 cycles and at voltages ranging from 15,000 to 20,000 to determine the relative power factors and the wave forms of the currents flowing from the wire. The cathode ray tube was used in taking these cyclograms. The details of the method used have been given in the "Transactions of the American Institute of Electrical Engineers."[1] The actual arrangement of the cyclograph with its voltage and current condensers as used in the present work is given in the diagram of Figure 3. Various trials were made to determine that the cyclograph gave true indications within its limits of action when high frequency high voltage was used. These trials were as follows. When the wire at number 8, Figure 3, was screened from corona formation by sliding the ½-inch (1.2 cm.) brass tube over it, the cyclogram would close up into a right line loop without area. Thus arranged, by inserting an ordinary incandescent lamp at number 14 the cyclogram would open so as to enclose a large elliptical area. Again using the radio frequency high voltage, the effect in the results due to the hysteresis or other loss in the glass of the cathode ray tube was found to be negligible by noting that a no-area cyclogram obtained with all four quadrants mounted on the exterior wall of the tube remained as such when all conditions continued the same except that one pair of quadrants was mounted within the tube.

In Figure 6 sample cyclograms are reproduced. With the aid of the lantern, enlarged images of these cyclograms were thrown upon a sketching board and tracings carefully made. Figure 7 was engraved from these tracings. The distortion noted is due to the fact that the only suitable tube available

[1] "*A Power Diagram Indicator,*" Harris J. Ryan, "Trans. Am. Inst. Elec. Engin'rs," 1911, Vol. XXX, pages 1089–1113.

Digitized by Google

for this sort of work was one of small size. To obtain sizeable cyclograms, it was necessary to permit some distortion in their lower portions. They are instructive, however, for they show that the radio frequency corona current wave suffers less dis-

FIGURE 6

tortion than the corresponding audio frequency corona current wave. They also show, under the conditions present, that the power factor of the radio frequency corona current was about *one-quarter* of the power factor of the corresponding audio frequency corona current. The present work, however, as stated in the introduction, is merely a reconnaissance of these interesting phenomena. It will be profitable to have them studied broadly and with great care, especially so with ample and suitable facilities.

DISCHARGE BETWEEN BLUNT POINT AND PLATE

A needle point is promptly melted and burned by radio frequency brush discharges. Only blunt points can be used, therefore, to determine the radio frequency high voltages required to discharge given distances when one electrode is or both electrodes are in corona. The scheme employed in this set of determinations is diagrammed in Figure 8 for the radio fre-

Digitized by Google

quency or audio frequency discharges, and in Figure 10 for combined audio and radio frequency discharges. A photograph of the electrodes and the sustained radio frequency discharge between them is reproduced in Figure 9.

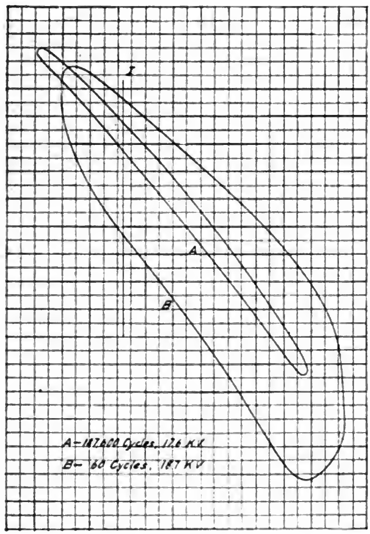


FIGURE 7

The blunt pointed electrode connected to the high frequency source was a square ended piece of number 12, B. & S. gauge copper wire,* projecting axially from the main radio frequency high voltage electrode, constituted as before of a 1-inch (2.5 cm.) copper tube ended with a 2-inch (5 cm.) copper sphere. A galvanized iron sheet, 3 feet (91.4 cm.) square, was used as the grounded electrode. Carborundum resistances (see number 5, Figure 8), were employed at strategic points to avoid short-circuiting the machines that supplied the arc generator with continuous current. The 5-inch (12.7 cm.) sphere gap at number 4, Figure 8, was used to measure all voltages. The sustained radio

* Diameter of number 12 wire = 0.081 inch = 0.21 cm.

frequency voltages that produced discharges between the point and plate also produced at slightly lower values heavy brushes

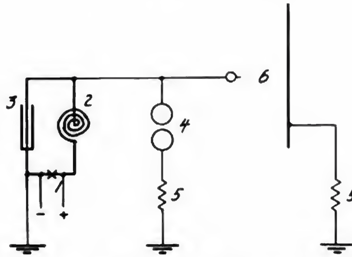


FIGURE 8—Diagram of Connections for Point to Plate Discharge

1—Arc Generator
2—Air Inductance
3—Air Condenser
4—Sphere Gap Voltmeter
5—Carborundum Resistance
6—Point to Plate Gap

that extended from the blunt point most of the distance to the plate. In fact, the discharges seemed to occur only when the brushes appeared to have fully bridged the space between the

FIGURE 9

Digitized by Google

electrodes. Facilities were lacking for the measurement of the large amounts of power that were evidently consumed in these brushes.

The 60-cycle voltage source was substituted for the arc generator in this sustained radio frequency point to plate discharge equipment diagrammed in Figure 8; and voltage discharge distance measurements were then made to compare with the corresponding sustained radio frequency discharge distance

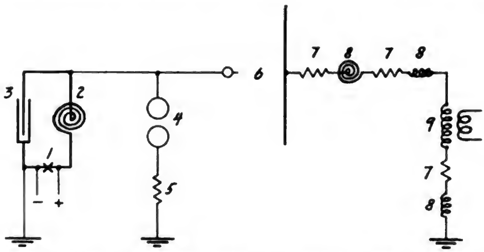


Figure 10—Diagram of Connections for Discharge with Combined Radio and Audio Frequency Voltage

1—Arc Generator
2—Air Inductance
3—Air Condenser
4—Sphere Gap Voltmeter
5—Carborundum Resistance
6—Point to Plate Gap
7—Carborundum Protective Resistance
8—Protective Air Inductance
9—60 Cycle High Voltage Transformer

measurements. Likewise for comparison a few determinations were made of the radio and audio cycle voltages required to discharge from the same blunt point to a similar blunt point in lieu of the galvanized iron plate.

The results obtained for the audio and radio frequency discharges are charted in Figure 11; and for the composite discharge values produced by the simultaneous application of sustained radio frequency voltage from earth to the blunt point and of 60-cycle voltage from earth to the plate are given in Table I. Two forms of discharge occurred and are designated "spark" and "arc" discharge. The former occurred at a somewhat lower voltage than the latter. The spark functioned to discharge the main condenser of the radio frequency generator and the arc to short circuit the 60-cycle and 1,200-volt direct current sources. The sums, equivalents and differences recorded also in Table I, and the values at corresponding differences charted in Figure 12 assist one to understand the parts that each voltage took in forming the composite discharges.

Digitized by Google

It is of interest to note (see Figure 11), that whereas 135 kilovolts at 60 cycles were required to discharge 16 inches (40.6 cm.) from the blunt point to the plate only 46.2 kilovolts were required correspondingly at 88,000 cycles. An increase of 7.5 kilovolts at 60 cycles was required by an increase of 1 inch (2.5 cm.) in

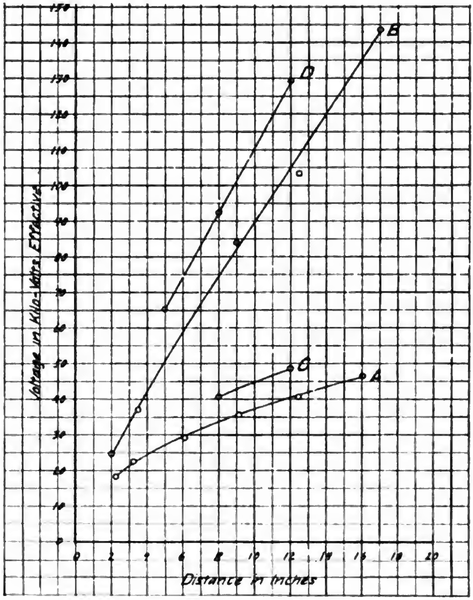


FIGURE 11—Point Discharge

A—Point to Plate, 88,000 Cycles
C—Points, 88,000 Cycles
B—Point to Plate, 60 Cycles
D—Points, 60 Cycles

NOTE—Radio Frequency Sphere Gap Voltmeter Calibration Used in all Cases.

the 15-inch (38.1 cm.) discharge gap while the corresponding increase at 88,000 cycles was only 1.5 kilovolts. In other words, as the length of a 15-inch (38.1 cm.) point to plate gap is increased the amount of increase of 88,000 cycle discharge voltage is *one-fifth* of that required at 60 cycles.

The composite discharge distances due to the combination of audio and radio frequency voltages are virtually the sum of

Digitized by Google

the distances thru which the individual voltages discharge. In Table I, column 2, the radio frequency voltages alone would have discharged the distances given in column 6[1], which when subtracted from the actual discharge distances in column 1, give the distances in column 7 as the added discharge distances due to the audio frequency voltages in column 4. These audio frequency voltages and the added discharge distances they caused are charted in Figure 12. For comparison the A. I. E. E. standard

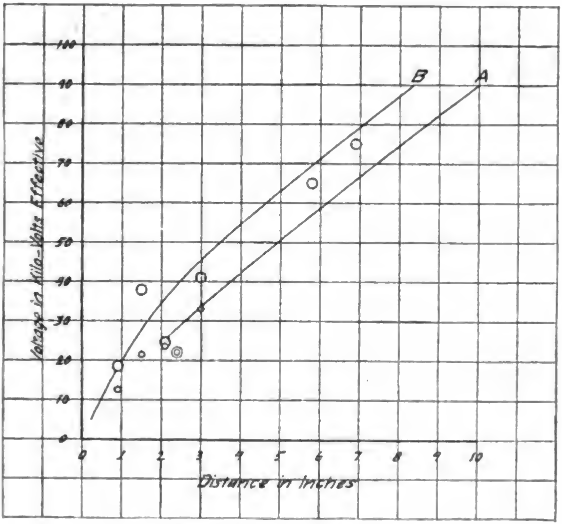


FIGURE 12—Plot to Accompany Table 1

For points marked thus—o Abscissas Represent Values in Column 7, Ordinates in Column 3
For points marked thus—O Abscissas Represent Values in Column 7, Ordinates in Column 4

A—Curve B of Figure 11
B—A. I. E. E. STANDARD Needle Gap Curve

needle gap voltage discharge curve and the 60-cycle point to plate discharge curve of Figure 11 are also charted as curves "B" and "A" in Figure 12. It is thus seen that the added dis-

[1] These distances were observed for the conditions shown in Figure 10, and are not identical with distances for corresponding voltages observed for the conditions in Figure 8 and charted in curve A, Figure 11.

Digitized by Google

charge distances due to the superimposed audio frequency voltage are practically the same as the corresponding discharge distances produced by the identical audio frequency voltages acting alone. In making this comparison, one must hold in mind the fact that the added discharge distance caused by the superposition of the 60-cycle voltage should naturally be somewhat greater than the discharge distance produced by such audio cycle voltage acting alone; because in the former case, no initial voltage is required to start corona at the blunt point; such corona is started by the sustained radio frequency voltage.

The authors desire to acknowledge herewith the valuable assistance rendered by their departmental co-worker Professor J. C. Clark.

SUMMARY: 1. Sustained radio frequency corona brushes or flames once started are maintained at much lower voltages than those required to start them by overstressing and ionizing the atmosphere. They quickly destroy even the most refractory insulations by their heating and ionizing properties.

2. The power factor of the charging current of a conductor in corona due to the application of sustained radio frequency high voltage is decidedly lower than the corresponding power factor at audio frequencies. Nevertheless, because of the high values of the currents that produce the radio frequency coronas, the losses they cause may be hundreds of times the corresponding audio frequency losses.

3. The sustained radio frequency voltage required to discharge between corona-forming electrodes may be as low as one-third of the corresponding audio frequency voltage. At higher voltages this ratio will probably be found to be less than one-third.

4. Sustained radio frequency and audio frequency voltages when combined, discharge thru distances between corona-forming electrodes that are substantially the sum of the distances thru which such voltages would discharge when acting alone, due account being taken of their mutual aid in starting the corona at one or both of the electrodes, as the case may be.

Digitized by Google

TABLE I

Combined Radio Frequency and Audio Frequency Voltages; Point to Plate Discharge

1 Gap Distance in Inches	2 Radio Frequency Voltage in Kilovolts	3 Audio Frequency Voltage for Spark Discharge	4 Audio Frequency Voltage for Arc Discharge	5 Sum of the R. F. and A. F. Voltages	6 Discharge Gap Equivalent to Radio Frequency Voltage	7 Difference, Column 6 Subtracted from Column 1
5	28.7	....	....	....	....	...
5	....	....	51	....	....	...
5	21.2	22	....	43	2.6	2.4
5	21.2	....	22	43	2.6	2.4
5	22.4	23.5	....	46	2.9	2.1
5	22.4	....	24.5	47	2.9	2.1
5	26.4	12.5	....	37	4.1	.9
5	26.4	....	18.5	45	4.1	.9
12	42.9	....	....	....	....	...
12	....	....	105	....	....	...
12	29	....	75	104	5.1	6.9
12	31.8	....	65	97	6.2	5.8
12	37.5	33	....	70.5	9.0	3.0
12	37.5	....	41	78.5	9.0	3.0
12	40.3	21.5	....	62	10.5	1.5
12	40.3	....	38	73	10.5	1.5

Radio Frequency Voltages at 88,000 cycles. All voltages in terms of five inch (12.7 cm.) gap; the calibration being taken as Kilovolts (effective) $= 2 + 45.5 \times$ (Gap Distance in inches) $= 2 + 17.9 \times$ (Gap Distance in cm.).

Digitized by Google

DISCUSSION

Robert B. Woolverton (Chairman): On behalf of The Institute of Radio Engineers, I wish to acknowledge the great courtesy of the American Institute of Electrical Engineers in the arrangements it has made for this joint session.

As the advantages of the use of long wave lengths in radio communication become more and more evident, it has become apparent to radio engineers that they are limited quite strikingly in the use of these long waves at high power by the formation of corona on the antenna. It is obvious, therefore, that any light that can be thrown on the subject of corona is of intense value to radio engineers.

Robert H. Marriott: As Mr. Woolverton has pointed out, a paper of this kind should enable us to anticipate what may be expected in the way of corona on high power station antennas, and in that way we can keep down costs. It will be remembered that the matter of antenna insulation has always been one of the important things in radio work.

Haraden Pratt: Does the resistance used in connection with direct current arc generator circuits vary with frequency? Another matter which arises in connection with this paper deals with harmonics produced in the working circuits. Taking a circuit of 100,000 cycles, I have been able to observe as many as 62 harmonics, some more or less strong than others. In the event that some parts of the apparatus subjected to the high potentials, such as the concentric brass tubes mentioned in this paper, should have a capacity that would reinforce one or more of these harmonics, might not the added steepness of the very high frequency wave affect the character of the corona ?

Harris J. Ryan: I have had no experience with the variation in the resistance of the carborundum rods with frequency. I understand that their resistance does vary with frequency. We were compelled to use these rods as a matter of strategy in preventing short circuit currents. Otherwise, it would have been disastrous for our apparatus. The values of the resistance, however, were so low that the results were not affected by the presence of these rods. We are confident of that. We made tests and assured ourselves of the fact that we were not using too much resistance.

Unavoidably harmonics are produced in the driving voltage of the Poulsen arc generator. However, in generating high

Digitized by Google

voltage, the inductance of the oscillating circuit must be made relatively large and the capacitance relatively small. The harmonics in the arc voltage do not, as a consequence, drive corresponding currents in appreciable amounts thru the whole of such inductance. These currents penetrate only a few of the outer turns of the inductance whence they are shunted by the local capacitance of such turns; thus it comes about that the harmonic voltages are not impressed thru the entire inductance and do not reach the main electrode in appreciable amounts. This we have demonstrated conclusively by means of the cathode ray voltage oscillograph.

Ellery W. Stone: In the paper (on page 353), it is stated that "Further study developed the fact that these hot spots were the heads of corresponding hot conducting cores that extended into the depth of the porcelain." I should be interested in having Professor Ryan explain how the hot conducting cores in the porcelain were detected.

Harris J. Ryan: We have within the last two years again and again applied these sustained radio frequency high voltage discharges to porcelain insulators of many different patterns and sorts. We know that a molten conducting core is formed, because when a high voltage of radio frequency is applied in the manner indicated in the paper in the immediate neighborhood of the insulator, there is at first quite a corona display for a few moments due to the breakdown of the air near the electrode. This disappears immediately when a bright hot spot forms under or near the electrode, and this bright spot is of a yellowish white incandescence. As soon as such bright spot appears the charging current need no longer be furnished thru the outside conducting air (corona); but, since there is a conductor thru the porcelain, the charging current passes to it laterally thru the porcelain.

As regards the molten condition of this core, the discharge can be driven to the point that there is actual plasticity. In fact, if an opposing electrode is placed under the porcelain, so that directive forces are present, the conducting core is driven thru the porcelain from one electrode to the other. This experiment has been performed with porcelain one-half inch (1.27 cm.) thick, but there is no reason why it should not be performed with thicker porcelain. In these experiments, the hot spot has appeared at each side, and the corona has simultaneously disappeared. Upon stopping the application of the high voltage,

Digitized by Google

the core promptly cools and solidifies. If the porcelain is broken apart thru the core it is found to be smooth grained, brittle and glass-like. Left mechanically undisturbed it is often, tho not always, found to have regained most of its original dielectric strength; i.e., it will endure the application of audio frequency voltage to the flash-over point. Renewed application of the radio frequency high voltage without change in the position of the electrodes will generally, tho not always, re-establish the hot conducting core in the former position.

An interesting variation in this experiment may be made to demonstrate the powerful mechanical drive that exists in the path of an electric spark. When a hot core thru the porcelain has been produced the main electrode is drawn away from the porcelain, say 3 to 5 inches (7.5 to 12.5 centimeters). This will stop the current flowing conductively thru the porcelain hot core and reactively thru the rest of the porcelain. Simultaneously the radio frequency voltage is raised to the value whereat the air between the main electrode and the hot core in the porcelain is ruptured. A spark is thus set up. It discharges the main condenser of the radio (high) frequency source thru the hot, plastic core in the porcelain. This spark stops the generation of the radio frequency high voltage. By the recovery of the generating action of the source in an obvious manner, such voltage is quickly renewed so that several sparks per second follow one another. When a few sparks have passed, the high voltage is turned off and the specimen is allowed to cool. It is then broken open whereupon one will often find that a clear hole of small calibre, diameter one-fiftieth of an inch (one-half millimeter), or thereabouts, has been made thru the porcelain core by the blast of the spark. There is here some evidence of the electro-physical manner in which a real open puncture is formed thru a refractory dielectric.

In a paper presented to the American Institute of Electrical Engineers before another section here to-day, Mr. F. W. Peek, Jr., demonstrates that it requires a much shorter time to build up and to produce under high voltage a discharge between spherical electrodes than between pointed, sharp or even blunt electrodes, as long as the "sharp" electrodes are not so blunt as to prevent corona from being formed in advance of the discharge. This is in contradistinction to an arrangement where spherical electrodes are employed and they are not widely separated, so that the corona is not formed in advance of the discharge. This is a matter of great practical importance in deal-

Digitized by Google

ing with the question of arranging properly static arresters and reliefs. Incidentally, evidence related hereto was produced by the following experiment at sustained radio frequency high voltages. Near the main helix of the arc generator, a companion helix was mounted. Connected in series therewith was a high voltage adjustable condenser, so that one might easily, by turning the handle of that condenser, pass thru such a capacity value as to bring about resonance in the circuit thus formed. The detached helix was four or five feet away from the arc helix and the oscillating circuit of the generator, and was connected to rothing save the adjustable condenser. In order to ascertain when the circuit was in tune for the frequency of oscillation of the generator, there was connected across the terminals of the condenser a needle gap set at about an inch (2.5 cm.) length. As one passed thru the exact value for the capacity required to produce completely effective tuning, an arc would be set up between the needle points. They were promptly melted, because of the rather large amount of power present. Then it was noticed that unless one passed thru the correct capacity value slowly, the discharge did not have time to build up between the needle points. It was necessary to pass thru the resonance value very deliberately. To build up the discharge between the points required appreciable time because it required the absorption of considerable energy. Prolific ionization had to be produced to bring about the discharge.

Roy E. Thompson: Another explanation occurs to me, however. If two such circuits are coupled, in general (for electrical reasons) the second circuit will not follow the first one rapidly enough to admit of Morse signals in the first circuit being clearly indicated in the second. The "building up" of current takes too long in the second circuit, and detuning may occur thru reaction on the first circuit. Might this not be the explanation here also?

Harris J. Ryan: The point is well taken. If there is any effect in connection with these coupled circuits which throws one out of tune as the other is tuned to resonance when the action is performed rapidly but not when it is performed slowly, then this would be an explanation of the time required for the discharge to culminate. This is a matter which must be studied with great care to prevent arrival at erroneous conclusions.

Roy R. Thompson: If there were a means for controlling

Digitized by Google

the energy of the primary circuit, it would be possible to note whether the discharge took place immediately after closing the primary circuit. The retardation due to variation of the secondary condenser could then be separately studied.

Digitized by Google

THE EFFECTIVENESS OF THE GROUND ANTENNA IN LONG DISTANCE RECEPTION*

By

R. B. Woolverton

The subject of this paper was suggested in October, 1914, when resonance curves were being taken by the writer at Eccles, Cal., on waves emitted by the various high powered commercial stations situated in the vicinity of San Francisco, at a distance of approximately 100 miles. The antenna used in taking these resonance curves consisted of the top wire of a 5-foot (1.6 meter) fence extending in a northwesterly direction for a distance of approximately 4,000 feet (1,300 meters). Altho the antenna so used was quite aperiodic, as might be expected, the received energy in the secondary circuit was remarkably large, signals being heard from stations in the Hawaiian Islands and Alaska. By using the ordinary crystal detector, full scale deflection was obtained on a Leeds & Northrup portable galvanometer when taking resonance curve data on the wave emitted by the high powered Marconi station at Bolinas, Cal.

In view of the results obtained at Eccles, the writer conducted on October 9th and 10th, 1915, experiments of a somewhat more quantitative character at the Palmer B. Hewlett ranch, situated 90 miles (140 kilometers) south by east of San Francisco. The receiving apparatus was of the de Forest "ultraudion" type (oscillating audion), using a second step amplifier audion bulb, and the audibilities were read on a "Wireless Specialty" audibility meter.† The connections are shown in detail in Figure 1.

It will be noted that two pairs of telephone receivers are connected in series, thus reducing the audibilities nearly 50 per cent., but it was found that the audion circuit would not oscillate when but one pair of receivers was used, with the audibility meter shunted about it.

Before beginning the experiments, it was thought that a com-

*Presented before The Institute of Radio Engineers, New York, November 3, 1915.

(†A variable multi-contact resistance, graduated directly in "times audibility" for use with a definite telephone receiver of the Pickard type.—Editor.)

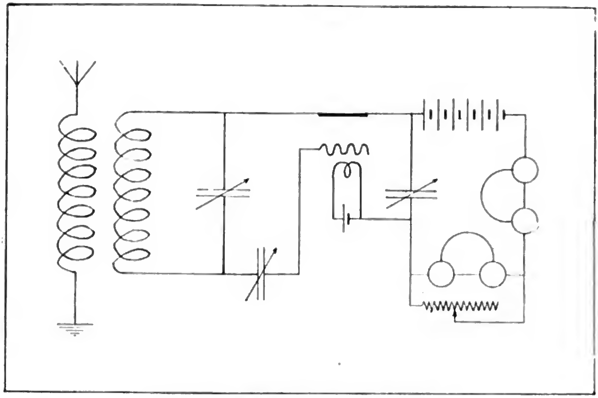


FIGURE 1—Diagram of Connections

paratively long single wire antenna would be so directional in effect that it was decided to confine the readings to one particular station; and Sayville, Long Island, was chosen, the antenna being made as nearly directional toward that station as possible. Buildings slightly interfered with this plan, however, and the antenna's true direction from the receiving apparatus was west-southwest, instead of more nearly west. As soon as readings were begun, it became apparent that this directional effect did not exist, as will readily be seen from the Honolulu audibilities in the "Audibility Table," Figure 2, and the "Direction and Range Chart," Figure 3. The two antennas consisted of 500-foot (160 meters) and 1,000-foot (320 meters) lengths respectively of a single Number 28 B. & S., cotton covered, magnet wire,* laid on dry earth without support at any point. The audibilities for the four transmitting stations are shown in Figure 2.

It will be noted that in the case of each station received from, the signal strength is more than sufficient for reliable communication, particularly when it is realized that the audibility of atmospherics was unity in each case. Atmospheric audibilities taken during the period of the tests, on a five-wire antenna, 45 feet high and 300 feet long, averaged 100.

Figure 3 shows the direction of the antenna with respect

* Diameter of Number 28 wire = 0.0126 inch = 0.0320 centimeter

Digitized by Google

ANTENNA	SAYVILLE	HONOLULU	ARLINGTON-ARC	ARLINGTON-SPARK
500 FEET*	50	100	60	100
1000 FEET	80	160	80	160

FIGURE 2—Table of Audibilities

to the stations received from, with the distances of the stations plotted to scale; and it immediately suggests experiments to determine the most effective design of a ground antenna. These experiments will shortly be undertaken by the writer, using various lengths, heights from the earth, and high potential ends both open and earthed. In view of the comparatively high ohmic resistance of the antenna wire used in the above tests,

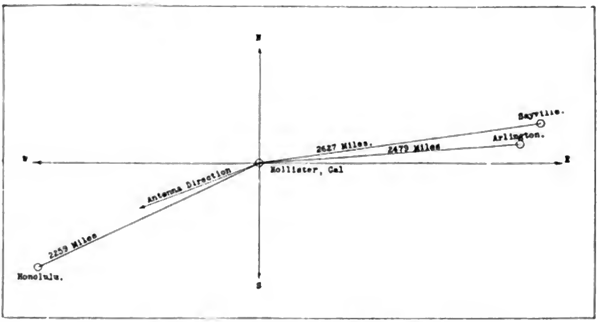


FIGURE 3—Direction and Range Chart

the use of a larger wire should give considerably greater audibilities. If such should be the case, and sufficiently high audibilities are obtained for daylight reception, it would seem that the ground antenna may be the solution of the serious problem of eliminating atmospheric interference, not to mention the difference in cost of the construction and maintenance of such an antenna, as compared with that of the present type.

In closing the writer wishes to express his appreciation for the courtesy and valuable assistance rendered by Mr. Palmer B. Hewlett, of Hollister, Cal.

SUMMARY: Using an antenna several hundred meters long stretched on the ground, signals of an audibility up to more than one hundred are received from sustained wave stations 4,000 kilometers away. Atmospheric disturbances are found by the experimenter to be less troublesome relatively than when using a normal antenna. A further series of development experiments are outlined and will be undertaken.

Digitized by Google

DISCUSSION

Alfred N. Goldsmith: In presenting this paper to the New York membership of the Institute, it is to be noted that the paper gives only preliminary experiments and that Mr. Woolverton is carrying on further experiments and will lay the results of these experiments before the Institute. The paper is merely an introduction. It is further to be noted that Mr. Woolverton is well aware of the previous work done in this field by Messrs. Marconi, Braun, Zenneck, Kiebitz, Taylor and others.

Lester L. Israel: So far as the ground antenna is concerned, it has been worked with very largely without much success in the past. In Cuba particularly, a ground wire 1000 feet (300 meters) long was used and signals were received with about the same intensity as on an antenna 100 feet (30 meters) high. So far as atmospheric disturbances were concerned, the results were anything but satisfactory. It must be mentioned that if any advantages were obtained by Mr. Woolverton in the use of the ground antenna, the ground conditions in the neighborhood where the experiments were tried would be largely responsible.

Alfred N. Goldsmith: In reading thru a number of papers on this topic by Kiebitz, it was found that this experimenter claimed that he found no change in the ratio of signals to atmospheric disturbances of reception by using the ground antenna, as compared with the ratio for an ordinary antenna.

Lester L. Israel: In experimenting with ground antenna, Mr. Hill found that an antenna grounded at one end could be tuned but in cases where it was entirely ungrounded, tuning was practically impossible.

Roy A. Weagant: From the statements which have been made so far, it is not very clear whether Mr. Woolverton was working in the immediate vicinity of the elevated aerial or not. I believe that Mr. Woolverton referred to an aerial about 45 feet (15 meters) high. The influence of such an aerial on reception by means of a wire stretched on the ground would be very great.

We are not able to judge completely as to the efficacy of the ground antenna in eliminating atmospheric disturbances, because Mr. Woolverton gives the strength of atmospheric disturbances and signals on his ground antenna and the strength

Digitized by Google

of atmospheric disturbances on the elevated antenna, but he does not give the necessary data as to the strength of signals of the elevated antenna. Such information should be sent.

So far as my own experiments are concerned, I do not know if there is any advantage in using the ground antenna. It seems that the ratio between signal strength and disturbance strength is constant regardless of the type of antenna used. Sometimes advantages which are obtained with low aerials are due to the fact that the receiver used, for example the audion, has an upper limit of response. If it is struck by a stray impulse of more than a certain strength, it is simply temporarily paralyzed, and no further immediate response is obtained.

Alfred N. Goldsmith: In connection with the experiments which Mr. Woolverton is carrying out, any suggestions addressed to Mr. R. B. Woolverton, Custom House, San Francisco, Cal., will be welcomed by Mr. Woolverton, who is interested in obtaining the widest possible expressions of opinion relative to experiments of this type.

Robert B. Woolverton: Every effort was made to prevent the elevated antenna from affecting the results on the ground antenna. The elevated antenna circuit was kept wide open, and in addition its direction was exactly at right angles to the ground antenna. However, in future experiments, the elevated antenna will be taken down.

Every effort was made to keep the sensitiveness of the ultraudion constant. The Los Angeles station of the Federal Telegraph Company provided signals used as a reference constant before reading audibilities on other stations. Furthermore, the de Forest bulb used in all the tests was an especially goo l one, and practically no difficulty was experienced in keeping its sensitiveness constant.

Digitized by Google

THE DESIGN OF THE AUDIO FREQUENCY CIRCUIT OF QUENCHED SPARK TRANSMITTERS

By

Julius Weinberger

(Including a Supplementary Discussion of "Resonance Phenomena in the Low Frequency Circuit," by H. E. Hallborg, Proceedings of the Institute of Radio Engineers, Volume 3, Part 2, 1915, page 107.)

A large number of contributions to the literature of radiotelegraphy have been made upon the subject of the so-called "resonance transformer." These have been both experimental and theoretical. The experimental contributions, as a general rule, have been investigations of the resonance transformer under actual operating conditions (that is, with the secondary condenser discharging periodically thru a spark gap), while the theoretical contributions have generally assumed a steady state of affairs (the secondary condenser *not* being discharged); in this case the method of treatment has been that employed for two coupled circuits.

In actual practice, such as in the operation of quenched gap sets, the requirement of a clear note involves the discharge of the secondary condenser at the peak of the wave each half cycle. It would seem, therefore, that the *transient* phenomena in the circuit would be the determining factors of voltage and current, rather than those of the steady state of affairs; that is, conditions would never assume the steady state.

To investigate these conditions, we can reduce the whole resonance transformer circuit to that of a simple inductance, capacity and resistance in series (Figure 1), as has been shown by Mr. Hallborg. The inductance **L** includes all the inductances in the circuit—generator inductance, transformer leakage inductance, inductance of any series choke coils, and so on. The condenser **C** is the secondary condenser reduced to the primary circuit by multiplication by the square of the ratio of transformer voltages. The resistance **R** includes resistances in the primary circuit and resistances in the secondary circuit reduced to the primary by division by the square of the ratio of transformer voltages.

Digitized by Google

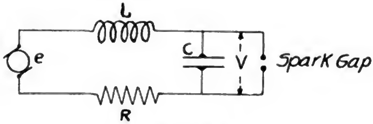


FIGURE 1

The differential equation for such a circuit is

$$e = E\cos(\theta - \theta_o) = R\,i + x\frac{d\,i}{d\,\theta} + x_c\int i\,d\,\theta$$

where

E = maximum generated * voltage

x_c = condenser reactance

x = inductive "

$\theta = \omega t$

θ_o = an angle to be subtracted from θ if e is not zero for $t = 0$.

The potential difference across the condenser terminals can be found from

$$V = x_c\int i\,d\,\theta$$

when equation (1) has been solved for **i**.

Since we are mainly concerned with this **V**, we will omit writing the solution for i, but give that for **V** immediately:

$$V = \frac{E\,x_c}{Z}\sin(\theta - \theta_o - \gamma) + \frac{E\,x_c}{Z}\,\varepsilon^{-\frac{R}{2x}\theta}\left\{\sin(\theta_o + \gamma)\cos\frac{q}{2x}\theta + \left[\frac{R}{q}\sin(\theta_o + \gamma) - \frac{2x}{q}\cos(\theta_o + \gamma)\right]\sin\frac{q}{2x}\theta\right\} + \varepsilon^{-\frac{R}{2x}\theta}\left\{e_o\cos\frac{q}{2x}\theta + \frac{2\,R\,e_o + 4\,x\,x_c\,i_o}{2\,q}\sin\frac{q}{2x}\theta\right\}$$

where

Z = impedance,

γ = phase difference between generated e. m. f and i

$q = \sqrt{4\,x\,x_c - R^2}$

e_o = value of potential difference across condenser terminals at the time $t = 0$

i_o = value of current thru the circuit at the time $t = 0$.

* This is *not* the voltage across the generator terminals. If the generator armature has appreciable inductance (in comparison with the rest of the circuit) there will be a drop in voltage inside of the armature and a very much higher voltage will actually be *generated* than that which is measured at the terminals.

Digitized by Google

Consider the conditions introduced in the circuit immediately after the condenser has sparked over, at one peak of a cycle, and the spark has ceased. This is the moment for which we take $t = 0$. The important thing to be determined is:—what will be the voltage across the condenser for $\theta = \pi$ (that is, at the next peak of the cycle)? Will it rise to a sufficient value to cause another discharge? Or, rather, will it rise to a value equal to that, at least, at which the previous discharge took place? If not, the requirements of a clear note, of twice the generator frequency, will not be fulfilled. Also, it is this discharge voltage which determines the energy absorbed by the condenser.

Taking the equation given for **V**, we can introduce the following simplifications:

(1) Since we will consider the circuit as being resonant, we have $x_c = x$, and shall substitute x for x_c accordingly, thruout.

(2) Since the circuit is resonant, the current and generated voltage are in phase, hence $\gamma = 0$.

(3) When the condenser discharges, the potential difference between its plates is reduced to zero. Hence. at the moment we are considering, $e_o = 0$

(4) The spark occurs when the generated voltage is zero. Since i_o is in phase with e_o, $i_o = 0$.

(5) Since the circuit is resonant, $Z = R$.

(6) R^2 can usually be neglected as compared with $4\,x\,x_c$.

Hence $$q = 2\sqrt{x\,x_c}$$

Or, since $$x = x_c$$

$$q = 2\,x$$

(7) In our case, $$\theta_o = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

Substituting these conditions, we obtain

$$V = \frac{E\,x}{R}\sin\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + \frac{E\,x}{R}\,\varepsilon^{-\frac{R}{2x}\theta}\left\{\cos\theta + \frac{R}{2\,x}\sin\theta\right\}$$

$$= \frac{E\,x}{R}(-\cos\theta) + \frac{E\,x}{R}\,\varepsilon^{-\frac{R}{2x}\theta}\left\{\cos\theta + \frac{R}{2\,x}\sin\theta\right\}$$

To show the general shape of this curve, which gives the voltage across the condenser at any moment after the time $t = 0$, it has been calculated for a specific case ($C = 20$ microfarads and $R = 1$ ohm), and is shown in Figure 2. In the same figure the curve of generated voltage (a sine wave), is given for comparison.

Digitized by Google

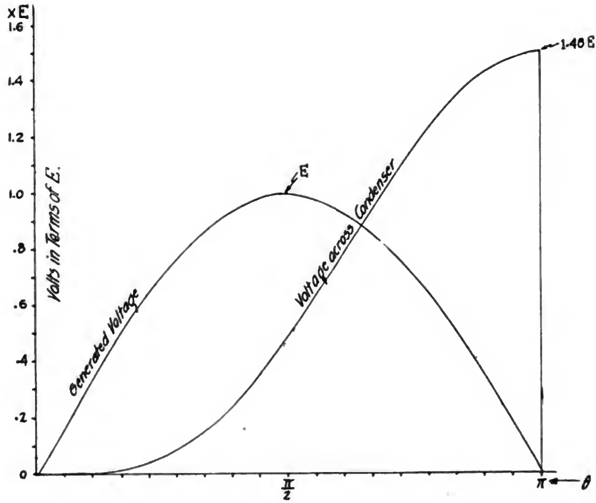


FIGURE 2

This condenser voltage, **V**, will reach its maximum for $\theta = \pi$. It will then be

$$V_{max} = \frac{E\,x}{R} - \frac{E\,x}{R}\varepsilon^{-\frac{\pi R}{2x}}$$

$$= \frac{E\,x}{R}\left(1 - \varepsilon^{-\frac{\pi R}{2x}}\right)$$

This, then, is the potential at which our "reduced" condenser will discharge. The actual condenser, across the transformer secondary, will, of course, discharge at a voltage which is simply this V_{max} multiplied by the transformer ratio. In Figure 3, curves are given for V_{max} in terms of **E** (the maximum generated voltage). It will be seen that for ordinary conditions of resistance (that is, **R** between zero and 1 ohm), $V = 1.5$ E is a good average value.

To find the R. M. S., or effective value of **V** is desirable, since this is the voltage that a voltmeter placed across the transformer primary will read, and this is also the voltage for which the transformer primary must be designed when the equation $$V_{eff} = 4.44\,A\,B\,n\,f \cdot 10^{-8}$$

Digitized by Google

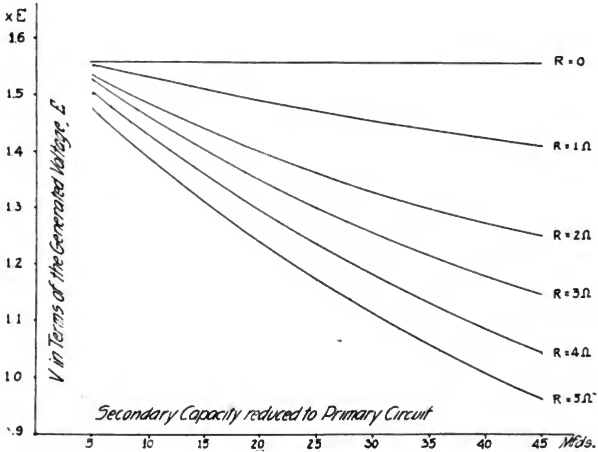


FIGURE 3

is used, where

V_{eff} = R. M. S. volts across transformer primary
A = cross sectional area of core in square cms.
B = flux density, in lines per square cm.
N = number of turns of primary winding.
f = supply frequency.

This effective value of **V** is

$$V_{eff} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^\pi \left(-\frac{E\,x}{R}\cos\theta + \frac{E\,x}{R}\,\varepsilon^{-\frac{R}{2x}\theta}\left\{\cos\theta + \frac{R}{2\,x}\sin\theta\right\}\right)^2}$$

It is found* that

$$V_{eff} = 0.504\ V_{max}.$$

The design of a quenched gap set to operate under resonance conditions becomes a relatively simple matter. Let us take a numerical example for a 500-cycle, 1 kilowatt set, operating with a 110-volt generator (154 volts maximum).

We shall first find the equivalent primary condenser (i. e. the secondary condenser reduced to the primary circuit), required to absorb 1,000 watts, from

$$W = n\,C\,V^2$$

*This value was determined graphically, the integration being done by measuring the area of the squared curve with a planimeter.

Digitized by Google

Since $V = 1.5\,E = (1.5)\,(110)\sqrt{2} = 233$ volts.

Hence $$1000 = 500\,C\,(233)^2,$$
$$C = 37 \text{ microfarads.}$$

To tune to 500 cycles with this capacity, an inductance of 2.5 millihenrys is required. This can be made up partly from the generator armature inductance (usually this is between 1 and 5 millihenrys for a 1 kilowatt, 110-volt machine), and the rest obtained either by a transformer having this amount of leakage inductance, or else from a transformer with no appreciable leakage and series choke coils. I believe the latter method to be preferable as it admits of greater flexibility.

The value of the equivalent primary condenser (or rather, the "reduced" secondary condenser, as I have called it), being now fixed, the actual secondary condenser is determined by deciding on a suitable transformer ratio. The value of this secondary condenser is usually limited by conditions of wave length and also by the discharge current which the quenched gap in use will stand. A large condenser means heavy currents and considerable heating in the gap, while a high discharge voltage and a small condenser would require many gap sections and cause insulation difficulties. It is, I believe, common practice to employ about 0.006 microfarads as a secondary condenser for this type of set.

Having thus determined the ratio of primary to secondary capacities, the transformer ratio is of course fixed; and it is only necessary to design a transformer of the ratio desired—a simple matter with a closed core transformer of negligible leakage. Note should be taken of the fact previously mentioned that when the usual transformer formulas are used, the effective value of V (that is $0.504\,V_{max}$) should be used as the voltage across the primary.

Practically, the operation of quenched gap sets is at a point slightly "off" resonance. However, it is hardly necessary to operate with a condenser as much as 20 per cent larger than the resonance capacity. The foregoing results can, therefore, be applied as very good approximations to actual practice; and have been found to be quite satisfactory for this purpose.

[Since the above was written I have become aware of an article by L. B. Turner* upon the same subject. Following a somewhat different procedure, Turner reaches practically the

*L. B. Turner: "Electrician," Vol. 69, 1912, page 694; "Der Schwingungskreis niedriger Frequenz in der Funkentelegraphie," "Jahrb. d. Drahtl Tel.," Volume 9, Heft 2, page 141.

Digitized by Google

same results as given above, with the exception that he neglects the resistance of the circuit. As Figure 3 shows, however, this would lead to considerable inaccuracies, for large resistances, and is strictly correct only for $R = 0$. Turner obtains the result

$$\left. V = \frac{\pi}{2} E. \right]$$

WASHINGTON, D. C., July 1, 1915.

SUMMARY: The paper gives the operating theory of the power transformer and alternator circuit of quenched spark gap transmitters. The secondary of the transformer and its loading capacity are reduced in the usual way to equivalent primary inductance and capacity. The theory of the transient phenomena occurring at the sudden discharge of the condenser is then developed. It is shown that under ordinary conditions the maximum condenser voltage (reduced to the primary circuit), is 1.5 times the maximum voltage generated in the alternator. The effective (or R. M. S.) condenser voltage, reduced to the primary, is found to be 0.504 times the maximum primary voltage. It is this R. M. S. voltage which is used in the usual transformer design. The theory is clearly illustrated for the case of a 500 cycle 1 K. W. set.

Digitized by Google

THE PUPIN THEORY OF ASYMMETRICAL ROTORS IN UNIDIRECTIONAL FIELDS

WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO THE GOLDSCHMIDT ALTERNATOR.*

BY

BENJAMIN LIEBOWITZ

Since its advent, the radio-frequency generator of Professor Rudolph Goldschmidt has been the subject of much discussion, and several theories of its action have been advanced. The theory of the Goldschmidt alternator, however, is but a special case of the general theory of asymmetrical rotors in unidirectional magnetic fields, which latter has been developed by Professor Pupin, and on which he has been lecturing during the past seven or eight years. The Pupin theory, therefore, antedates the Goldschmidt alternator by several years, but is little known except to those who have attended his lectures. The object of this paper is to give the theory its due publicity.

CIRCUIT HAVING VARIABLE INDUCTANCE AND NO RESISTANCE

It will be helpful, perhaps, before considering Pupin's problem, to take up a simple, hypothetical case first, viz., a circuit having a periodically varied self-induction and no resistance. Imagine a circuit made up of two coils connected in series, the one having inductance L_1, the other inductance L_2, and let M be the maximum value of the mutual inductance between the coils. When they make an angle θ with each other, the mutual inductance between the coils is $M \cos \theta$. (See Figure 1.) Let the circuit be supplied with a source of constant e. m. f., E (e. g., a battery), and let R be the resistance. If one of the coils is continuously rotated with angular velocity ω, the total self-induction of the circuit will vary periodically in accordance with the equation

$$L = L_1 + L_2 + 2 M \cos \omega t.$$

* Delivered before the Institute of Radio Engineers, New York, May 5, 1915.

Digitized by Google

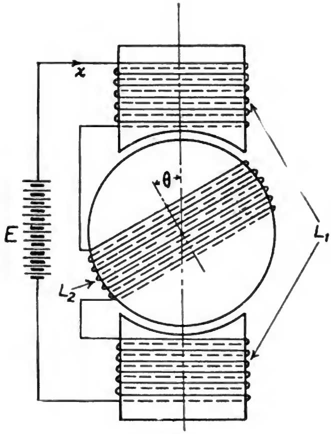


FIGURE 1

The inductance reaction will therefore be

$$\frac{d}{dt}\Big[(L_1 + L_2 + 2\,M \cos \omega\, t)\, x\Big],$$

where x is the current in the circuit at any instant. For brevity, put

$$L_1 + L_2 = \lambda, \;\; 2\,M = \mu,$$

and the inductance reaction becomes $\frac{d}{dt}\Big[(\lambda + \mu \cos \omega\, t)\, x\Big]$. The resistance reaction is Rx, hence the equation of reactions is:

$$\frac{d}{dt}\Big[(\lambda + \mu \cos \omega t)\, x\Big] + R\, x = E.$$

This equation, as it stands, comes under Pupin's problem; what we are interested in for the moment is the simplification which results when the resistance R is assumed to be vanishingly small. We must assume, of course, that E also becomes vanishingly small, altho the ratio $E/R = X$ is to be regarded as finite. With these assumptions the equation of reactions becomes

$$\frac{d}{dt}\Big[(\lambda + \mu \cos \omega\, t)\, x\Big] = 0,$$

the solution of which is

$$(\lambda + \mu \cos \omega\, t)\, x = K,$$

Digitized by Google

whence $$x = \frac{K}{\lambda + \mu \cos \omega t}.$$

K is a constant of integration, depending on the initial conditions. If we assume, for example, that

$$x = X \text{ when } t = 0,$$

then $$K = (\lambda + \mu)\, X = (\lambda + \mu)\, \frac{E}{R}.$$

Therefore $$x = \frac{(\lambda + \mu)\, X}{\lambda + \mu \cos \omega t}.$$

This equation shows how the current varies in a circuit having a periodically varied self-induction, an initial current, and no resistance. Its graph is given in Figure 2 for the case

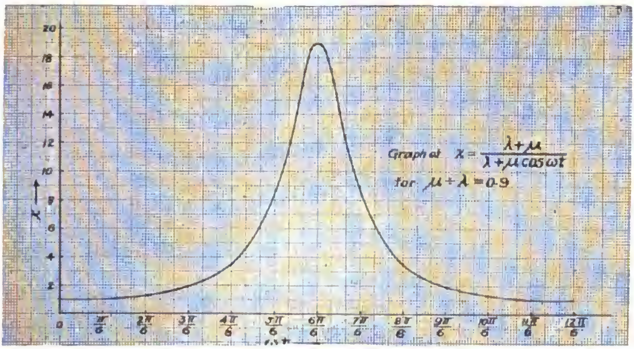


FIGURE 2

where $X = 1$, $\lambda = 1$, $\mu = 0.9$. Since it is an even function, it is developable into a series of cosines. Carrying out the development we obtain

$$x = \frac{(\lambda + \mu)\, X}{\lambda + \mu \cos \omega t} = 2X \sqrt{\frac{\lambda + \mu}{\lambda - \mu}} \left(\frac{1}{2} + B \cos \omega t + B^2 \cos 2\, \omega t + B^3 \cos 3\, \omega t + \ldots \ldots \right),$$

where $$B = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\lambda}{\mu}\right)^2 - 1} - \frac{\lambda}{\mu} = \frac{\lambda}{\mu}\left(\sqrt{1 - \frac{\mu^2}{\lambda^2}} - 1\right).$$

Digitized by Google

Now, the inductance of a circuit without capacity can never become negative, hence

$$L_1 + L_2 + 2\,M \cos \omega t > 0,$$

$$\therefore \qquad L_1 + L_2 > 2\,M \text{ and } \lambda > \mu.$$

Hence B is a negative quantity whose absolute value lies between 0 and 1. B is 0 when M is 0, and $B = -1$ when $L_1 + L_2 = 2\,M$; i. e., when $\lambda = \mu$. This can never happen, but if it did, we see that the amplitudes of all the harmonics of x would be equal but would alternate in sign, and the series would not be convergent. In all other cases we see that the amplitudes of the higher harmonics *decrease in geometric progression*, and that they alternate in sign as before. Obviously the series is convergent.

The case just considered is a purely hypothetical one, of course, but I have worked it out in some detail because of the light it throws on the difficult problem presented by the actual circuits.

For the benefit of those who are not familiar with the theory of transformation of equations, a few words on this topic may be said. Suppose we have an equation of any nature whatever, in any number of variables. To fix the ideas, let there be two variables, x and y, and let the equation be given by

$$f(x, y) = 0.$$

To aid in solving this equation we may substitute for x any legitimate function in any number of new variables, and likewise for y. Suppose these transformations involve 2n new variables; upon $(2n - 2)$ of them we may impose any conditions we please; this leaves two variables, the relation between which must be determined from the original equation, $f(x, y) = 0$.

CIRCUITS HAVING INDUCTANCE, RESISTANCE, AND VARIABLE MUTUAL INDUCTANCE

Turning now to Pupin's theory, we consider first the case of a circuit having resistance R, inductance L, and a constant impressed e. m. f., E.; in the field of this circuit is rotated another circuit having resistance S and inductance N. For any angle θ between the coils, the mutual inductance is given by $M \cos \theta$. (See Figure 3.) In the first circuit, the reactions are the inductance reaction $L \frac{dx}{dt}$, the resistance reaction Rx, and the e. m. f., $M \frac{d}{dt}(y \cos \omega t)$ due to the presence of the rotating circuit. In this latter the reactions are the inductance reaction

Digitized by Google

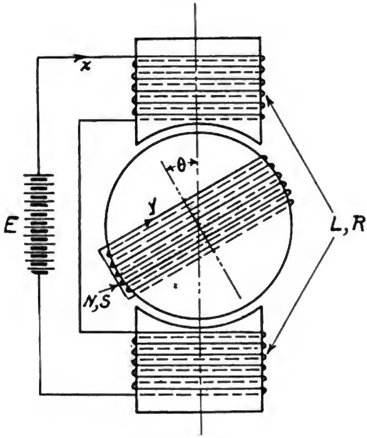


FIGURE 3

$N\frac{dy}{dt}$, the resistance reaction Sy, and the e. m. f. due to the presence of the stator circuit, $M\frac{d}{dt}(x\cos\omega t)$. (Thruout this paper, x shall denote the current in the stator, y the current in the rotor, and ω the angular velocity of rotation.) The equations of reactions therefore are:

$$(1)\quad \begin{cases} L\frac{dx}{dt} + Rx + M\frac{d}{dt}(y\cos\omega t) = E, \\ N\frac{dy}{dt} + Sy + M\frac{d}{dt}(x\cos\omega t) = 0. \end{cases}$$

Pupin's rigorous solution of these equations is the backbone of his theory. Having once obtained the solution of these equations, it is a relatively simple matter to extend the theory to more complicated cases, e. g., with condensers in one or both circuits, impressed e. m. f.'s varying periodically with the time, etc. We shall treat in some detail, therefore, the case now under consideration.

To equations (1) apply the transformations:

$$(2)\quad \begin{cases} x = x_0 + x_2 + x_4 + x_6 + \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots, \\ y = y_1 + y_3 + y_5 + y_7 + \ldots\ldots\ldots\ldots, \end{cases}$$

Digitized by Google

getting:

$$
(3)\left\{\begin{aligned}
& L\frac{d\,x_o}{d\,t} + R\,x_o \\
& + L\frac{d\,x_2}{d\,t} + R\,x_2 + M\frac{d}{d\,t}(y_1 \cos \omega\, t) \\
& + L\frac{d\,x_4}{d\,t} + R\,x_4 + M\frac{d}{d\,t}(y_3 \cos \omega\, t) \\
& + L\frac{d\,x_6}{d\,t} + R\,x_6 + M\frac{d}{d\,t}(y_5 \cos \omega\, t) \\
& + \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \\
& + \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot = E, \\
& N\frac{d\,y_1}{d\,t} + S\,y_1 + M\frac{d}{d\,t}(x_o \cos \omega\, t) \\
& + N\frac{d\,y_3}{d\,t} + S\,y_3 + M\frac{d}{d\,t}(x_2 \cos \omega\, t) \\
& + N\frac{d\,y_5}{d\,t} + S\,y_5 + M\frac{d}{d\,t}(x_4 \cos \omega\, t) \\
& + \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \\
& + \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot = 0.
\end{aligned}\right.
$$

We may regard this transformation as one involving the $2\,n + 2$ variables:

$$x_o,\ x_2,\ x_4,\ \ldots\ldots\ x_{2n};\ \ y_1,\ y_3,\ y_5\ \ldots\ldots\ y_{2n+1};$$

where n is made to approach infinity. The transformation is therefore an infinite one, and we may impose an infinite number of arbitrary conditions; the only requirements to be fulfilled are that the sums $x_o + x_2 + x_4 + \ldots\ldots$ and $y_1 + y_3 + y_5 + \ldots\ldots$ shall satisfy their respective equations and that they shall be convergent.

Impose on $x_o, y_1, x_2, y_3, x_4 \ldots\ldots$ the following conditions:

$$
(4)\left\{\begin{aligned}
&(a)\quad L\frac{d\,x_o}{d\,t} + R\,x_o = E \\
&\qquad\qquad (b)\quad N\frac{d\,y_1}{d\,t} + S\,y_1 + M\frac{d}{d\,t}(x_o \cos \omega\, t) = 0 \\
&(c)\quad L\frac{d\,x_2}{d\,t} + R\,x_2 + M\frac{d}{d\,t}(y_1 \cos \omega\, t) = 0 \\
&\qquad\qquad (c)\quad N\frac{d\,y_3}{d\,t} + S\,y_3 + M\frac{d}{d\,t}(x_2 \cos \omega\, t) = 0 \\
&(d)\quad L\frac{d\,x_4}{d\,t} + R\,x_4 + M\frac{d}{d\,t}(y_3 \cos \omega\, t) = 0 \\
&\qquad\qquad (d)\quad N\frac{d\,y_5}{d\,t} + S\,y_5 + M\frac{d}{d\,t}(x_4 \cos \omega\, t) = .0 \\
&\quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \\
&\qquad\qquad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot
\end{aligned}\right.
$$

Digitized by Google

These conditions obviously satisfy the transformed equations (3) for they make each part of the left-hand members of (3) vanish separately; hence they satisfy the original equations (1). Furthermore, these conditions lead to a convergent result, as will presently be shown.*

The result of the transformations (2) is to break up the original equations (1) into an infinite series of equations (4), each of which can be solved if those preceding it are solved first.

Disregarding transient states thruout, the solution of (4a) is:

$$x_0 = \frac{E}{R}. \tag{5a}$$

Substituting this in (4b) gives

$$N\frac{d\,y_1}{d\,t} + S\,y_1 = -M\,x_0\frac{d}{d\,t}(\cos\omega t)$$
$$= \omega M x_0 \sin\omega t.$$

The solution of this is:

$$y_1 = \frac{\omega M x_0}{Z_1}\sin(\omega t - \theta_1)$$

$$\text{where } Z_1 = \sqrt{(\omega N)^2 + S^2} \text{ and } \theta_1 = \tan^{-1}\frac{\omega N}{S}. \tag{5b}$$

Substituting this in (4c) gives:

$$L\frac{d\,x_2}{d\,t} + R\,x_2 = -\frac{\omega M^2 x_0}{Z_1}\frac{d}{d\,t}\left[\frac{1}{2}\left(\sin(2\omega t - \theta_1) - \sin\theta_1\right)\right]$$
$$= -\frac{(\omega M)^2 x_0}{Z_1}\cos(2\omega t - \theta_1).$$

The solution of this is:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} x_2 &= -\frac{(\omega M)^2 x_0}{Z_1 Z_2}\cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2), \\ &\text{where } Z_2 = \sqrt{(2\omega L)^2 + R^2} \text{ and } \theta_2 = \tan^{-1}\frac{2\omega L}{R}. \end{aligned}\right\} \tag{5c}$$

Substituting this in (4d) gives:

$$N\frac{d\,y_3}{d\,t} + S\,y_3 = \frac{\omega^2 M^3 x_0}{Z_1 Z_2}\frac{d}{d\,t}\left[\frac{1}{2}\cos(3\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2) + \frac{1}{2}\cos(\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2)\right]$$
$$= -\frac{(\omega M)^3 x_0}{Z_1 Z_2}\left[\frac{3}{2}\sin(3\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2) + \frac{1}{2}\sin(\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2)\right].$$

* Later we shall deal with a case where the series are divergent, but it will be shown that even in this case Pupin's transformation is justified by the physical phenomena.

Digitized by Google

The solution of this is:

$$
(5d)\begin{cases}
y_3 = -\dfrac{(\omega M)^3 x_o}{Z_1 Z_2}\left[\dfrac{3}{2 Z_3}\sin(3\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - \theta_3)\right. \\
\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \left. + \dfrac{1}{2 Z_1}\sin(\omega t - 2\theta_1 - \theta_2)\right], \\
\quad \text{where } Z_3 = \sqrt{(3\omega N)^2 + S^2} \text{ and } \theta_3 = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{3\omega N}{S}.
\end{cases}
$$

We may continue in precisely the same manner to get $x_4, y_5, x_6, y_7, \ldots$ in turn. The complications multiply very rapidly, however, so I shall merely write down the values for a few more terms.

$$
(5e)\begin{cases}
x_4 = \dfrac{(\omega M)^4}{Z_1 Z_2} x_o\left[\dfrac{3}{Z_3 Z_4}\cos(4\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - \theta_3 - \theta_4)\right. \\
\qquad + \dfrac{3}{2 Z_2 Z_3}\cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - \theta_3) \\
\qquad \left. + \dfrac{1}{2 Z_1 Z_2}\cos(2\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 2\theta_2)\right], \\
\text{where } Z_4 = \sqrt{(4\omega L)^2 + R^2} \text{ and } \theta_4 = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{4\omega L}{R}.
\end{cases}
$$

$$
(5f)\begin{cases}
y_5 = \dfrac{(\omega M)^5 x_o}{Z_1 Z_2}\left[\dfrac{15}{2 Z_3 Z_4 Z_5}\sin(5\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - \theta_3 - \theta_4 - \theta_5)\right. \\
\qquad\qquad\qquad + \dfrac{9}{2 Z_3^2 Z_4}\sin(3\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - 2\theta_3 - \theta_4) \\
+ \dfrac{9}{4 Z_2 Z_3^2}\sin(3\omega t - \theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - 2\theta_3) \\
\qquad\qquad\qquad + \dfrac{3}{4 Z_1 Z_2 Z_3}\sin(3\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - \theta_3) \\
+ \dfrac{3}{4 Z_1 Z_2 Z_3}\sin(\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - \theta_3) \\
\qquad\qquad\qquad \left. + \dfrac{1}{4 Z_1^2 Z_2}\sin(\omega t - 3\theta_1 - 2\theta_2)\right], \\
\text{where } Z_5 = \sqrt{(5\omega N)^2 + S^2} \text{ and } \theta_5 = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{5\omega N}{S}.
\end{cases}
$$

Digitized by Google

$$
(5g)\quad \begin{cases}
x_6 = -\dfrac{(\omega M)^6 x_o}{Z_1 Z_2}\left[\dfrac{45}{2 Z_3 Z_4 Z_5 Z_6}\cos(6\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - \theta_3 - \theta_4 \right. \\
- \theta_5 - \theta_6) + \dfrac{15}{Z_3 Z_4^2 Z_5}\cos(4\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - \theta_3 - 2\theta_4 - \theta_5) \\
+ \dfrac{9}{Z_3^2 Z_4^2}\cos(4\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - 2\theta_3 - 2\theta_4) \\
\qquad + \dfrac{9}{2 Z_2 Z_3^2 Z_4}\cos(4\omega t - \theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - 2\theta_3 - \theta_4) \\
+ \dfrac{3}{2 Z_1 Z_2 Z_3 Z_4}\cos(4\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - \theta_3 - \theta_4) \\
\qquad + \dfrac{9}{2 Z_2 Z_3^2 Z_4}\cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - 2\theta_3 - \theta_4) \\
+ \dfrac{9}{4 Z_2^2 Z_3^2}\cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - 3\theta_2 - 2\theta_3) \\
\qquad + \dfrac{3}{2 Z_1 Z_2^2 Z_3}\cos(2\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 3\theta_2 - \theta_3) \\
\left. + \dfrac{1}{4 Z_1^2 Z_2^2}\cos(2\omega t - 3\theta_1 - 3\theta_2)\right], \\
\text{where } Z_6 = \sqrt{(6\omega L)^2 + R^2} \text{ and } \theta_6 = \tan^{-1}\dfrac{6\omega L}{R}.
\end{cases}
$$

We see, therefore, that the current y_1 contains the frequency $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$, the current x_2 the frequency $\frac{2\omega}{2\pi}$, the current y_3 the frequencies $\frac{3\omega}{2\pi}$ and $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$, the current x_4 the frequencies $\frac{4\omega}{2\pi}$ and $\frac{2\omega}{2\pi}$, the current y_5 the frequencies $\frac{5\omega}{2\pi}$, $\frac{3\omega}{2\pi}$ and $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$; etc. That is, the current y_{2n+1} contains all the odd frequencies from $(2n+1)\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$ down to $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$, and the current x_{2n} all the even frequencies from $\frac{2n\omega}{2\pi}$ down to $\frac{2\omega}{2\pi}$. If we collect all the terms of frequency $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$ and denote the result by η_1, those of frequency $\frac{2\omega}{2\pi}$ and denote the result by ξ_2, etc., we get:

$$
(6a)\quad \eta_1 = \frac{\omega M x_o}{Z_1}\sin(\omega t - \theta_1) - \frac{(\omega M)^3 x_o}{2 Z_1^2 Z_2}\sin(\omega t - 2\theta_1 - \theta_2)
+ \frac{3(\omega M)^5 x_o}{4 Z_1^2 Z_2^2 Z_3}\sin(\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - \theta_3)
+ \frac{(\omega M)^5 x_o}{4 Z_1^3 Z_2^2}\sin(\omega t - 3\theta_1 - 2\theta_2)
$$

Digitized by Google

$$- \frac{9(\omega M)^7 x_o}{4 Z_1^2 Z_2^2 Z_3^2 Z_4} \sin(\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - 2\theta_3 - \theta_4)$$

$$- \frac{9(\omega M)^7 x_o}{8 Z_1^2 Z_2^3 Z_3^2} \sin(\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 3\theta_2 - 2\theta_3)$$

$$- \frac{3(\omega M)^7 x_o}{4 Z_1^3 Z_2^3 Z_3} \sin(\omega t - 3\theta_1 - 3\theta_2 - \theta_3)$$

$$- \frac{(\omega M)^7 x_o}{8 Z_1^4 Z_2^3} \sin(\omega t - 4\theta_1 - 3\theta_2)$$

$$+ \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad .$$

$$+ \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad .$$

(6b) $$\xi_2 = - \frac{(\omega M)^2 x_o}{Z_1 Z_2} \cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2)$$

$$+ \frac{3(\omega M)^4 x_o}{2 Z_1 Z_2^2 Z_3} \cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - \theta_3)$$

$$+ \frac{(\omega M)^4 x_o}{2 Z_1^2 Z_2^2} \cos(2\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 2\theta_2)$$

$$- \frac{9(\omega M)^6 x_o}{2 Z_1 Z_2^2 Z_3^2 Z_4} \cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - 2\theta_3 - \theta_4)$$

$$- \frac{9(\omega M)^6 x_o}{4 Z_1 Z_2^3 Z_3^2} \cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - 3\theta_2 - 2\theta_3)$$

$$- \frac{3(\omega M)^6 x_o}{2 Z_1^2 Z_2^3 Z_3} \cos(2\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 3\theta_2 - \theta_3)$$

$$- \frac{(\omega M)^6 x_o}{4 Z_1^3 Z_2^3} \cos(2\omega t - 3\theta_1 - 3\theta_2) + \quad . \quad .$$

$$+ \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad . \quad .$$

(6c) $$\eta_3 = - \frac{3(\omega M)^3 x_o}{2 Z_1 Z_2 Z_3} \sin(3\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - \theta_3)$$

$$+ \frac{9(\omega M)^5 x_o}{2 Z_1 Z_2 Z_3^2 Z_4} \sin(3\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - 2\theta_3 - \theta_4)$$

$$+ \frac{9(\omega M)^5 x_o}{4 Z_1 Z_2^2 Z_3^2} \sin(3\omega t - \theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - 2\theta_3)$$

$$+ \frac{3(\omega M)^5 x_o}{4 Z_1^2 Z_2^2 Z_3} \sin(3\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - \theta_3)$$

$$- \frac{45(\omega M)^7 x_o}{2 Z_1 Z_2 Z_3^2 Z_4^2 Z_5} \sin(3\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - 2\theta_3 - 2\theta_4 - \theta_5)$$

$$- \frac{27(\omega M)^7 x_o}{2 Z_1 Z_2 Z_3^3 Z_4^2} \sin(3\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - 3\theta_3 - 2\theta_4)$$

Digitized by Google

$$-\frac{27\,(\omega M)^7\,x_o}{2\,Z_1\,Z_2^2\,Z_3^3\,Z_4}\sin(3\,\omega t-\theta_1-2\,\theta_2-3\,\theta_3-\theta_4)$$
$$-\frac{9\,(\omega M)^7\,x_o}{4\,Z_1^2\,Z_2^2\,Z_3^2\,Z_4}\sin(3\,\omega t-2\,\theta_1-2\,\theta_2-2\,\theta_3-\theta_4)$$
$$-\frac{27\,(\omega M)^7\,x_o}{8\,Z_1\,Z_2^3\,Z_3^3}\sin(3\,\omega t-\theta_1-3\,\theta_2-3\,\theta_3)$$
$$-\frac{9\,(\omega M)^7\,x_o}{4\,Z_1^2\,Z_2^3\,Z_3^2}\sin(3\,\omega t-2\,\theta_1-3\,\theta_2-2\,\theta_3)$$
$$-\frac{3\,(\omega M)^7\,x_o}{8\,Z_1^3\,Z_2^3\,Z_3}\sin(3\,\omega t-3\,\theta_1-3\,\theta_2-\theta_3)$$
$$+\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot$$

$$+\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot$$

(6d)
$$\xi_4=\frac{3\,(\omega M)^4\,x_o}{Z_1\,Z_2\,Z_3\,Z_4}\cos(4\,\omega t-\theta_1-\theta_2-\theta_3-\theta_4)$$
$$-\frac{15\,(\omega M)^6\,x_o}{Z_1\,Z_2\,Z_3\,Z_4^2\,Z_5}\cos(4\,\omega t-\theta_1-\theta_2-\theta_3-2\,\theta_4-\theta_5)$$
$$-\frac{9\,(\omega M)^6\,x_o}{Z_1\,Z_2\,Z_3^2\,Z_4^2}\cos(4\,\omega t-\theta_1-\theta_2-2\,\theta_3-2\,\theta_4)$$
$$-\frac{9\,(\omega M)^6\,x_o}{2\,Z_1\,Z_2^2\,Z_3^2\,Z_4}\cos(4\,\omega t-\theta_1-2\,\theta_2-2\,\theta_3-\theta_4)$$
$$-\frac{3\,(\omega M)^6\,x_o}{2\,Z_1^2\,Z_2^2\,Z_3\,Z_4}\cos(4\,\omega t-2\,\theta_1-2\,\theta_2-\theta_3-\theta_4)$$
$$+\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot$$

$$+\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot$$

(6e)
$$\eta_5=\frac{15\,(\omega M)^5\,x_o}{2\,Z_1\,Z_2\,Z_3\,Z_4\,Z_5}\sin(5\,\omega t-\theta_1-\theta_2-\theta_3-\theta_4-\theta_5)$$
$$-\frac{225\,(\omega M)^7\,x_o}{4\,Z_1\,Z_2\,Z_3\,Z_4\,Z_5^2\,Z_6}\sin(5\omega t-\theta_1-\theta_2-\theta_3-\theta_4-2\,\theta_5-\theta_6)$$
$$-\frac{75\,(\omega M)^7\,x_o}{2\,Z_1\,Z_2\,Z_3\,Z_4^2\,Z_5^2}\sin(5\,\omega t-\theta_1-\theta_2-\theta_3-2\,\theta_4-2\,\theta_5)$$
$$-\frac{45\,(\omega M)^7\,x_o}{2\,Z_1\,Z_2\,Z_3^2\,Z_4^2\,Z_5}\sin(5\,\omega t-\theta_1-\theta_2-2\,\theta_3-2\,\theta_4-\theta_5)$$
$$-\frac{45\,(\omega M)^7\,x_o}{4\,Z_1\,Z_2^2\,Z_3^2\,Z_4\,Z_5}\sin(5\,\omega t-\theta_1-2\,\theta_2-2\,\theta_3-\theta_4-\theta_5)$$
$$-\frac{15\,(\omega M)^7\,x_o}{4\,Z_1^2\,Z_2^2\,Z_3\,Z_4\,Z_5}\sin(5\,\omega t-2\,\theta_1-2\,\theta_2-\theta_3-\theta_4-\theta_5)$$
$$+\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot\quad\cdot$$

Digitized by Google

$$(6f) \quad \xi_6 = -\frac{45\,(\omega M)^6\,x_o}{2\,Z_1\,Z_2\,Z_3\,Z_4\,Z_5\,Z_6}\cos(6\,\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - \theta_3 - \theta_4 - \theta_5 - \theta_6) + \ldots$$

$$(6g) \quad \eta_7 = -\frac{7 \times 45\,(\omega M)^7\,x_o}{4\,Z_1\,Z_2\,Z_3\,Z_4\,Z_5\,Z_6\,Z_7}\sin(7\,\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - \theta_3 - \theta_4 - \theta_5 - \theta_6 - \theta_7) + \ldots$$

. . . .

. . . .

Finally

$$(7) \quad \begin{aligned} x &= x_o + \xi_2 + \xi_4 + \xi_6 + \xi_8 + \ldots \\ y &= \quad\;\; \eta_1 + \eta_3 + \eta_5 + \eta_7 + \ldots \end{aligned}$$

These series are Pupin's solution of the fundamental differential equations (1). They are, in effect, Fourier's series, each amplitude of which is an infinite series. Their physical significance is most easily brought out after their convergence has been demonstrated.

PROOF OF CONVERGENCE WITH VANISHINGLY SMALL RESISTANCES

I have found a relatively simple proof of the convergence by first letting the resistances become vanishingly small, which leads us to series that are obviously convergent, and then showing that the re-introduction of finite resistances does not affect the convergence.

When $R = S = 0$, $\qquad \theta_1 = \theta_2 = \theta_3 = \ldots = \frac{\pi}{2}$,

and $Z_1 = \omega N$, $Z_2 = 2\,\omega L$, $Z_3 = 3\,\omega N$, $Z_4 = 4\,\omega L, \ldots$

Hence η_1 becomes

$$\eta_1 = x_o \frac{M}{N}\Bigg\{\sin\left(\omega t - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) - \frac{M^2}{4\,L\,N}\sin\left(\omega t - \frac{3\pi}{2}\right) + \frac{3}{4 \times 4 \times 3}\left(\frac{M^2}{L\,N}\right)^2 \sin\left(\omega t - \frac{5\pi}{2}\right) + \frac{1}{4 \times 4}\left(\frac{M^2}{L\,N}\right)^2 \sin\left(\omega t - \frac{5\pi}{2}\right) - \frac{9}{4 \times 4 \times 9 \times 4}\left(\frac{M^2}{L\,N}\right)^3 \sin\left(\omega t - \frac{7\pi}{2}\right) - \frac{9}{8 \times 8 \times 9}\left(\frac{M^2}{L\,N}\right)^3 \sin\left(\omega t - \frac{7\pi}{2}\right) - \frac{3}{4 \times 8 \times 3}\left(\frac{M^2}{L\,N}\right)^3 \sin\left(\omega t - \frac{7\pi}{2}\right) - \frac{1}{8 \times 8}\left(\frac{M^2}{L\,N}\right)^3 \sin\left(\omega t - \frac{7\pi}{2}\right) + \ldots\Bigg\}$$

Digitized by Google

Hence:

$$
(8)\left\{
\begin{aligned}
\eta_1 &= -x_0\frac{M}{N}\cos\omega t\left\{1+\frac{1}{2^2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)+\frac{2}{2^4}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2+\frac{5}{2^6}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^3\right.\\
&\qquad\left.+\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots\right\}\\
&\text{Similarly}\\
\xi_2 &= \frac{x_0}{2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)\cos 2\,\omega t\left\{1+\frac{2}{2^2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)+\frac{5}{2^4}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2+\frac{14}{2^6}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^3\right.\\
&\qquad\left.+\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots\right\}\\
\eta_3 &= -\frac{x_0}{2^2}\frac{M}{N}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)\cos 3\,\omega t\left\{1+\frac{3}{2^2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)+\frac{9}{2^4}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2\right.\\
&\qquad\left.+\frac{28}{2^6}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^3+\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots\right\}\\
\xi_4 &= \frac{x_0}{2^3}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2\cos 4\,\omega t\left\{1+\frac{4}{2^2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)+\frac{14}{2^4}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2\right.\\
&\qquad\left.+\frac{48}{2^6}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^3+\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots\right\}\\
\eta_5 &= -\frac{x_0}{2^4}\frac{M}{N}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2\cos 5\,\omega t\left\{1+\frac{5}{2^2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)+\frac{20}{2^4}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2\right.\\
&\qquad\left.+\frac{75}{2^6}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^3+\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots\right\}\\
\xi_6 &= \frac{x_0}{2^5}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^3\cos 6\,\omega t\left\{1+\frac{6}{2^2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)\right.\\
&\qquad\left.+\cdots\cdots\right\}\\
&\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots
\end{aligned}
\right.
$$

Now, by expansion in power series we find:

$$
(9)\left\{
\begin{aligned}
\left(1-\sqrt{1-\frac{M^2}{LN}}\right) &= \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)\left\{1+\frac{1}{2^2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)+\frac{2}{2^4}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2\right.\\
&\qquad\left.+\frac{5}{2^6}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^3+\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots\right.\\
\left(1-\sqrt{1-\frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)^2 &= \frac{1}{2^2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2\left\{1+\frac{2}{2^2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)+\frac{5}{2^4}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2\right.\\
&\qquad\left.+\frac{14}{2^6}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^3+\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots\right\}\\
\left(1-\sqrt{1-\frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)^3 &= \frac{1}{2^3}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^3\left\{1+\frac{3}{2^2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)+\frac{9}{2^4}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2\right.\\
&\qquad\left.+\frac{28}{2^6}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^3+\cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots\right\}
\end{aligned}
\right.
$$

Digitized by Google

$$\left(1-\sqrt{1-\frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)^4 = \frac{1}{2^4}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^4\left\{1+\frac{4}{2^2}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)+\frac{14}{2^4}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^2 + \frac{48}{2^6}\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^3 + \cdots\right\}$$

$$\cdots\cdots\cdots$$

From (8) and (9) there results:

$$\eta_1 = -2x_o\frac{L}{M}\left(1-\sqrt{1-\frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)\cos\omega t$$

$$\xi_2 = 2x_o\frac{LN}{M^2}\left(1-\sqrt{1-\frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)^2\cos 2\omega t$$

$$\eta_3 = -2x_o\frac{L}{M}\left(\frac{LN}{M^2}\right)\left(1-\sqrt{1-\frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)^3\cos 3\omega t$$

$$\xi_4 = 2x_o\left(\frac{LN}{M^2}\right)^2\left(1-\sqrt{1-\frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)^4\cos 4\omega t$$

$$\eta_5 = -2x_o\frac{L}{M}\left(\frac{LN}{M^2}\right)^2\left(1-\sqrt{1-\frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)^5\cos 5\omega t$$

$$\cdots\cdots\cdots$$

$$\cdots\cdots\cdots$$

Hence, putting for brevity:

$$\left(\frac{LN}{M^2}\right)\left(1-\sqrt{1-\frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)^2 = \phi$$

we get

$$(10)\quad\begin{cases} x = x_o + 2x_o\left\{\phi\cos 2\omega t + \phi^2\cos 4\omega t + \phi^3\cos 6\omega t + \cdots\right\} \\ y = -2x_o\frac{L}{M}\left(1-\sqrt{1-\frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)\left\{\cos\omega t + \phi\cos 3\omega t + \phi^2\cos 5\omega t + \phi^3\cos 7\omega t + \cdots\right\}. \end{cases}$$

Hence Pupin's series reduce to Fourier's series, the amplitudes of which are proportional to integral powers of ϕ. This is what we should expect from the simple case treated above of a single circuit with no resistance and a periodically varied self-induction. In fact, if we had chosen in the case first treated, a pair of circuits with periodically varied mutual inductance and no resistance,

Digitized by Google

instead of a single circuit with periodically varied self-inductance, we should have arrived immediately at equations (10).

The quantity ϕ takes the form $\infty \times 0$ when $M = 0$, and so does the quantity $\frac{L}{M}\left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)$. It may readily be shown, however, that

$$\operatorname*{Lim}_{M \doteq 0} \phi = 0$$

$$\text{and that } \operatorname*{Lim}_{M \doteq 0} \frac{L}{M}\left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \frac{M^2}{LN}}\right) = 0$$

Hence, when $M = 0$, the only current which exists is $x_o = E/R$, which, of course, must be the case. Further, $\frac{M^2}{LN}$ is the coupling factor of the two circuits, and this must always be less than unity, and positive, of course. With these limitations on $\frac{M_2}{LN}$, it is clear that the quantities ϕ and $\left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)$ can never reach unity. Therefore

$$0 < \phi < 1 \text{ and } 0 < \left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \frac{M^2}{LN}}\right) < 1.$$

Hence the amplitudes of equations (10) are power series whose ratio is less than unity in absolute value, therefore the series are absolutely convergent.

PROOF OF CONVERGENCE WITH FINITE RESISTANCES

This result will now be extended to the practical case where the resistances are finite. In order to pass from equations (10) back to equations (7) and (6), we go through the following steps: (1), expand each expression $2\phi^n$ and $2\frac{L}{M}\left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \frac{M^2}{LN}}\right)\phi^n$ into power series in $\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)$; (2), break up each term $h\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^k$ of the resulting series into a number of smaller terms

$$a_1\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^k + a_2\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^k + a_3\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^k + \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot$$

where a_1, a_2, a_3, . . . all have the same sign as the original term $h\left(\frac{M^2}{LN}\right)^k$; (it is important to note that in forming equations (8), the terms which were combined into single terms all

Digitized by Google

had the same sign); (3), split up each term $a_i \left(\frac{M^2}{L N}\right)^k \cos m \omega t$ into two terms, viz.,

$$a_i \left(\frac{M^2}{L N}\right)^k \sin \Theta \cos m \omega t \quad \text{and} \quad a_i \left(\frac{M^2}{L N}\right)^k \cos \Theta \sin m \omega t,$$

each of which is smaller than the term from which it is derived. In this way each of the series in equations (10) is converted into two series, one in sines, the other in cosines, in each of which the amplitudes are infinite series. That is, we pass from the convergent series of (10) to Pupin's series (8) by a number of steps *which cannot alter the convergence.* Hence it is proved that Pupin's series are convergent, and therefore that the Pupin theory is entirely rigorous.

PHYSICAL INTERPRETATION OF THE SOLUTION

Turning now to the physical interpretation of equations (6) and (7), we see that whenever an asymetrical rotor is revolved in the field of a stator on which is impressed a constant e. m. f., there are generated an infinite number of harmonics in both the stator and the rotor. The harmonics in the rotor are all odd, in the stator they are all even. If the resistances are small in comparison with the inductances, the amplitudes of the harmonics decrease approximately according to integral powers of a quantity ϕ whose absolute value is less than unity. If the resistances are not small, it is obvious that amplitudes must decrease more rapidly. The smaller the coupling coefficient the smaller is the quantity ϕ, and hence the more rapidly do the amplitudes decrease. The wave distortion in single phase alternators is an example; if the air gap is small, the coupling $\frac{M^2}{L N}$ will not be very small, and the amplitudes of the odd harmonics in the rotor will not fall off very rapidly. The presence of these odd harmonics constitutes at least part of the distortion. If a large uncoupled inductance is connected in series with the field of a single phase alternator, the coupling $\frac{M^2}{L N}$ will be reduced, and the distortion consequently diminished. This might be of practical importance, for example, in enabling single phase alternators to be constructed with smaller air gaps and thereby reducing the amount of copper required in the field coils. The case of polyphase alternators with unbalanced load is precisely similar, of course.

Digitized by Google

In ordinary alternating current machinery, the harmonics are suppressed as far as possible; in the Goldschmidt alternator, on the other hand, the harmonics are encouraged by the use of condensers, the object being to get as much energy as possible into a single predetermined overtone. In his lectures, Professor Pupin indicated how the theory could bé extended to include condensers in the stator and rotor circuits. This extension will now be carried out in detail.

CIRCUITS HAVING RESISTANCE, INDUCTANCE, CAPACITY AND VARIABLE MUTUAL INDUCTANCE

Suppose that the rotor and stator circuits include any arbitrary arrangement of inductances and capacities. At a given frequency $\frac{2n\omega}{2\pi}$, the stator circuit will have a definite effective resistance, which we may denote by R_{2n}, and a definite effective inductance, which we may denote by L_{2n}. Similarly, at a given frequency $\frac{(2n+1)\omega}{2\pi}$, the rotor circuit will have an effective resistance S_{2n+1} and inductance N_{2n+1}. That is, the quantities R, S, L, N are no longer constants, but are functions of the frequency. R_{2n} and S_{2n+1} must always be positive, but L_{2n} and N_{2n+1} may be positive, negative or zero. If $L_{2n} = 0$, it means that the stator circuit is tuned to the frequency $\frac{2n\omega}{2\pi}$; similarly, if $N_{2n+1} = 0$, the rotor circuit is tuned to the frequency $\frac{(2n+1)\omega}{2\pi}$.

It is clear, therefore, that the fundamental differential equations (1) hold for the present case as well as for the previous case, provided that we consider steady states only, the only difference being that R, S, L and N are now functions of ω. Bearing this in mind we may proceed exactly in the same manner as before, arriving at equations (4). The solutions of these equations are of the same form as in the previous case, i. e., of the same form as equations (5); but now, Z_1, Z_2, Z_3, Z_4 . . . . and $\theta_1, \theta_2, \theta_3, \theta_4,$ . . . . are given by:

$$Z_1^2 = (\omega N_1)^2 + S_1^2 \qquad \theta_1 = \tan^{-1}\frac{\omega N_1}{S_1}$$

$$Z_2^2 = (2\omega L_2)^2 + R_2^2 \qquad \theta_2 = \tan^{-1}\frac{2\omega L_2}{R_2}$$

$$Z_3^2 = (3\omega N_3)^2 + S_3^2 \qquad \theta_3 = \tan^{-1}\frac{3\omega N_3}{S_3}$$

Digitized by Google

$$Z_4^2 = (4\,\omega L_4)^2 + R_4^2 \qquad\qquad \theta_4 = \tan^{-1}\frac{4\,\omega L_4}{R_4}$$

. . . .

It is clear, therefore, that the solutions as given by equations (6) and (7) hold for all cases, provided that the proper meanings be attached to the Z's and the θ's.

We proceed now to investigate what happens to Pupin's series when the rotor circuit is tuned to a definite number of frequencies $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}, \frac{3\,\omega}{2\pi} \ldots$, and the stator circuit to the frequencies $\frac{2\,\omega}{2\pi}, \frac{4\,\omega}{2\pi}, \ldots$ To fix the ideas, let the rotor be tuned to the single frequency $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$, and the stator to the single frequency $\frac{2\,\omega}{2\pi}$. Then Z_1 becomes simply S_1, and Z_2 becomes R_2. We assume, furthermore, that the effective resistances for these frequencies, i. e., S_1 and R_2, are small. Then the quantities $\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}$ and $\frac{\omega M}{Z_2}$, which now become $\frac{\omega M}{S_1}$ and $\frac{\omega M}{R_2}$, are very large.

It will be observed that the current η_1 contains the amplitudes:

$$\frac{\omega M x_0}{Z_1},\quad \left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)^2\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)x_0,\quad \left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)^3\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)^2 x_0,\quad \left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)^4\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)^3 x_0$$
$$\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)^5\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)^4 x_0, \ldots$$

Likewise, the current ξ_2 contains the amplitudes:

$$2 x_0\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right),\quad 2 x_0\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)^2\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)^2,\quad 2 x_0\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)^3\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)^3.$$
$$2 x_0\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)^4\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)^4, \ldots$$

and η_3 contains the amplitudes:

$$\frac{3\,\omega M x_0}{Z_3}\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right),\quad \frac{3\,\omega M x_0}{Z_3}\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)^2\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)^2,$$
$$\frac{3\,\omega M x_0}{Z_3}\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)^3\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)^3, \ldots$$

and ξ_4 contains the amplitudes:

$$\frac{6\,(\omega M)^2 x_0}{Z_3 Z_4}\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right),\quad \frac{6\,(\omega M)^2 x_0}{Z_3 Z_4}\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)^2\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)^2$$

. . . .

Digitized by Google

We see, therefore, that every current contains amplitudes which are power series in $\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)$; and if the circuits are tuned so as to reduce Z_1 to S_1 and Z_2 to R_2, and if these resistances are small, it follows that *all* the series of equations (6) *diverge*, and therefore that *all the amplitudes tend towards infinity.* A complete discussion of the convergence or divergence of these series is not very simple, but in the given case it is clear that if the resistances R_2 and S_1, are small, the higher powers of $\left(\frac{\omega M}{Z_1}\right)\left(\frac{\omega M}{2 Z_2}\right)$ which occur in all the amplitudes soon become so large as to make all the other terms in the amplitudes negligibly small, and the divergence of all the amplitudes is therefore assured.

EXPLANATION OF LIMITATION OF ROTOR AND STATOR CURRENTS IN PRACTICE

The question now arises, does the Pupin theory break down when tuned condenser circuits of low resistance are employed, or is the theory still justified by the physical phenomena? And if the theory is justified how can the operation of the Goldschmidt alternator be accounted for?

The answer to both of these questions is, I think, not far to seek. It does not require an elaborate theory to show that if the stator and rotor circuits are tuned, let us say to the frequencies $\frac{2\omega}{2\pi}$ and $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$ respectively, the currents all tend toward infinity in an ideal machine of low resistance. For, suppose a current x_o is flowing in the stator; this will give rise to a current $\frac{\omega M x_o}{S} \sin \omega t$ in the tuned rotor circuit; this in turn will give rise to a current $-\frac{(\omega M)^2 x_o}{R S} \cos 2\omega t$ in the tuned stator circuit (leaving out of account the other currents generated): this stator current in turn will give rise to a current $-\frac{(\omega M)^3 x_o}{2 R S^2} \sin \omega t$ in the tuned rotor circuit, which is opposite in phase to the first current $\frac{\omega M x_o}{S} \sin \omega t$ but is very much larger than the same if the resistances are small. In this way, each new current of frequency $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$ in the rotor will

Digitized by Google

give rise to a much larger current of frequency $\frac{2\omega}{2\pi}$ in the stator, and this in turn to a still larger current of frequency $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$ in the rotor, and so forth. Physical reasoning shows, therefore, that the currents to which the circuits are tuned tend toward infinity in ideal machines of low resistance. But obviously, if one of the currents becomes infinite, they all must become infinite, hence the Pupin theory as applied to the case of tuned condenser circuits is entirely in accord with the phenomena which would exist in an ideal machine. The correctness of the Pupin theory in all cases is therefore established.

As regards the practical operation of the Goldschmidt alternator, this is readily accounted for by the variable permeability of the iron. As the rotor and stator currents become larger and larger, the permeability of the iron becomes smaller and smaller, hence the circuits *automatically detune themselves* and thereby keep down the currents. At the same time, the losses in the iron increase rapidly as the currents become larger, hence the effective resistances also become larger, and this also tends to limit the values of the current. It is a physical impossibility, therefore, to keep the circuits in tune or to keep the resistances very low; the practical operation of the Goldschmidt alternator is thus accounted for.

The Pupin theory shows that by suitably controlling the impedances Z_1, Z_2, Z_3, ... it should be possible to make any given amplitude larger than the others, but it also shows that to make the given amplitude large, the neighboring amplitudes must also be large. Professor Pupin long ago pointed out the possibilities in this method of generating radio frequency currents, but in his opinion the difficulties and disadvantages outweighed the advantages to such an extent that he did not attempt to develop the method for practical purposes.

Thruout this paper, attention has been confined to the case of a constant e. m. f. impressed on the stator. It should be mentioned, however, that the Pupin theory includes the case where the impressed e. m. f. is any function of the time. In conclusion it should also be mentioned that Professor Pupin showed his solution of the fundamental differential equations to Professor Moulton of Chicago University, and that the latter has since applied the method to the general theory of linear differential equations with harmonic coefficients.

Digitized by Google

SUMMARY: The case of a simple circuit having periodically varying inductance is first examined. The solution shows that the current has a constant component and an infinite series of convergently diminishing higher harmonics. Circuits having inductance, resistance, and variable mutual inductance are next considered. To solve the equations obtained, an infinite transformation is carried out, each variable being replaced by the sum of an infinite series of new variables, thus enabling an infinite number of arbitrary conditions to be imposed. As a result, an infinite series of equations is obtained, each of which can be solved if those preceding it have been solved. The solutions are worked out to the fourth harmonic in one circuit and the third in the other. In one circuit, only odd frequencies appear; in the other, only even. The general solutions are in the form of a Fourier's series, each amplitude of which is an infinite series. The convergence of the solutions is completely established. The solutions are then extended to the case where rotor and stator circuits contain capacities.

It is shown that according to Pupin's theory, all currents in low resistance rotors and stators tend toward infinity if these circuits are appropriately tuned. This apparent discrepancy from practice is explained on the ground that the variable permeability of the iron in the Goldschmidt alternators automatically detunes the circuits and that the increasing losses of the iron tend further to limit all currents.

Digitized by Google

DISCUSSION

Louis Cohen (by letter): Aside from the interesting solution of the problem that the paper deals with relating to radio frequency alternators, the great importance of the paper consists in the general method that Professor Pupin has given us for solving differential equations having variable coefficients. I believe the method will prove of great value in the solution of many other problems in electrotechnics.

I recall that I have discussed this problem with Professor Pupin about six years ago, and he told me then that he had marked out the general solution of the problem, but reserved its publication for some future time. We ought to be grateful to Mr. Liebowitz for having put it in shape for publication and presenting it before the Institute.

As an illustration of the applicability of the method developed in the paper to the solution of other problems, it may be of interest to mark out the problem of the microphone circuit.

We have in this case an inductance, a variable resistance and a continuous e. m. f. in the circuit, and the circuit equation is,

$$L\frac{dI}{dt} + RI + rI\cos\omega t = E, \qquad (1)$$

where R+r is the total resistance of the circuit in stationary condition.*

As far as I know the complete solution of this problem has never been given. Following, however, the method developed by Professor Pupin, we can readily obtain the solution of the problem.

Put $$I = I_0 + I_1 + I_2 + I_3 + \ldots\ldots + I_n, \qquad (2)$$

and make the substitution in equation (1), we get

$$\left.\begin{aligned} & L\frac{dI_0}{dt} + RI_0 + rI_0\cos\omega t \\ & + L\frac{dI_1}{dt} + RI_1 + rI_1\cos\omega t \\ & + L\frac{dI_2}{dt} + RI_2 + rI_2\cos\omega t \\ & + \cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots \\ & + L\frac{dI_n}{dt} + RI_n + rI_n\cos\omega t = E \end{aligned}\right\} \qquad (3)$$

* (R is the constant resistance of the external circuit; the resistance of the microphone, which varies periodically under the influence of a sound of frequency $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$, is $r\cos\omega t$. The term $I(r\cos\omega t)$ in equation (1) is therefore the drop of potential at time t across the microphone.—Editor.)

Digitized by Google

In accordance with the method given in the paper, we can break up equation (3) into a number of independent equations, as follows:

$$\left.\begin{array}{ll}
\text{(a)} & L\dfrac{d\,I_0}{d\,t} + R\,I_0 = E \\
\text{(b)} & L\dfrac{d\,I_1}{d\,t} + R\,I_1 + r\,I_0 \cos\omega\,t = 0 \\
\text{(c)} & L\dfrac{d\,I_2}{d\,t} + R\,I_2 + r\,I_1 \cos\omega\,t = 0 \\
\text{(d)} & L\dfrac{d\,I_3}{d\,t} + R\,I_3 + r\,I_2 \cos\omega\,t = 0 \\
 & \cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots \\
 & \cdots\cdots\cdots\cdots
\end{array}\right\} \quad (4)$$

Disregarding the transients, we have for the solution of (4a),

$$I_0 = \frac{E}{R}. \tag{5}$$

Substituting the value of I_0 from (5) into (4b), we get

$$L\frac{d\,I_1}{d\,t} + R\,I_1 = -\frac{E\,r}{R}\cos\omega\,t \tag{6}$$

and

$$I_1 = -\frac{E\,r}{R\,Z_1}\cos(\omega\,t - \theta_1) \tag{7}$$

$$Z = \sqrt{L^2\,\omega^2 + R^2}, \quad \theta_1 = \tan^{-1}\frac{L\,\omega}{R}.$$

Substituting the value of I_1 into (4c), we have

$$L\frac{d\,I_2}{d\,t} + R\,I_2 = \frac{E\,r^2}{R\,Z_1}\cos(\omega\,t - \theta_1)\cos\omega\,t$$

$$= \frac{E\,r^2}{2\,R\,Z_1}\left\{\cos(2\,\omega\,t - \theta_1) + \cos\theta_1\right\}$$

and

$$I_2 = \frac{E\,r^2}{2\,R\,Z_1\,Z_2}\cos(2\,\omega\,t - \theta_1 - \theta_2) + \frac{E\,r^2\cos\theta_1}{2\,R^2\,Z_1}. \tag{8}$$

Repeating the operation, we find in a similar manner,

$$\begin{aligned}
I_3 = &-\frac{E\,r^3}{4\,R\,Z_1\,Z_2\,Z_3}\cos(3\,\omega\,t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - \theta_3) \\
&-\frac{E\,r^3}{4\,R\,Z_1^2\,Z_2}\cos(\omega\,t - 2\,\theta_1 - \theta_2) \\
&-\frac{E\,r^3}{2\,R^2\,Z_1^2}\cos\theta_1\cos(\omega\,t - \theta_1)
\end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

Digitized by Google

$$\left.\begin{aligned}
I_4 = {} & \frac{E r^4}{8 R Z_1 Z_2 Z_3 Z_4} \cos(4\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2 - \theta_3 - \theta_4) \\
& \qquad + \frac{E r^4}{8 R Z_1 Z_2^2 Z_3} \cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - \theta_3) \\
& + \frac{E r^4}{8 R Z_1^2 Z_2^2} \cos(2\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 2\theta_2) \\
& \qquad + \frac{E r^4}{8 R^2 Z_1^2 Z_2} \cos(2\theta_1 + \theta_2) \\
& + \frac{E r^4}{4 R^2 Z_1^2 Z_2} \cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2) + \frac{E r^4 \cos^2\theta_1}{4 R^3 Z_1^2}.
\end{aligned}\right\} \quad (10)$$

and similarly for the other components.

If we collect separately the terms of the same frequency, and denote the results by γ_0, γ_1, γ_2, etc., respectively, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
\gamma_0 = {} & \frac{E}{R} + \frac{E r^2 \cos\theta_1}{2 R^2 Z_1} + \frac{E r^4}{8 R^2 Z_1^2 Z_2} \cos(2\theta_1 + \theta_2) \\
& \qquad + \frac{E r^4 \cos^2\theta_1}{4 R^3 Z_1^2} + \cdots \\
= {} & \frac{E}{R}\left\{1 + \frac{r^2}{2 R Z_1}\cos\theta_1 + \frac{r^4}{8 R Z_1^2 Z_2}\cos(2\theta_1 + \theta_2)\right. \\
& \qquad \left. + \frac{r^4 \cos^2\theta_1}{4 R^2 Z_1^2} + \cdots\right\}
\end{aligned} \quad (11)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
-\gamma_1 = {} & \frac{E r}{R Z_1}\left\{\cos(\omega t - \theta_1) + \frac{r^2}{4 Z_1 Z_2}\cos(\omega t - 2\theta_1 - \theta_2)\right. \\
& \qquad \left. + \frac{r^2}{2 R Z_1}\cos\theta_1 \cos(\omega t - \theta_1) + \cdots\right\}
\end{aligned} \quad (12)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\gamma_2 = {} & \frac{E r^2}{2 R Z_1 Z_2}\left\{\cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2) + \frac{r^2}{4 Z_2 Z_3}\cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - 2\theta_2 - \theta_3)\right. \\
& \qquad + \frac{r^2}{4 Z_1 Z_2}\cos(2\omega t - 2\theta_1 - 2\theta_2) \\
& \qquad \left. + \frac{r^2}{2 R Z_1}\cos(2\omega t - \theta_1 - \theta_2) + \cdots\right\}
\end{aligned} \quad (13)$$

. . . .

The total current in the circuit is

$$I = \gamma_0 + \gamma_1 + \gamma_2 + \cdots \quad (14)$$

It is seen therefore that the current is of a complex character, having a continuous current component, and currents of frequencies $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$, $\frac{2\omega}{2\pi}$, etc. It is also to be noted that the amplitudes of the different components decrease as the frequencies increase.

As a partial proof we may consider the case when there is no inductance in the circuit, $L = 0$, we have then

$$\theta_1 = \theta_2 = \theta_3 = \cdots = 0$$

$$Z_1 = Z_2 = Z_3 = \cdots = R.$$

Digitized by Google

Equations (11), (12), and (13) reduce to

$$
\begin{aligned}
\gamma_0 &= \frac{E}{R}\left\{1+\frac{r^2}{2\,R^2}+\frac{r^4}{8\,R_4}+\frac{r^4}{4\,R^4}+\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\right\} \\
-\gamma_1 &= \frac{E\,r}{R^2}\cos\omega\,t\left\{1+\frac{r^2}{4\,R^2}+\frac{r^2}{2\,R^2}+\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\right\}
\end{aligned}
\tag{15}
$$

. . . .

If we put L=0 in equation (1) we get

$$
I = \frac{E}{R + r\cos\omega\,t} = \frac{E}{R}\left\{1+\frac{r}{R}\cos\omega\,t\right\}^{-1}. \tag{16}
$$

Expanding the above by the binomial theorem, we have

$$
I=\frac{E}{R}\left\{1-\frac{r}{R}\cos\omega\,t+\frac{r^2}{R^2}\cos^2\omega\,t-\frac{r^3}{R^3}\cos^3\omega\,t+\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\right\} \tag{17}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\cos^2\omega\,t &= \frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2}\cos 2\,\omega\,t \\
\cos^3\omega\,t &= \frac{1}{2}\cos\omega\,t+\frac{1}{4}\cos\omega\,t+\frac{1}{4}\cos 3\,\omega\,t \\
\cos^4\omega\,t &= \frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{2}\cos 2\,\omega\,t+\frac{1}{8}+\frac{1}{8}\cos 4\,\omega\,t
\end{aligned}
$$

. . . .

Making these substitutions, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\because\ I = &\frac{E}{R}\left\{1+\frac{r^2}{2\,R^2}+\frac{r^4}{4\,R^4}+\frac{r^4}{8\,R^4}+\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\right\} \\
&-\frac{E\,r}{R^2}\cos\omega\,t\left\{1+\frac{1}{2}\frac{r^2}{R^2}+\frac{1}{4}\frac{r^2}{R^2}+\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\right\} \\
&+\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot\;\cdot
\end{aligned}
\tag{18}
$$

The results by the two methods are in exact agreement.

Benjamin Liebowitz (by letter): Owing to the fact that Pupin's series diverge when tuned condenser circuits of low resistance are employed, great care must be exercised in interpreting the theory as applied to the Goldschmidt alternator. The theory shows that if a current of a given frequency is large, the currents of neighboring frequencies must also be large; but it also shows that by properly controlling the impedances (detuning some of the circuits, if necessary) *the series for a given frequency can be made to diverge more rapidly than any other.* There is nothing in the theory, therefore, which says that a high efficiency is impossible. On the other hand, a high efficiency would hardly be expected, owing to the inevitable large losses in the iron, and in practice the efficiency is not more than fifty-four per cent., according to Mr. Mayer.

Digitized by Google

It has been remarked that the currents of frequency $\frac{2\omega}{2\pi}$, for example, generated in the stator by successive "reflection" from the rotor, being of opposite signs, tend to neutralize each other. It must be borne in mind, however, that any power series whose ratio is greater than unity is divergent, even if the signs alternate. Therefore, all the currents tend toward infinity in an ideal machine, in spite of the differences in sign of successive amplitudes. The series will begin to converge only when the ratios $\frac{\omega M}{Z}$ become sufficiently small, and in tuned condenser circuits this cannot happen until the currents attain sufficiently large values to produce detuning, a decrease in M, and increases in the effective resistances, by the approach of saturation.

Lester L. Israel (by letter): From the theory developed in this paper it appears that currents of lower frequency due to reactions of the higher harmonics become increasingly large.

Since in practice the Goldschmidt alternator is quite efficient, this can hardly be so. Perhaps the apparent discrepancy may be accounted for by the fact that these induced lower harmonics are opposed in phase, together with a limitation or modification of the series representing them arising from the high energy absorption at one of the higher harmonics.

Digitized by Google

INDEX TO VOLUME 3

1915

All references to any individual, company, or radio station are fully listed in this index. Answers to points brought out in the Discussions will be listed under the name of the questioner. With the exception of the names of companies, all topics will be listed in general under the *noun* referred to. The numbers correspond to pages in the text. The following abbreviations are used: r. f.—radio frequency; a. f.—audio frequency; l. v.—low voltage; h. v.—high voltage.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

SEPTEMBER, 1915

PROCEEDINGS

of

The Institute of Radio Engineers

EDITED BY
ALFRED N. GOLDSMITH, Ph.D.

PUBLISHED EVERY TWO MONTHS BY
THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS
BROADWAY NEW YORK

Digitized by Google

[illegible] DECEMBER, 1915 NUMBER [illegible]

PROCEEDINGS
of
The Institute of Radio Engineers

[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible]
THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS
[illegible] BROADWAY NEW YORK

[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible] INFORMATION AND SUBSCRIPTION RATES ON PAGE [illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible] NEW YORK

Typical Wireless Installation and Edison "Wireless Special" Batteries on Shipboard.

The United Fruit Co., The Merchants and Miners Transportation Co., The Northern Pacific Co., The Union Petroleum Co. are among those who use

EDISON ALKALINE
Wireless Special Batteries

Some buy it exclusively.

Its non-acid electrolyte without corrosive fumes and its rugged steel construction—steel plates, steel jar; its record for dependability, long life, low maintenance cost; its rapid adoption by those who have tried it—these are all points worthy of your careful consideration.

Send for Bulletin 1219.

EDISON STORAGE BATTERY COMPANY
213 Lakeside Avenue **Orange, N. J.**

Edison Batteries operating Auxiliary apparatus in the tropics of the United Fruit Company's Wireless Station on Swan Island in the Caribbean Sea.

Note the nearness of the batteries to machinery and high tension wireless apparatus.

Digitized by Google

Important Announcement

of a New Group of

Weston

Portable Electrodynamometer Instruments of Precision

For Use on A. C. or D. C. Circuits

Comprising:

Model 310. Single-Phase and Direct Current Wattmeter. (Illustrated.) Described in Bulletin 2002.
Model 329. Polyphase Wattmeter. Described in Bulletin 2002.
Model 370. A. C. and D. C. Ammeter. Described in Bulletin 2003.
Model 341. A. C. and D. C. Voltmeter. Described in Bulletin 2004.

These Instruments embody refinements of design and workmanship that render them greatly superior to any instruments that have previously been available for the same purposes.

Weston Indicating Instruments are universally accepted by all experts as the standard equipment of Wireless Stations. Write *to-day* for Bulletins.

Weston Electrical Instrument Co.

73 Weston Ave., Newark, N. J.

Branches in the Large Cities

Concentration is the Keynote of Success

THE thousands of users of electric equipment for radio work read many periodicals; but more of them read THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE INSTITUTE OF RADIO ENGINEERS than any other scientific publication.

The Advertising Manager of the Institute (111 Broadway, New York City) will be pleased to give you information concerning

Advertisements That Hit the Bull's Eye

Learn Wireless at Home

in shortest possible time with the Omnigraph Automatic Transmitter. Connected with Buzzer will send messages, at any speed, just as an expert operator would. Used by U. S. Bureau of Navigation to test all applicants applying for Radio licenses. 2 models. Prices $11 and $16.

OMNIGRAPH MFG. CO., 39 B Cortlandt St., New York

The "Exide" BATTERY

has been adopted for

Wireless and Emergency Lighting Service

by the following steamship companies

Atlantic Fruit Co.
American Hawaiian S. S. Co.
Border Line Transportation Co.
Barber & Co.
Eastern Steamship Corporation
Goodrich Transit Co.
Great Northern Pacific S. S. Co.
Great Northern S. S. Co.
Gulf & Southern S. S. Co.
W. R. Grace & Co.
Lampolt & Holt Line
New England Steamship Co.
New York Trans-Atlantic S. S. Co.
New York & Cuba Mail S. S. Co.
New York & Porto Rico S. S. Co.
Old Dominion S. S. Co.
Ocean Steamship Co. of Savannah
Panama R. R. Co.
Peninsula & Occidental S. S. Co.
Quebec Steamship Co.
Red "D" Line
Southern Pacific Co.
Wolvin Line

THE ELECTRIC STORAGE BATTERY CO.

New York Boston PHILADELPHIA, PA. Chicago Denver
St. Louis Cleveland Atlanta 1888-1915 Rochester Detroit Toronto
Washington Pittsburg San Francisco Los Angeles Seattle

Digitized by Google

"Imperial" Type Instruments
for Storage Battery Auxiliary Equipments

These instruments are widely used, and their ability to stand up and give good service is just as widely recognized. All ranges up to and including 250 volts and 200 amperes. Mechanism, permanent magnet type; scale divisions uniform; indications dead beat. They are hand calibrated and give accurate readings. Two sizes, 3" and 4" in diameter. Bulletin No. 91 gives the details. We shall be pleased to send it

WE SPECIALIZE IN INSTRUMENTS OF ALL TYPES FOR RADIO-TELEGRAPHIC FREQUENCIES

Chicago **Roller-Smith Company** Cleveland
203 Broadway, New York

"Instruments, circuit breakers and meters of all types for all purposes"

INTENSIFYING TRANSFORMER

Constructed especially for intensifying in-coming signals.

It can be used for intensifying signals received from any crystal detector by employing it between two audion detectors. The signals will then be intensified from 10 to 25 times.

As many as three of these transformers can be connected between audion detectors in cascade, forming an intensifier, making it possible to read signals at present not heard with any single known detector.

No modern wireless station is complete without an intensifier, as when it is needed it is wanted very, very much, so why not provide beforehand?

An intensifier makes possible the use of loose coupling, thus eliminating part of static and other atmospherics. The wireless engineer or operator alone knows the vast interference caused by these unknown phenomena.

Diagram of connections complete with full directions accompanying each instrument.

List No. 224 Intensifying Transformer. Price............$12.00

NEW MANUAL OF WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY, No. 12, 120 Pages, will be sent on receipt of 10 cents, which amount will be credited on a purchase of $1.00 or more.

MANHATTAN ELECTRICAL SUPPLY CO.

NEW YORK—17 Park Place 110 W. 42d St. 127 W. 125th St.
CHICAGO 114 So. 5th Av. ST. LOUIS 1106 Pine St. SAN FRANCISCO 604 Mission St.

Wireless expert at all our stores

Digitized by Google

AUDION RECEIVING CABINET, TYPE R J 6

Incorporating the famous De Forest Audion Detector

The Most Efficient Receiving Set for Experimental and General Purposes Ever Offered for Less than $500.

Bulletin sent on request

DE FOREST RADIO TELEPHONE AND TELEGRAPH CO.

Owners of the basic Audion patents, and Manufacturers of High Grade Radio Equipment.

101 Park Avenue **New York, N. Y.**

This book will be sent to any member of the Institute of Radio Engineers for 10 days' free examination. Write your name and address in the margin and return this ad to us today.

Just Off the Press

WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY

By J. Zenneck, Professor of Experimental Physics at the "Technische Hochschule," Munich. Translated by A. E. Seelig, formerly general manager, Atlantic Communication Co. 428 pages, 6 x 9; 461 illustrations; 13 tables; $4.00 (17*s*) net, postpaid.

Dr. Zenneck's "Lehrbruch der drahtlosen Telegraphie" has been widely known to students of the subject for many years. It has been the standard of the military and naval service, as well as the technical schools, of Germany since first publication. In the present authorized translation, the latest German edition has been used, and the translator has adhered closely to the original.

The work is the most scientific and thorough that has appeared on this subject. It covers all phases from physical principles to finished commercial apparatus.

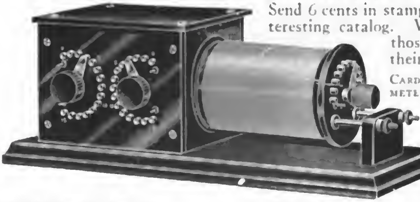
McGraw-Hill Book Company
Inc.

239 W. 39th Street **NEW YORK**

Digitized by Google

Our New Big 216 pp. ELECTRICAL and WIRELESS **CATALOG**

IS THE EXPERIMENTER'S REFERENCE BOOK



Send 6 cents in stamps for a copy of our interesting catalog. We stock materials for those who wish to build their own apparatus:

Cardboard Tubes, Variometer, Loose Coupler Parts, Switches, Binding Posts, Contacts, Etc.

We make all Sorts of Special Apparatus to Specification and would be pleased to quote upon your requirements.

ADAMS-MORGAN CO. 11 Alvin Place Upper Montclair, N. J.

CLYDE C. BALSTON

Registered Patent Attorney **Expert Mechanician**

50 CHURCH STREET Telephone: Cortlandt 6341 NEW YORK CITY

A patent can be obtained on almost anything

BUT

the value of a patent is the value of a foundation of your contemplated fortune and enterprise. If it is weak, all that is built on it is weak.

If your patent claims are not strongly and properly drawn, the FOUNDATION of your enterprise is weak; and therefore the whole ENTERPRISE is weak.

We have had special experience in drawing STRONG BASIC PATENT CLAIMS for over TWENTY YEARS. Consultations on the practicability of mechanical and electro-mechanical devices are given free of charge.

Murdock Moulded Condensers

Compact, strong and efficient transmitting units worth a trial by every radio engineer. Now in successful operation in many government and commercial stations. Made for commercial use in sections of .002 mfd.

Wm. J. Murdock Company

70 Carter Street **Chelsea, Mass.**

Digitized by Google

MICROMETRIC ADJUSTMENT

THE B B CRYSTALOI

TWELVE DOLLARS

This excellent DETECTOR comprises every element necessary for the reception of wireless signals. It will do for you that which you most desire. It is a PERMANENT DETECTOR of real merit, and its handsome appearance and workmanship cannot fail to appeal to those most skilled in the art. It is ever ready to serve and is *always there when you press the button.* The top panel is of BAKELITE.

More information on request

EUGENE T. TURNEY CO., INC.

THE MAKERS

2595 Third Ave., New York City

In an age of progress

Standing Still Is Drifting Backward

The ***most recent*** inventions in radio telegraphy and telephony are accurately and fully described in the

Proceedings of the Institute of Radio Engineers

by the engineers who discovered them.

There is no better way of following the trend of radio work than thru its pages. Full information as to membership, and subscription to the PROCEEDINGS will be furnished on request by the Secretary, Institute of Radio Engineers, 111 Broadway, New York City.

BAKELITE-DILECTO

The Standard Insulating Material for all

RADIO WORK

Waterproof—Strong—High Electrically—Furnished in Sheets, Rods, Tubes, and Special Shapes. Samples on request.
Also makers of High-Grade Vulcanized Fibre.

THE CONTINENTAL FIBRE CO. - - NEWARK, DEL.

Woolworth Bldg.
New York, N. Y.

McCormick Bldg.
Chicago, Ill.

Digitized by Google

THE
ELECTRICAL EXPERIMENTER

"THE POPULAR MAGAZINE OF WIRELESS"

Every issue of "The Electrical Experimenter Magazine" has 80 pages of interesting, instructive and up to date information on Wireless and Electricity. Written plain enough for the layman to understand yet authoritative enough for the advanced scientist.

SEND FOR SAMPLE COPY

Subscription Price, $1.00 per year. Canada and Foreign Countries, $1.60. For sale on all good news stands.
THE EXPERIMENTER PUB. CO. Inc., 232 Fulton Street, N. Y.

VARIABLE AIR CONDENSERS

of correct design and careful and substantial construction.

CAPACITY .006 MFDS.

Error due to inaccuracy of resetting about 2%.

PRICE $115.00

Prices for other sizes on application.

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL SUPPLY CO.
1330 N. Y. Ave., Washington, D. C.

The High Power Wireless Stations

of the Marconi Company in America, Canada, Ireland, England and Italy, as well as the new Trans-Pacific Stations, are equipped with AMERICAN TRANSFORMERS.

Let us handle your transformer problems.

American Transformer Company
145 Miller Street, Newark, N. J.

Kilbourne & Clark Manufacturing Company

Seattle, Washington, U. S. A.

MANUFACTURERS OF

RADIO TELEGRAPH APPARATUS

For Commercial, Ship and Shore Stations.

Digitized by Google

OCKER
JAN 1 0 1965

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google